Artur Yusupov was ranked No. 3 in the world from 1986 to 1992, just behind the legendary Karpov and Kasparov. He has won everything there is to win in chess except for the World Championship. In recent years he has mainly worked as a chess trainer with players ranging from current World Champion Anand to local amateurs in Germany, where he resides.

Winner of the Boleslavsky Medal from FIDE (the World Chess Federation) as the best instructional chess books in the world (ahead of Garry Kasparov and Mark Dvoretsky in 2nd and 3rd place).
**Key to symbols used**

△ White to move  
▼ Black to move  
± White is slightly better  
★ Black is slightly better  
± White is better  
★ Black is better  
+- White has a decisive advantage  
→ Black has a decisive advantage  
= equality  
|| with compensation  
‖ with counterplay  
؟ unclear  
⊙ zugzwang  
○ better is  
△ intending  
? a weak move  
?? a blunder  
! a good move  
!! an excellent move  
?! a move worth considering  
?!! a move of doubtful value  
# mate
Preface

It was a pleasure to have Artur Yusupov working as my second, both personally and professionally. It is therefore an honour for me to write the preface to the new manual Boost Your Chess.

This new book was created by expanding and improving the original online lessons from the Chess Tigers University. As an honorary member of the Chess Tigers, it has given me great pleasure to see this logical follow-up take concrete form and meet the twin challenges of being both a valuable textbook and a bedtime book.

It was in 1994 that I met Artur Yusupov in the semi-finals of the Candidates’ cycle in Wijk aan Zee. I managed to come out ahead by 4.5-2.5, but I recognized that Artur harboured great potential, both in his chess knowledge and extensive match experience.

Artur’s systematic and professional approach to analysing games was the decisive factor in having him as my second in the World Championship Finals in New York 1995 and Lausanne 1998. His mastery of the methods of the Russian chess school was very helpful in the preparation for the matches, as well as during the matches themselves. It was his idea that I should play the Trompovsky in the last game in Lausanne. I was 3-2 down, but was able to level the match at 3-3 and thus force a play-off.

I am still very grateful for everything that Artur did for me.

Artur’s vast experience as a trainer convinced him that there is a considerable need for better tuition for amateurs. Matching the level to the needs of the student is perhaps not too difficult, but the masterstroke is structuring the information in such a way that makes it immediately useful for amateurs. I am naturally enthusiastic about the rich variety of material in this series, which can help beginners become top amateurs.

I wish Artur Yusupov all the best with the publication of the first book in the series Boost Your Chess. Making this work available in English means that even more people who are keen to learn can enjoy it to the full.

World Champion, Viswanathan Anand
Introduction

During my many years of work as a chess trainer, I have noticed that there are only a few books which are really suitable for most amateur players. Some good books treat individual aspects of the game (middlegame or endgame, tactics or positional play) without paying any real heed to the reader’s playing level. This brought about the idea of working out a teaching programme aimed specifically at a certain playing strength. Such teaching programmes, in a brief form and intended as systematic help for trainers, are common only in Russia, where they are very popular. One very well known and much valued example is a publication by Golenischev, which inspired some aspects of my methodology.

In 2003 I began a 3-year training programme in my chess academy. Three groups were set up according to playing strength: under Elo 1500, under Elo 1800 and under Elo 2100. Each annual stage consisted of 24 teaching modules and 24 tests, plus a final test at the end of the course.

This programme was later taken over, in a different form, by the Chess Tigers University and is still being used there.

The overwhelmingly positive comments of my students encouraged me to rework this programme in the form of a series of books. In doing so, I was able to make use of many evaluations, corrections and suggestions from my students. While I was redrafting, especially the explanations in the solutions, that feedback from my students was very valuable.

This book is the first volume in a series of manuals designed for players who are building the foundations of their chess knowledge. The reader will receive the necessary basic knowledge in six areas of the game – tactics, positional play, strategy, the calculation of variations, the opening and the endgame.

The reader will benefit from the methodical build-up in this book, even if some of the material is familiar, as it will close any possible gaps in his chess knowledge and thus construct solid foundations for future success. To make the book entertaining and varied, I have mixed up these different areas, but you can always see from the header to which area any particular chapter belongs.

At this point I must emphasize that just working with this book does not guarantee a rise in your rating. It simply gives you a solid basis for a leap forward in chess ability. You should also play in tournaments, analyse your own games, play through well-annotated games of stronger players and read books on chess (I have included some suggestions at the end of this book).

I have also been concerned with another problem area since I moved to Germany: the role of trainers in chess education. In Germany there are unfortunately too few qualified trainers. There is also a widespread opinion that a talented chess player does not need a trainer. I do not share that opinion. I believe that many talented chess players could develop much further, if they had support at the correct time and if they had not left gaps in their learning.

Chess is a complicated sport, which has to be studied for many years. It is hard to imagine any other sport without coaches. (Is there a single athletics club or football club that does not have a trainer?) This manual is intended for the many club players who unfortunately receive no support in attempting to master our complicated sport. In this way it is intended as a substitute for a trainer for those that have none (and a support for trainers), but not an equal replacement for a trainer.

I further believe that many chess lovers, who show great commitment to working with young players in chess clubs, will gain with this series of books (as well as with the programme of the
Chess Tigers University) important methodological support and high quality training material for their chess lessons. The students will certainly profit from the supplementary explanations given by trainers and from lively discussions about the themes in the books.

**How to work with this book**

First read through the lessons. **You absolutely must play through all the examples and all the variations on a chessboard.**

First think about every diagram position (for at least 5 minutes) and try to find the solutions on your own. On average, you will need 1 to 2 hours per lesson. However, there is no time limit; some students may need more time for specific lessons.

It is important to have a good understanding of the subject.

The second part of the lesson is a test with 12 positions. The stars near the number of each exercise indicate the level of difficulty and, at the same time, the maximum number of points which you can earn for the correct solution with all necessary variations (★ = 1 point). Try to solve the positions without moving the pieces! If you cannot solve the position straight away, you must try for a second time for approximately 10 minutes. This time you may move the pieces. You must look for new ideas.

**On absolutely no account may you get help from a computer!**

Normally you will also need 1 to 2 hours for each test. Try to solve all the exercises. Consider each position as though it were appearing in one of your own games and look for the best possible continuation. You do not always have to mate or win quickly. It is sometimes enough to suggest a good move. Especially in the lessons on the opening, it is more important for you to reflect on the position, take a decision and then carefully play through the solutions. This will help you better understand the ideas of the opening. Mistakes are part of the learning process!

**It is very important to write down all the necessary variations.** If you do this you will be able to compare your solution with the one given in the book and you can also see how well you have understood the particular subject. If your score is too low, we recommend that you work through the chapter again. **We also recommend that you play through the solutions, including all the variations, on a chessboard.**

You will find an explanation of the standard chess symbols used in this book on page 4.

At this point I should like to express my gratitude to a large number of people who have supported my work in various ways. There is firstly my wife Nadja for the design of the German edition book and her help in working through the solutions, my daughter Katja for many corrections to my German, my chess trainer Mark Dvoretsky, from whose training methods I have learned so much, the Chess Tigers and Hans-Walter Schmitt for their constructive and productive cooperation, Mike Rosa for correcting some mistakes, Reinhold from Schwerin for his proofreading, and finally to Semen Oxman and Oleg Aizman, who gave valuable advice concerning the design of the book.

I would also like to thank Augusto Caruso for his elaboration of Nadja's design for the English edition and Ian Adams for translating the book.

GM Artur Yusupov
Attacking the king

The attack on the king has the highest priority of all in chess. For a successful attack on the king, you can sacrifice almost the whole army. But attacks do not always work. Before Steinitz, many players believed that it was only the player’s tactical abilities that had any part to play. Steinitz established that a successful attack can only be mounted if based on positional advantages – such as the initiative, better development, control over important central squares, etc.

But whoever has the chance to attack must do so in the most energetic manner!

In the following examples, look for the most active continuation! Bring your pieces closer to the opposing king, open up the position for your rooks and bishops, break up your opponent’s castled position, create specific threats!

But you must also remain realistic: sometimes our attack on the king is ‘only enough to win material’!

W. Steinitz – C. von Bardeleben
Hastings 1895

1.e4 e5 2.d3 c6 3.d4 c5 4.c3 d6 5.d4 exd4 6.cxd4 d6 7.cd3!

An old gambit line. 7.id2 is the safer way.

7...d5?!

A better option is 7...he4 8.0-0 c3, as in the game Steinitz – Schlechter in the same tournament.

8.exd5 exd5 9.0-0 e6

Diagram 1-1

It is risky for Black to take the pawn as White’s lead in development would be too great. After 9...exc3 10.bxc3 exc3 comes 11.xf7+ f8 12.pb3! xa1 13.bxa1 ed7 14.e1++; while if 9...exc3 10.bxc3 ecx3, then 11.fb3 gives White a strong attack.

10.ge5!

White brings his bishop into the game with tempo, thus increasing his lead in development.

10...ed7?!

For his part, Black loses a tempo. However, it is very difficult to correctly evaluate the attack which ensues.
Kasparov gives the better defence: 10...d7
11.exd5 exd5 12.Re1+ f8
11.xd5! exd5 12.xd5
12.xe7 is not so good, because after 12...xe7
13.Ra1 0-0 14.Rxe7? Black has the intermediate
move 14...Rx3!=.

12...xd5 13.xe7 xe7
Diagram 1-2

14.Re1
A typical idea to prevent the opponent castling.

14...f6 15.Rc2
Later Zaitsev suggested another, even better, way to
pursue the attack with 15.xa4†! and now:

a) Perhaps Black should surrender a pawn: 15...d7
16.xb4 f7 (16...c6? 17.xe7†+-) 17.xb7 d5±

b) 15...f7 16.Rc6†! fxe5 17.xe5 Rd6 18.Rc4†
 Rd8 19.Rae1 Rd8 (19...g6 20.Rf5+-) 20.Rd5
c6 21.Rb4† f7 22.Rc5 Rd6 23.Rc4† Rd8
24.Rxc7+- (Geller)

15...Rd7
15...d6? would be bad: 16.Rb5† Rc6 17.Rb4
Rd6 18.Rxb7+-

16.Rc1
Steinitz brings his final reserves into the game; it
can be very useful to attack with all available forces!
16.xd1† (Zaitsev) would also be very strong.

16...c6?
The immediate 16...f7† is correct, in order to bring
the knight to d5 more rapidly, e.g. 17.Rc4† Rxd5 is
fine for Black. The exchange sacrifice 17.Rxe7†! is
not dangerous: 17...xe7 18.xe7† xe7 19.xc7†
Rd6 20.Rxg7 Rac8 21.g3 Rc7† (Kasparov)

Steinitz developed the principle: ‘The player with
the advantage must attack!’ White has brought
all his pieces into the game. If he now hesitates, his
opponent will also bring his reserves into play and the
initiative will disappear. So Steinitz sacrifices a pawn,
opens files and puts his opponent under pressure.

Diagram 1-3

17.d5!! cxd5

17...f7 is objectively better: 18.dxc6 bxc6±
(Kasparov)

18.Rd4
This superb square is only a staging-post for
the knight, who is aiming to get even closer to the
Tactics 1

Diagram 1-5

Steinitz now ends the game with a fantastic combination.

22...Exc7†! Bf8!

The most stubborn reply. If 22...Exe7, then 23.Exc8†! Exc8 24.Exc8† is a simple win.

After 22...Exe7 then 23.Exe1† wins. (23.Bb4†! is also good, but you can only win a game once! The important thing is to calculate your winning line carefully.) 23...Ed6 24.Bb4† Ec5 (24...Ec6 25.Bc1!; 24...Ec7 25.Bc6† Bh8 26.Bf4†-- Steinitz) 25.Bc6† Exc6 26.Dxc6†

23.Bf7†!

But not 23.Dxc7?? Bxc1†--.

23...Bg8!

23...Exf7 24.Bxc8† Bxc8 25.Bxc8† Bc8 26.Dh7† is hopeless.

24.Dg7† Bh8!

Or 24...Bc8 25.Dh7† Bc7 26.Bxc7†--.

25.Dxh7†!

After this move von Bardeleben simply left the tournament hall! Steinitz demonstrated the following forced variation for the benefit of the spectators:

25...Bc8 26.Dg7† Bh8 27.Bh4† Bc7 28.Bh7† Bf8 29.Bh8† Bc8 30.Bg7† Bc7 31.Bg8† Bh7 32.Bh7† Bf8 33.Bf8† Bh8 34.Bf8† Bh6 35.Bd6#

Diagram 1-6

Capablanca finds an elegant and forcing way to win.

1.Dxe7† Bxe7
Attacking the king

Otherwise White wins with the discovered check d5-d6.
2...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash xe7}} 3...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash xf4}} 3...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash e1t!}}

An important intermediate check, which leads to the following forced line.
3...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash e5}}

3...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash d6}} loses to 4...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash b6t}}, as does 3...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash d8}} to 4...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash a8t}}.
4...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash d6t! \textbackslash \textbackslash e6}}

4...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash d8}} is met by 5...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash b6t+}}--.
5...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash b3t \textbackslash \textbackslash f5}}

5...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash xd6}} loses the queen after 6...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash d1t}}.
6...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash d3t \textbackslash \textbackslash g5}} 7...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash e3t \textbackslash \textbackslash f5}}

If 7...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash h5}}, then 8...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash g4t+-}}.
8...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash e4t \textbackslash \textbackslash e6}}

8...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash g5}} 9...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash h4t \textbackslash \textbackslash f5}} 10...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash g4#}}
9...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash c4t \textbackslash \textbackslash xd6}}

Forced, since 9...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash f5}} runs into 10...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash g4#}}.
10...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash d1t \textbackslash \textbackslash e7}} 11...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash x7t \textbackslash \textbackslash xd7}} 12...\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash xa6}}

The attack has secured White a decisive material advantage.

1-0

Diagram 1-7

\textbf{[J.Capablanca – H.Steiner]}

Los Angeles 1933

1...\texttt{\textbackslash f4!}
The black king is already rather exposed. White opens further lines for the attack.
1...\texttt{\textbackslash g8} 2...\texttt{\textbackslash h5t \textbackslash \textbackslash g7} 3...\texttt{\textbackslash f5} 3...\texttt{\textbackslash f5} dx\texttt{\textbackslash e5}

Diagram 1-8

4...\texttt{\textbackslash x5f6!}
A very natural continuation of the attack. White loses no time getting on with the decisive onslaught.
4...\texttt{\textbackslash x5f6} 5...\texttt{\textbackslash f1t \textbackslash \textbackslash f5}

5...\texttt{\textbackslash g7} 6...\texttt{\textbackslash f7t \textbackslash \textbackslash h8} 7...\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash x7h#}
6...\texttt{\textbackslash x5f5!}
Here Capablanca had certainly calculated all the way to the end.
6...\texttt{\textbackslash e5} 7...\texttt{\textbackslash f5t \textbackslash \textbackslash e7} 8...\texttt{\textbackslash f7t \textbackslash \textbackslash d6} 9...\texttt{\textbackslash f6t \textbackslash \textbackslash c5}
10...\texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash x7b7!}
A difficult move, but one which contains several mating threats.
10...\texttt{\textbackslash b6}
Tactics 1

Or 10...\texttt{Wxf6} 11.\texttt{Wb4\#}.

11.\texttt{Exc6}+! \texttt{Exc6}

11...\texttt{b5}+ 12.\texttt{Exb6}+ axb6 13.\texttt{Wh7}+- would lead to a prospectless ending.

12.\texttt{Wb4\#}

---

Diagram 1-9

E. Vasiukov – M. Taimanov

USSR Ch, Kharkov 1967

The black king wants to escape to the centre. To prevent that happening, White must act immediately.

1.\texttt{Exg7}!

A correct sacrifice.

1...\texttt{Exg7}

As the following variations show, other moves are no better:

a) 1...\texttt{Exg7} 2.f6 \texttt{Exf6} 3.\texttt{Exf6} \texttt{Exe7} 4.\texttt{Wxh6}+ \texttt{Exe8}

5.\texttt{Exd6} \texttt{Exd7} 6.\texttt{Wxh6}+ \texttt{Exe7} 7.\texttt{Exe5}+-

b) 1...axb3 2.\texttt{Exh6} (\texttt{Wxf7}+) 2...\texttt{Exg7} 3.f6+-

c) 1...\texttt{Exe7} 2.\texttt{Exg4} \texttt{Exe8} 3.\texttt{Exh6} axb3 4.axb3 \texttt{Exb3}

5.\texttt{Exg8}+ \texttt{Exd7} 6.\texttt{Exa8} \texttt{Exa8} 7.\texttt{Exb4}+-

White was faced with an interesting problem at this point in the game. Which is more important here, material (\texttt{Exh6}+ and then \texttt{Wxf6}) or the attack (\texttt{Exh6})?

2.\texttt{Exh6}+?

White decides on material and wins the bishop. However, in doing so he loses a tempo for the attack.

The correct choice is 2.\texttt{Exh6}+! \texttt{Exg8} 3.\texttt{Exg4}+ \texttt{Exh8}

4.\texttt{Exg5}! \texttt{Exg5} (4...\texttt{Exe7} 5.\texttt{Exh4}+-) 5.f6! \texttt{Exh6} (5...\texttt{Exf6}

6.\texttt{Exf6}+-) 6.\texttt{Exh5}+-.

2...\texttt{Exg8} 3.\texttt{Wxf6} \texttt{Exe7} 4.\texttt{Wh6} f6 5.\texttt{Exb4} axb3

The position is now anything but clear, since the black rooks can become active via the open queenside. White takes an unfortunate decision and leaves the dangerous black pawn on the board.

6.a3?! \texttt{Eac8} 7.h3?!

7.\texttt{Exe1}!!

7...\texttt{Exg7} 8.\texttt{Exh4} e4?!

Now it is Black who wants to open lines. He takes the initiative and even goes on to win the game.

9.\texttt{Exe4} \texttt{Exe2}! 10.\texttt{Ead3} \texttt{Exg3}+ 11.\texttt{Exg1} \texttt{Exf1} 12.\texttt{Exf1}

\texttt{Ee3} 13.\texttt{Exb1} \texttt{Ee8} 14.\texttt{Exf4}

And White resigned.
Exercises

Ex. 1-7

Ex. 1-8

Ex. 1-9

Ex. 1-10

Ex. 1-11

Ex. 1-12
Solutions

Ex. 1-1

Based on the correspondence game

Morse – Bashein

1. \( \text{Qe}6 \text{xf}6 \text{t} \text{Qh}8 \)
   Of course 1...\( \text{Qxf}6 \) would also be hopeless.

2. \( \text{Qg}5 \)!
   (1 point)
   The threat is 3. \( \text{Qh}7 \).

2... \( \text{Qf}5 \)
   Or 2...\( \text{Qf}5 \) 3. \( \text{Qe}8 \text{t} \text{Qxe}8 \) 4. \( \text{Qf}7 \text{t} \text{Qxf}7 \) 5. \( \text{Qxe}8 \).

3. \( \text{Qe}8 \text{t} \)!!
   Decoying.

3... \( \text{Qxe}8 \) 4. \( \text{Qf}7 \text{t} \text{Qxf}7 \) 5. \( \text{Qxe}8 \)
   (another 1 point for these variations)

Ex. 1-2

L. Reilstab – V. Petrovs
Kemeri 1937

1... \( \text{Qxf}4 \text{t} \) 2. \( \text{Qxf}4 \text{Qg}3 \)!
   (1 point)

2... \( \text{Qh}6 \) is just as good, since 3. \( \text{Qc}3 \text{Qg}6 \) wins for Black.

White resigned, in view of 3. \( \text{Qxd}6 \text{Qxh}3 \text{t} \) or 3. \( \text{Qxf}5 \text{Qg}2 \) 4. \( \text{Qh}1 \text{Qh}2 \text{t} \) or 3. \( \text{Qh}1 \text{Qxf}4 \).

Ex. 1-3

Tomas – Markwell
Correspondence game

1. \( \text{Qxf}6 \text{t} \)!
   (1 point)

1... \( \text{Qxf}6 \) 2. \( \text{Qxf}6 \text{Qf}7 \)
   2... \( \text{Qg}8 \) 3. \( \text{Qh}8 \text{t} ++ \)

3. \( \text{Qg}6 \text{t} \)!
   Or 3. \( \text{Qh}8 \text{t} \text{Qg}8 \) 4. \( \text{Qg}6 \text{t} ++ \).

3... \( \text{Qxg}6 \) 4. \( \text{Qh}8 \text{t} \text{Qg}8 \) 5. \( \text{Qh}6 \text{t} \text{Qf}7 \) 6. \( \text{Qf}4 \)
   (another 1 point)

Ex. 1-4

J. Capablanca – A. Becker
Karlsbad 1929

1. \( \text{Qg}5 \)!
   (1 point)
   White threatens \( \text{Qxf}6 \text{t} \) followed by \( \text{Qe}4 \).

The immediate 1. \( \text{Qxf}6 \text{t} \) only leads to a draw: 1... \( \text{Qxf}6 \) 2. \( \text{Qxc}7 \text{Qxf}3 \) 3. \( \text{Qxb}7 \) 4. \( \text{Qg}4 \text{Qh}8 \) 5. \( \text{Qh}4 \text{f}5 \) 6. \( \text{Qf}6 \text{t} = \)

1... \( \text{Qe}8 \)
   No better are 1... \( \text{Qxd}4 \) 2. \( \text{Qb}1 \text{t} ++ \) or 1... \( \text{Qxe}4 \) 2. \( \text{Qxe}4 \).

2. \( \text{Qxh}7 \text{f}5 \) 3. \( \text{Qg}5 \)!
   3. \( \text{Qfx}8 \) also wins after 3... \( \text{Qxf}8 \) 4. \( \text{f}3 \).

Black resigned, as 3... \( \text{fxe}4 \) is simply met by 4. \( \text{Qxe}4 \).

Other moves also lose, e.g. 3... \( \text{Qf}6 \) 4. \( \text{Qc}4 \text{Qd}8 \) 5. \( \text{Qxe}6 \text{t} ++ \) or 3... \( \text{Qd}7 \) 4. \( \text{Qh}5 \text{Qf}6 \)
5. \( \text{Qxf}6 \text{t} \text{Qxf}6 \) 6. \( \text{Qg}6 \text{t} \text{Qh}8 \) 7. \( \text{Qxe}6 \text{Qxe}6 \)
8. \( \text{Qxc}7 \text{Qe}7 \) 9. \( \text{Qc}4 \).

Ex. 1-5

J. Capablanca – E. Colle
Hastings 1930/1

1. \( \text{Qxd}7 \)!
   (1 point)

1... \( \text{Qg}7 \)?? would be bad, due to 1... \( \text{Qxf}3 \) 2. \( \text{g}3 \text{Qxe}2 ++ \).

2... \( \text{Qxd}7 \) 2. \( \text{Qg}7 \text{Qc}7 \)
   2... \( \text{Qc}8 \) 3. \( \text{Qe}5 \text{Qxe}5 \) 4. \( \text{Qxe}5 \text{f}5 \) 5. \( \text{Qxh}6 \)
3. \( \text{Qxf}8 \text{Qxf}8 \) 4. \( \text{g}3 \text{t} \)

Ex. 1-6

Kofman – S. Zhukhovitsky
Moscow 1936

1. \( \text{Qxg}6 \)!
   Not the only way, but the quickest route to victory.

1... \( \text{Qxd}4 \) 2. \( \text{Qxf}7 \text{Qh}8 \)
   2... \( \text{Qxf}7 \) 3. \( \text{Qh}5 \)

2... \( \text{Qh}7 \) 3. \( \text{Qe}4 \text{Qh}8 \) 4. \( \text{Qxf}8 \text{Qxf}8 \) 5. \( \text{Qg}8 \)
Solutions

Ex. 1-7

E. Vasiukov – R. Kholmov
Moscow 1964

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

(1 point)

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qxc5}}\)!

Black resigned, in view of 2... \(\text{\text{Qxg7}}\) 3. \(\text{\text{Qxe1}}\) \(\text{\text{Qh6}}\) 4. \(\text{\text{Qxb7}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxb7}}\)±.

(1 point)

(1 point)

(1 point)

(1 point)

(1 point)

(1 point)

(1 point)

(1 point)

Ex. 1-8

Mumelter – N. N.
Vienna 1896

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

(1 point)

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

1. \(\text{\text{Qa8}}\)!

Or 2... \(\text{\text{Qxd8}}\) 3. \(\text{\text{Qxb8}}\) 4. \(\text{\text{Qd6}}\) \(\text{\text{Qc8}}\) 5. \(\text{\text{Qa4}}\) #.

3. \(\text{\text{Qxb7}}\)†! \(\text{\text{Qxb7}}\) 4. \(\text{\text{Qa7}}\)† \(\text{\text{Qc8}}\) 5. \(\text{\text{Qc7}}\) #.

(1 point)

Ex. 1-9

A. Suetin – G. Kasparian
USSR Ch, Moscow 1952

The game saw 1... \(\text{\text{Qb6}}\)?? 2. \(\text{\text{Qxf6}}\) and Black resigned, because 3. \(\text{\text{Qd8}}\) is coming next.

The correct continuation would have been:

1... \(\text{\text{Qxg5}}\) 2. \(\text{\text{hxg5}}\) \(\text{\text{Qb6}}\) 3. \(\text{\text{Qb3}}\) c4 4. \(\text{\text{Qxc4}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxc4}}\) 5. \(\text{\text{Qxc4}}\) b3 6. \(\text{\text{cxb3}}\) \(\text{\text{Qe1}}\)++

(1 point)

Ex. 1-10

Variation from the game

S. Bromberger – S. Löffler
Bundesliga 2002

1... \(\text{\text{Qe1}}\)!!

By this deflection, Black gains the time needed for the capture on g4.

2. \(\text{\text{Qxe1}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxg4}}\) 3. \(\text{\text{Qh1}}\)

3. \(\text{\text{Qxf7}}\)\(\text{\text{Qxf7}}\)–+

3... \(\text{\text{Qh4}}\) 4. \(\text{\text{Qf1}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxf2}}\) 5. \(\text{\text{Qh2}}\) \(\text{\text{Qf4}}\) 6. \(\text{\text{Qg1}}\) \(\text{\text{Qg3}}\)–+

(1 point)

Ex. 1-11

G. Stahlberg – A. Alekhine
Prague Olympiad 1931

1... \(\text{\text{Qg4}}\)!

(1 point)

2. \(\text{\text{Qxf4}}\) \(\text{\text{Qf7}}\)

White resigned, on account of 3. \(\text{\text{Qg3}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxh2}}\) (or 3... \(\text{\text{Qxf1}}\)++ 4. \(\text{\text{Qxf1}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxh2}}\)–+) 4. \(\text{\text{Qxh2}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxf1}}\)–+.

(1 point)

(1 point)

Ex. 1-12

Trubnikov – Radchenko
Novosibirsk 1965

1... \(\text{\text{Qd2}}\)!

(1 point)

The defending white pieces are overloaded.

This deflection sacrifice ruins the coordination of the opposing pieces.

Of course 1... \(\text{\text{Qxe4}}\) would be bad: 2. \(\text{\text{Qxe4}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxe4}}\) 3. \(\text{\text{Qxe4}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxf2}}\) 4. \(\text{\text{Qxf2}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxf2}}\) 5. \(\text{\text{Qxf2}}\)

2. \(\text{\text{Qxd2}}\)

If 2. \(\text{\text{Qxf5}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxf5}}\) 3. \(\text{\text{Qxd2}}\), then 3... \(\text{\text{Qxf1}}\)++ 4. \(\text{\text{Qxf1}}\) e4 5. \(\text{\text{Qxe4}}\) \(\text{\text{Qxe4}}\)–+.
Solutions

2.\( \texttt{\textit{xd2}} \) is simply met by 2...\( \texttt{\textit{xe4}} \) 3.\( \texttt{\textit{e4}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{xf1}} \)++.

2...\( \texttt{\textit{xe4}} \) 3.\( \texttt{\textit{gl}} \)

Or 3.\( \texttt{\textit{xe4}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{xe4}} \) (3...\( \texttt{\textit{xf2}} \) is also good:
4.\( \texttt{\textit{xf2}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{xe4}} \) 5.\( \texttt{\textit{gl}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{b1}} \)++) 4.\( \texttt{\textit{gl}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{g2}} \). 
5.\( \texttt{\textit{Xg2}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{xf1}} \#.

(1 point for this variation)

3...\( \texttt{\textit{xg3}} \) 4.\( \texttt{\textit{hxg3}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{h2}} \)++ 5.\( \texttt{\textit{Xh2}} \) \( \texttt{\textit{h7}} \)++

(Another 1 point for this variation)

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 20

18 points and above \( \rightarrow \) Excellent
14 points and above \( \rightarrow \) Good
10 points \( \rightarrow \) Pass mark

If you scored less than 10 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
The open file

The open file is an important positional factor. We have already underlined the significance of the open file in *Build Up Your Chess 2*, Chapter 13 – 'Evaluating the position'; and also in *Build Up Your Chess 1*, Chapter 14 – 'Open files'. In this lesson we shall extend our knowledge.

Major pieces require an open file in order to come into play. It is very important to occupy an open file or at least to control it. It is often the struggle for a single open file which determines the whole strategic course of a game.

Why is it so advantageous to control an open file?

**The aim is to penetrate to the 7th or 8th rank with the major pieces!** From there the rooks or the queen can attack from the side, either the opponent's king or his defenceless pawns and other pieces.

If this is not possible – if, for example, all the squares are well protected by the defending side – then the control of the open file serves no useful purpose.

---

**Diagram 2-1**

**M. Janata – S. Bojkovic**

Vrnjacka Banja 1963

White has achieved control of the important central file and now exploits this opportunity to mount a quick attack.

1. \( \text{Qe7}^+ \)

1.\( \text{b4}! \) \( \text{Wxc4} \) 2.\( \text{Qe7}^+ \) with the additional motif \( \text{Qe6}^+ \) was a nice alternative (M. Rosa).

1...\( \text{Qf7} \)

1...\( \text{Qh7} \) would be no better, due to 2.\( \text{Qf5}^+ \) and then \( \text{Qg6} \).

2.\( \text{Qd7}^! \)

The penetration to the 7th rank decides the game on the spot.

2...\( \text{Qxd7} \) 3.\( \text{Qxd7} \)

Black resigned, on account of 3...\( \text{Wxe7} \) 4.\( \text{Wxe7}^+ \) (or 4.\( \text{Qe6}^+ \)) 4...\( \text{Qxe7} \) 5.\( \text{Qd7}^# \).
In the struggle for the open file, you can make use of the following elements:

1) the simple doubling of the rooks;
2) the use of an outpost;
3) control over the penetration squares on the 7th or 8th rank;
4) a timely opening of the file - doubling behind a pawn before exchanging it;
5) the creation of a battery (queen behind the rooks);
6) exchanging the major pieces in order to neutralize your opponent's activity on the file.

In the examples which follow and in the test you should employ these elements in the struggle for the open file.

Diagram 2-2

**J.Capablanca - K.Trebybal**

Karlsbad 1929

If White now opens the h-file, he does not obtain any immediate advantages on the kingside, since Black is pretty well prepared there. For that reason Capablanca opens a different file.

1.b5! axb5 2.h6†?

An important intermediate check. The black pieces now have less room and become disorganized. Capablanca sees that he can gain control over the a-file. This advantage will play a decisive part in the game.

2...ňf8 3.axb5 ñe7 4.b6!

White now has an important outpost on the 7th rank.

4...ňb8 5.ňa1 b8 5...ňa8 is simply met by 6.ňc3.

6.ňb4 ňd8 7.ňa7

Capablanca places his pieces on optimal squares.

7...ňf8 8.ňh1 ñe8 9.ňa1 ñg8 10.ňa4 ñf8

11.ňa3

A typical rook-queen battery has been set up.

11...ňg8 12.ňg3 ñd7 13.ňh4 ñh8 14.ňa1 ñg8

15.ňg3 ñf8 16.ňg2 ñe8

Diagram 2-3
The preparations have all been made. Capablanca now attacks the b7-pawn.

17.\(\text{d}d2\) \(\text{e}d7\) 18.\(\text{b}b3\) \(\text{e}e8\)

Or 18...\(\text{e}e8\) 19.\(\text{a}a5\) \(\text{d}d7\) 20.\(\text{a}x\text{b\text{7}}\) \(\text{a}x\text{b\text{7}}\) 21.\(\text{a}x\text{b\text{7}}\) \(\text{a}x\text{b\text{7}}\) 22.\(\text{a}a\text{6}\) \(\text{b}b8\) 23.\(\text{e}x\text{c\text{8}}\) \(\text{e}x\text{c\text{8}}\) 24.\(\text{a}a8\) \(\text{b}b7\)

25.\(\text{a}a7\)++.

19.\(\text{a}a5\) \(\text{d}d8\) 20.\(\text{a}a6\) \(\text{b}x\text{a6}\) 21.\(\text{x}x\text{d\text{7}}\)

The black pawn chain has been broken up. The position rapidly collapses.

21...\(\text{e}e7\) 22.\(\text{e}x\text{d\text{8}}\)† \(\text{e}x\text{d\text{8}}\) 23.\(\text{x}x\text{c\text{6}}\)

1–0

---

**Diagram 2-4**

*Computer Deep Blue – G. Kasparov*

New York match (2) 1997

1.\(\text{a}a3\)!

White first doubles the rooks behind the a-pawn, so as to open the file at a favourable moment.

1...\(\text{e}e\text{c8}\) 2.\(\text{e}c\text{a1}\) \(\text{d}d8\) 3.\(\text{f}f4\)!

3.axb5 \(\text{a}x\text{b5}\) 4.\(\text{a}a7\)† is one of Karpov's favourite ideas. In this way White prevents the exchange of major pieces on the a-file. But the computer probably does not know the classic games!

3...\(\text{e}f6\) 4.\(\text{f}x\text{e5}\) \(\text{d}x\text{e5}\) 5.\(\text{f}f1\)†?

Very accurate play. 5.\(\text{f}f2\) is followed by 5...a5!

6.axb5 \(\text{a}x\text{b5}\) (6.\(\text{b}b6\) \(\text{e}e8\) 7.\(\text{x}x\text{a5}\)† \(\text{a}x\text{a5}\) 8.\(\text{b}x\text{a5}\) \(\text{c}c5\)†) \(\text{a}x\text{b4}\) 7.\(\text{e}x\text{a8}\) \(\text{e}x\text{a8}\) 8.\(\text{e}x\text{a8}\) \(\text{x}x\text{a8}\) 9.\(\text{c}x\text{b4}\) \(\text{a}x\text{b5}\)–.

5...\(\text{x}e8\)

If now 5...a5, then 6.axb5 \(\text{a}x\text{b4}\) 7.\(\text{e}x\text{a8}\) \(\text{e}x\text{a8}\) 8.\(\text{e}x\text{a8}\) \(\text{x}x\text{a8}\) 9.\(\text{e}x\text{c4}\)†.

6.\(\text{e}f2\)! \(\text{d}d6\)

Now 6...a5 is bad in view of 7.\(\text{b}b6\)† and the black queen cannot go to e8.

7.\(\text{b}b6\) \(\text{e}e8\) 8.\(\text{a}a3\)\(\text{a2}\) \(\text{e}c7\) 9.\(\text{c}c5\) \(\text{f}f8\)

Black is very passive and must always be aware of the possible opening of the file.

9...\(\text{f}f8\) is met by 10.\(\text{h}h5\)† (Deep Blue).

10.\(\text{f}f5\)! \(\text{x}f5\)

Deep Blue prefers 10...\(\text{x}f5\) 11.\(\text{xf5}\) \(\text{b}x\text{a4}\)†.

11.\(\text{xf5}\) \(\text{f}6\)

If 11...\(\text{d}d8\), then 12.\(\text{f}6\)†–.

12.\(\text{x}d6\) \(\text{x}d6\) 13.axb5 \(\text{a}x\text{b5}\)

Diagram 2-5

14.\(\text{e}e4\)!
This is how White maintains control over the open file. Apparently even the computer understands this concept!

14...\texttt{a2} 15.\texttt{a2} \texttt{d7} 16.\texttt{a7}

In spite of the bishops of opposite colours, White has a clearly superior position.

16...\texttt{c7} 17.\texttt{b6} \texttt{b7} 18.\texttt{a8} 19.\texttt{f7} 19.\texttt{a6}

A good redeployment of the major pieces.

19...\texttt{c7} 20.\texttt{c6} \texttt{b6}

\textbf{Diagram 2-6}

21.\texttt{f1}?

This move is inaccurate and allows Kasparov counterplay.

Instead, the computer should have played 21.\texttt{h1}!. Then comes 21...\texttt{e8} 22.\texttt{a6} and if Black tries 22...\texttt{e3} 23.\texttt{x6} \texttt{e8}, then 24.\texttt{a1}! wins. The point is that the bishop on e4 is now taboo, as after 24...\texttt{xe4} 25.\texttt{a7}! \texttt{g8} 26.\texttt{d7}+- there is no perpetual check.

21...\texttt{b8} 22.\texttt{a6}

But Kasparov resigned here! He did not exploit the chance he had been offered: 22...\texttt{e3}!! 23.\texttt{xd6} \texttt{e8}!! and if 24.\texttt{f3}, then 24...\texttt{c1} 25.\texttt{f2} \texttt{d2} with perpetual check.

\textbf{Diagram 2-7}

\texttt{P.Keres} – \texttt{M.Botvinnik}

Moscow 1947

Black is ready for the struggle for the open c-file. So White should immediately prepare to exchange the major pieces. The next, natural looking, move is a positional error.

1.\texttt{e3}?

1.\texttt{a2}! was necessary, to meet 1...\texttt{b5} with the exchange of rooks: 2.\texttt{xc7 xc7} 3.\texttt{c1}=

1...\texttt{b5}! 2.\texttt{f6} \texttt{g8}

The immediate 2...\texttt{c4}! is also possible.

If 2...\texttt{e4}, then 3.\texttt{xe4 fxe4} 4.\texttt{g2} \texttt{g8} 5.\texttt{f3}=

3.\texttt{f3}

The struggle for the open file is lost. If 3.\texttt{f1}, then 3...\texttt{xh1} 4.\texttt{xf1} \texttt{e4} 5.\texttt{a2} \texttt{c2}=

3.\texttt{a2}! is not answered by 3...\texttt{c2} 4.\texttt{c3}! intending 4...\texttt{xb2} 5.\texttt{xd5}, but simply by 3...\texttt{c4} with an advantage for Black.
Diagram 2-8

Positional play 1

3...\texttt{c}c4! 4.\texttt{f}f1
4.e4? would be bad, due to 4...\texttt{h}h5+

4...\texttt{e}e8!
Headling for \texttt{d}d6.

5.\texttt{x}xc4 \texttt{xc}4 6.\texttt{f}f2 \texttt{d}d6 7.\texttt{e}e2?!

Instead, 7.\texttt{e}e2! \texttt{e}e2 8.b3+ deserves consideration, although Black has the initiative here too.

Diagram 2-8

7...b5+
Black must make haste with active operations on the queenside.

8.\texttt{d}d3
White would only need one more move and then he could equalize with b2-b3.

8...b4! 9.\texttt{a}a2
9.axb4 is followed by 9...\texttt{xb}4 10.\texttt{b}b1 \texttt{cb}8 11.\texttt{c}c2 \texttt{c}c4+.

9.\texttt{e}e2 would be somewhat more stubborn:
9...bxa3 10.bxa3 \texttt{xc}1 11.\texttt{xc}1 (11.\texttt{xc}1 loses the a-pawn after 11...\texttt{xc}1 12.\texttt{xc}1 \texttt{c}c4+) 11...\texttt{b}b8+

9...bxa3 10.bxa3 \texttt{a}a4 11.\texttt{xc}8+ \texttt{xc}8 12.\texttt{c}c3 \texttt{xa}3
Black has won a pawn and went on to win the ending.

Diagram 2-9

A.Yusupov – H.Beitar
Thessaloniki Olympiad 1988

White takes control of the open file.

1.\texttt{d}d1 \texttt{e}e7
1...\texttt{c}c6? 2.\texttt{d}d3±

2.\texttt{d}d3 \texttt{g}6
Operations on the queenside bring Black no relief:
2...\texttt{a}a3 3.\texttt{d}d2 a5 4.\texttt{g}g2 a4 5.\texttt{d}d6±

3.\texttt{d}d6
After 3.\texttt{d}d7 Black could reply 3...\texttt{a}a3.

3...\texttt{e}e8 4.\texttt{d}d7
The exchange of queens does not promise much:
4.\texttt{xc}7 \texttt{xc}7 5.\texttt{d}d8+ \texttt{g}g7 6.\texttt{f}f1 \texttt{f}f6 and Black will continue with e5, \texttt{e}e6 and \texttt{d}d7 with near equality.

4...\texttt{f}f8?!
Black intends 5...\texttt{xd}d7 6.\texttt{xd}d7 \texttt{e}e7, but he is defending very passively. He should look for counterplay in the centre with 4...e5±.
The open file

5...a4!
White prepares \( \text{d7}. \)

5...\( \text{a5}! \)
5...\( \text{wb7} \) would be better: after 6.\( \text{d7} \) \( \text{e4} \) Black has chances of a perpetual check.

6.\( \text{c7}! \)
This is stronger than 6.\( \text{c6} \) \( \text{d8}! \) 7.\( \text{xd8t} \) \( \text{xd8} \).

6...\( \text{c5} \) 7.\( \text{b5}! \)
The rook ending offers White a considerable advantage, because his rook is the more active. The deterioration of his pawn structure on the queenside, on the other hand, is not so important.

7...\( \text{xb5} \) 8.\( \text{cxb5} \) \( \text{e8}! \)
This move loses by force, but other moves do not seem to bring salvation either: 8...\( \text{a4}! \) 9.\( \text{b4}! \)± or 8...\( \text{e7} \) 9.\( \text{d6} \) \( \text{b7} \) 10.\( \text{a4}! \).

But appearances can be deceptive, and in the variation 8...\( \text{e5} \) 9.\( \text{d6} \) \( \text{e6}! \) Dr Fritz finds, after a long period of calculation, a saving grace. The black king marches quickly to the queenside and the sharp pawn ending ends in a draw!

9.\( \text{b7} \) \( \text{a4} \)
Or 9...\( \text{c2} \) 10.\( \text{a4}! \) and White wins both pawns on the queenside.

10.\( \text{bxa4} \) \( \text{c4} \) 11.\( \text{xb6} \) \( \text{xa4} \) 12.\( \text{a6} \)
1-0

---

Diagram 2-11

**M.Botvinnik – I.Boleslavsky**

USSR Ch, Moscow 1945

1.b4!
White has doubled his rooks nicely. But he cannot achieve much in the centre alone, since Black still controls all the squares on the 7th and 8th ranks. So White begins some action on the queenside, with the aim of forcing back the black pieces and thus gaining control of some squares (d7, d6) on the d-file.

1...\( \text{e6} \) 2.\( \text{b3} \)
The threat is general exchanges on d8 and then \( \text{x6} \), which would lead to a noticeable weakening of the black pawn structure.

2...\( \text{xd2} \) 3.\( \text{xd2} \)
Now White has control over the open file.
3...AXB3 4.Axb3 Wxe6 5.c4 Axf6

Diagram 2-12

6.c5!
This hinders...Axd8 and achieves the desired control over the d7-square.

6...Dc8
6...Axd8 is bad, in view of 7.Axd8† Axd8 8.Axd8† Ag7 9.cxb6+-.

7.Axd7† Axb3
7...Axd8 is followed by 8.Axe6 Axd1† 9.Axd1 fxe6 10.Axe3 and Black will lose the e5-pawn.

8.Axb7 Afg5
Or 8...Axe7 9.Ad6+-.

9.Axg5 hxg5 10.Axa6+-
White has an advantage in material. The rest of the game is relatively simple.

Diagram 2-13

10...Da7 11.Ab7 Afe8 12.Ad7 Ag8 13.Ad6 Axb4
14.Af4! Aa8
14...Axe4 15.Af6+-

15.Axe5
15.Axe5 would be simpler: 15...Axe4 16.Af6 Afg5 17.Ad7+-.

15...Ab3 16.Ad7 Ag8 17.Ad6† Ag7 18.Ad4†!
But not 18.Axe5? Af6 19.Axf7†? on account of 19...Axf7 20.Axf7 Aa1† 21.Ag2 Ag4† 22.Ag3 Axf2† 23.Ag2 Aa1##.

18...Ah7 19.Af6† Af6 20.Axf6 Ag8 21.Ah2 Aeb8 22.Axc6! Ag7
22...Ag2 is refuted by 23.Ad6! Aa8† (23...Axf2 24.c6 Ag7 25.Axf8†! Axf8 26.c7+-) 27.Ag1 Aa1† 28.Ab1.

23.Ad6 Abl
Or 23...Ah8† 24.Ag1 Abl† 25.Ad1 Aex4 26.Aa1†+-.

24.Ad4† Ah7 25.c6
If 25...Ah8 then 26.Axh8† followed by c7 wins (Botvinnik).
1-0
Exercises

Ex. 2-7

Ex. 2-10

Ex. 2-8

Ex. 2-11

Ex. 2-9

Ex. 2-12
Ex. 2-1
B. Avrukh – R. Dautov
Istanbul Olympiad 2000

1...a7!?  
(1 point)

White may try 2.f5 (2.c1 a7 transposes back into the game) 2...exf5 and now:

a) 3.Qg3 g6 4.Qa3 De8 5.Qc5 Qxc5 6.Qxc5 Qd6+

b) 3.Qxf5 Qc8?! 4.Qxd6? Qxf5 5.Qxb6 Qc2 6.Qc6 Qd1+ 7.Qf2 Qe4++

2.c1

2.f5!? would be interesting: 2...exf5 3.Qxf5 Qb6 (Δ...Qc7) 4.Qxf6 gx6 5.Qg4+

After 2.Qg3 there comes simply 2...g6+ rather than 2...Qb6 3.f5+.

2...Qb6

By threatening ...Qc7 Black neutralizes the open c-file.

3.c2

But not 3.Qc2?? on account of 3...Qe4+- followed by ...Qc7.

3...Qc7 4.Qd1 Qc8?  
Black is better, because of the weakness on e4.

Ex. 2-2
S. Ovejevitsch – A. Braun
Budapest 2003

1.c5!

(2 points)

In this way White exploits his outpost on c5. If Black now exchanges the rooks, White gets a protected passed pawn and in addition opens the long diagonal for the bishop.

1 consolation point for the positional sacrifice 1.f5!? exf5 (1...Qxc1 2.Qxc1) 2.Qd2 or 2.Qd3. White employed this idea a little later.

1...Qb8 2.Qd2 g6 3.Qa3 Qhe8 4.Qf1 Qd8 5.f5?! gx6 6.Qg5 Qxc5 7.Qxc5 Qe7 8.Qc2±

Ex. 2-3
A. Lilienthal – L. Aronin
Moscow 1948

1.c5!

(1 point)

White opens the c-file.

1...Qxc5

If 1...Qxc5, then 2.Qxb7++.

2.c1 Qa5 3.Qxf6

(another 1 point)

First playing 3.Qc8† will come to the same thing, since 3...Qd8? 4.Qxf6 Qxc8 loses to 5.Qg4.

3...Qxf6

3...Qxf6 loses more quickly: 4.Qc8† Qd8 (4...Qd8 5.Qh5 Qd7 6.Qg4†+-) 5.Qh5 (also winning is 5.Qg4† Qf8 6.Qd7 or 5.Qxf6 Qxd5 6.exd5) 5...Qxd5 6.exd5 Qxc8 7.Qg4†+- (Lilienthal)

4.Qc8† Qd8 5.Qc3?  
5.Qd1! would have been even better: 5...Qd6 (5...Qf8 6.Qc6+-) 6.Qxf7†+-

5...Qb6 6.Qb2!  
6.Qxe5 Qf8 7.Qg3±

6...Qd6  
6...Qa5 is met by 7.Qd2+-.

7.f4?!  
The alternatives 7.Qxb7 Qf8 8.Qa8 Qe7+ and 7.Qxe5 Qf8± are not bad either.

7...Qxf4?  
7...Qxf4? loses to 8.Qxe5 Qb6† 9.Qh2.  
The most stubborn defence was 7...Qd7

8.Qxb7 Qd6±.

8.e5 Qd7  
8...Qxd5 9.Qxf6 Qxf6 (9...Qd7 10.Qb5+-) 10.Qd6+-

9.Qxb7† Qe8 10.Qb8 Qd6 11.Qxd6  
11.exd6?? Qe1†=

11...Qb6† 12.Qxb6 Qxc8 13.e6 g5 14.e7 Qg7 15.Qc6

1-0
Solutions

Ex. 2-4

N. Rossolimo – G. Wood
Southsea 1949

1...f4! (1 point)
The time is ripe for an immediate breakthrough on the kingside!
1...exf4?
2.g5! fxg5 3...h3! d8 4...e6 d7 5...xh6+-
2...h3 d8
If 2...exf4? then 3.e5! fxe5 4...d3+-.
3.fxg5 fxg5
Now there is a struggle for two open files. This means that the defence will be overloaded.
4...c1?!
4...c3! is better: 4...e8 5...f1 f7 6...c1! (△...c8+-)
4...e7?!
4...e8 is more stubborn: 5...f1 f7 6...f5±
5...c3?!
Simply 5...xb6± would be stronger.
5...d8?
Passive defence does not offer any hope. Black should attempt to activate his queen with 5...f6!.
6...f1!
The control of the second open file brings White a rapid victory.
6...e8
6...e8 7...f3 e7 8...f5 f7 9...c8+-
7...f5 d7
This allows an elegant finish. 7...e8 is followed by 8...f3 b8 9...xe5! dxe5 10...f6+ d7 11...d6#.
8...xe5++
1-0

Ex. 2-5

V. Chekhov – A. Yusupov
German Cup 1993

First Black activates the queen and brings it to a6. Then he can neutralize the pressure on the b-file and equalize.
1...c8! (2 points)
1...b8 (1 point) would be less accurate, in view of 2...f2 c8 3...xb8 cxb8 4...b1 wa6 5...f1 d7 6...c1 f8 7...e3±.
2...b2 a6 3...b1 a3 4...f1
Now White exchanges all the rooks and thus draws the teeth from White's initiative on the b-file.
If 4...b7?! then 4...c8 5...f1 ab8 6...b2 a5±.
4...ab8 5...c1
5...f2?=
5...xb2 6...xb2 b8 7...e3 c8 8...f2 f6=

Ex. 2-6

Variation from the game

A. Vajda – A. Nimzowitsch
Kecskemet 1927

After activating his knight, Black will also win the struggle for the open a-file.
1...h4! (1 point)
2.g4 g3 3...h1 e4
The weakness of c3 means that Black is threatening ...xa1.
4...xa8 xa8+-

Ex. 2-7

D. Bronstein – N. Cortlever
Amsterdam Olympiad 1954

1...d6! (1 point)
White exploits his outpost on the d-file.
Solutions

1...Ee8
Or 1...Exd6 2.cxd6 Efc8 3.d7+—.
2.Edd1 Eda8
2...Ea7 is no better, on account of 3.Ed7† Efd7 4.Ed7† Exd7 5.Ec6+—.
3.Exa6
1–0

Ex. 2-8
T.Petrosian – W.Unzicker
Hamburg 1960

1.Exd6?  
(1 point)
White has another equally good solution:
1.Ec2? Ec4 2.Edb2 Edb6 3.b3±
1...Exd6 2.Ec6 Db8
2...Edb6 would be a bit better: 3.Edb2 Ea8
4.Eb5 Ec8 5.Ec2 Ee8±
3.Ec2 Dd7
4...Ec7 4.Eac1±
4.Eac1 Db6 5.Edb5 Ec4 6.Edfd2 Exd2
7.Edxd2 Eab8?!
Better is 7...Eab8±.
8.Edc2 Ed8 9.Ec6 g6 10.g3±
His complete control of the c-file gives White an easy game.

Ex. 2-9
V.Makogonov – Makienko
USSR 1964

1.Ehb1!  
(2 points)
1 consolation point for 1.Ed3 or 1.Eab1.
We shall soon see why the rook should remain on a1.
1...Eb6 2.a4! Ed7 3.a5 Ec7 4.Eb7± Ehc8
5.a6 Ed8 6.Eab1 e5 7.dxe5 fxe5 8.Edg3 Ed8
9.e4!± Efb8 10.Ed1 Ed6
10...dxe4 11.Ed7+—
14.Edf2 Ec8 15.Ec5

15...Exa7 would not be so accurate, because
of 15...Exa6.
15...Ec8 16.Eb4 h6
If 16...Exa6, then 17.Edc5+—.
17.Ed7
1–0

Ex. 2-10
F.Thorbergsson – M.Tal
Reykjavik 1964

1...Ed7!  
(2 points)
Black brings his queen's rook to the e-file.
If you planned this redeployment after the preparatory 1...Ee8, you also earn 2 points.
For 1...Ee8 without this continuation you only get 1 point.
All the black pieces are in play.

Ex. 2-11
B.Larsen – A.Suetin
Copenhagen 1965

1.Ed6!  
(1 point)
The knight was only blocking the e-file.
1...Ea7
1...Ed6 is followed by 2.gxf4 g6 3.Eg5 Ed6 4.Exb7 Ib8 5.Ed7± and 5...Ibc6 can be met by 6.Ed5.
White is also better after 1...g6 2.Ed3 Ed6
7...Exa7 is also possible: 7...Exc2 8.Ed7
Exa2 9.Edx4+ 
7...Eexc7 8.Edc7 Exa2 9.Ed5±
Solutions

Ex. 2-12

P.Biyiasas – W.Hug

Petropolis 1973

1. \( \textit{\&g5!} \)  
   (1 point)

   White secures the key outpost on d6 by exchanging the black defender.

1... \( \textit{\&xg5} \) 2. \( \textit{\&d6!} \)  
   (another 1 point)

   This is an important intermediate move.

2. \( \textit{\&xg5} \) would be less accurate: 2... \( \textit{\&b7} \) 3. \( \textit{f3 \&ad8} \)

2... \( \textit{\&c7} \)

   Or 2... \( \textit{\&a4} \) 3. \( \textit{b3+-} \).

3. \( \textit{\&xg5} \)

   Threatening \( \textit{\&e4} \).

3... \( \textit{\&b7} \) 4. \( \textit{\&d3 \&g6} \) 5. \( \textit{\&d1 \&d5} \) 6. \( \textit{c4 \&c6} \)

7. \( \textit{\&h3 h5} \) 8. \( \textit{\&xe6!} \)

1–0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 18

16 points and above \( \rightarrow \) Excellent
12 points and above \( \rightarrow \) Good
9 points \( \rightarrow \) Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
'Minor' tactics

It is not only in the attack on the king and in defence that tactics play an important role; and tactical operations do not always have major aims as their object. In this section we shall consider tactical operations which involve no immediate threat to the opposing king. Such tactical motifs are often employed simply to secure some positional advantage. Tactics are the engine of the game of chess and often bring many a strategic plan to life.

This lesson is based on the games and annotations of Grandmaster Ratmir Kholmov. In the following example he takes the first available opportunity to seize the initiative.

R.Kholmov – A.Khasin
USSR Ch, Moscow 1957

1.d4 ♙f6 2.♗f3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.g2 0–0 5.0–0 d6 6.b3 e5 7.dxe5 dxe5 8.♗a3 ♙xd1 9.♗xe1 ♙e8 10.♗c3 ♙d7?

Black should prefer 10...e4².

Diagram 3-1

11.♗xe5!

White starts a combination.

11...♗xe5 12.♗xb7 ♙c6 13.♗xa8 ♙xa8 14.♗d8+ ♙e8 15.♗ad1 ♙c6 16.♗xe8+ ♙xe8 17.♗d5±

Although White has no clear material advantage (a rook and two pawns are not always stronger than two minor pieces), he is much more actively placed. His rook can use the open file and his pawns form a compact whole and are mobile.

17...♗f8

17...♗f5 followed by ♙f7 would be better, to bring the king into the game.

On the other hand, 17...♗d4 would be bad: 18.♗e7+ ♙h8 19.♗c5 ♙xe2+ (or 19...♗e6 20.♗xa7++) 20.♗xf1 ♙c3 21.♗d8+-

18.♗xf8 ♙xf8 19.c4 ♙a5?
This anti-positional move allows a new tactical blow.

19...f5± was necessary.

20...xc7!+-

22...xa6

White recovering a minor piece and remains with a material advantage.

23...xb4

If 23...e8 24...xa5 c5, then 25...xb7! xb7

26.a6+-.

24...xc6 25...b5 d8 26.a4 c6 27...b8

White's material advantage decides the struggle.

27...e7 28.a5 c6 29.a6 d6 30.a7 c7

Black has stopped the dangerous pawns on the queenside, but now White will attack on the kingside.

31.h4 h5 32.f3 d8 33.e2 c5 34.f8

1–0

In the next game too, Kholmov exploits the slightly hanging position of the white pieces.

Diagram 3-3

Black is well placed in the centre. A tactical trick helps him to consolidate his position.

1...c6! 2.fxe5 d7!

And Black wins back his pawn.

3.d4 dxe5 4.c5 xc5 5.xc5

Diagram 3-4

A fresh tactical operation exploits the insecurity of the white pieces and brings Black an extra pawn.

5...xb2! 6.ab1 a3 7.xc6 ac8 8.d5

But not 8.b3? xb3 9.xc8 due to 9...b6++; nor 8.b5? due to 8...e5++.

8...xc3 9.f3 xc5 10.b3?

White hopes that in the position with bishops of opposite colours an exchange of queens will ease the defence. But he overlooks a tactical strike.

10...xd5 11.xc3
Tactics 2

Diagram 3-5

11...e4!

This operation will bring Black a decisive material advantage.

12.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}\texttt{\textbackslash .}\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe4 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}d4† 13.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}h1 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}e5

Now two white pieces are under attack.

14.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}c4 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe4

And White resigned, in view of the variation 15.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}d1 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}d8 16.a4 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}g7 17.a5 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}e5† (or 17...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}f6†).

Diagram 3-6

\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}} V.Bagirov – R.Kholmov

USSR Ch, Baku 1961

Black recovers the sacrificed pawn with a little tactical operation.

\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}f5! 2.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe4 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe5 3.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}a6

The queen is not well placed here. 3.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}d3 would have been better: 3...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe4 4.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}d2†

3...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe4 4.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}e3 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}e8

Intending 5...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe3 6.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe3 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}c5.

The immediate 4...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe3 was also good: 5.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xc6 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}d8† 6.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe3 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}c4! and Black is better.

5.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xb6 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xb6 6.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}d3 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}f6 7.b3 h5 8.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}ad1 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}e5!

9.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}c3 c5†

Black has a clear positional advantage, because he controls the only open file. Any attempt by his opponent to exchange rooks will be refuted tactically.

10.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}e1??

Diagram 3-7

10...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe1† 11.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe1 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}e2!!

White resigned. 12.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xf6 is answered by the intermediate check 12...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash .}}}xe1†.

In grandmaster games, a tactical exchange is sometimes lurking in the wings, as the next example shows.
1...\textit{f5}!

In order to be able to play this strong move, Kholmov had to take into account several tactical possibilities.

2.\textit{g7} \textit{d8}

With the threat of ...\textit{b6}.

3.\textit{b7}

A tricky alternative is 3.\textit{ag1}; an unsuspecting opponent continuing with the planned 3...\textit{b6}?! would find himself quickly mated after 4.\textit{g5}t!.

However, Black has an exchanging combination up his sleeve: 3...\textit{xe3}t! 4.\textit{xe3} \textit{b6}t 5.\textit{f3} \textit{xgl} 6.\textit{xg1} \textit{d8} and Black wins.

3...\textit{g8} 4.\textit{b8}

Or 4.\textit{f7}t \textit{g6} 5.\textit{b7} \textit{h5}t and Black threatens ...\textit{h4}.

4...\textit{g7} 5.\textit{a4}

If 5.\textit{a2}, then 5...\textit{g7} 6.\textit{g2} \textit{xa3} 7.\textit{g8} \textit{e7}--.

5...\textit{h5} 6.\textit{AXB5} \textit{AXB5}

7.\textit{XB5}?

7.\textit{aa8} would be somewhat more stubborn: 7...\textit{h4} 8.\textit{xd8} \textit{g3}t 9.\textit{f2}, but here too Black should win after 9...\textit{xe3}. Kholmov pointed out a spectacular line: 10.\textit{xd3} \textit{xd3} 11.\textit{b8} \textit{xf4} 12.\textit{xb5} \textit{exh3} 13.\textit{c5} \textit{c3} 14.\textit{b5} \textit{h3} 15.\textit{b6} \textit{c1} (15...\textit{h2} is even simpler) 16.\textit{b7} \textit{h2} 17.\textit{b8} \textit{c2}t! and then mate next move.

7...\textit{h4} 8.\textit{e2} \textit{g2}t 9.\textit{f1} \textit{h2} 10.\textit{g1} \textit{e2} 11.\textit{b6} \textit{c3} 12.\textit{f1} \textit{h2}

0–1

It was rare that the great Fischer was so outplayed that he had to resign although a pawn ahead! Here is the possible finish: 13.\textit{g1} \textit{g3} 14.\textit{c5} c2++

In the test which follows, look for active moves and make use of the tactical possibilities in the positions.
Exercises

Ex. 3-1

Ex. 3-2

Ex. 3-3

Ex. 3-4

Ex. 3-5

Ex. 3-6
Solutions

Ex. 3-1

K. Honfi – R. Kholmov
Bucharest 1962

1...\Boxxc3! (1 point)

2.\Boxxc3 \Boxa3!! (another 1 point)

1...\Boxxe5 would be bad, on account of 2.\Boxf3!
(or 2.\Boxf1 \Boxa3 3.\Boxb2 c5 4.\Boxf3+–) 2...\Boxxe2
3.\Boxe4+–.

3.\Boxb2
3.\Boxxa3 \Boxxd4+–

3...c5 4.\Boxc2 \Boxa6 5.b5?! It was better to try 5.bxc5 bxc5 6.\Boxf1 \Boxe5
7.\Boxb5 (7.\Boxxf7 \Boxxd4+–; 7.\Boxb4 \Boxxe2+–) 7...\Boxxe2 8.\Boxxc5 \Boxxa2 9.\Boxel \Boxxc2! (9...\Boxxc2?)
10.\Boxxf8!!) 10.\Boxxf8t \Boxxf8 11.\Boxd8t \Boxe7 12.\Boxexe2 \Boxxe2 13.\Boxxc8+–.

5...\Boxa5 6.\Boxb4
6.\Boxf1 \Boxe5 7.\Boxxf7 \Boxxd4+–

6...\Boxxb4 7.\Boxxf6 \Boxxf6 8.\Boxxb4 \Boxxb4 9.a3
\Boxe6 10.d4 \Boxa5 11.\Boxf3 \Boxfa8 12.\Boxxb7
\Boxxa3 13.\Boxxa3 \Boxxa3 14.d5 \Boxd7 15.d6 \Boxa7
16.\Boxf3 \Boxe6 17.\Boxc6 \Boxd7 18.\Boxc7t \Boxf8
19.\Boxc8 b5 0–1

Ex. 3-2

A. Lutikov – R. Kholmov
USSR Ch semi-final, Leningrad 1955

1...\Boxxe4! (1 point)

You also get 1 point for 1...c4 2.\Boxa2 \Boxxe4, after which 3.\Boxxc4 \Boxh4 gives Black a strong
attack.

2.\Boxxe4 d5 3.\Boxxh7t \Boxxh7 4.\Boxd3t \Boxg8
5.\Boxf5 \Boxe7! (another 1 point)

6.\Boxxe7 \Boxxe7 7.\Boxxd5 \Boxxe4+– 8.\Boxe1
8.\Boxf3 \Boxb3!! 9.\Boxxb3 \Boxxf1t 10.\Boxh2 &g1t
11.\Boxg3 \Boxf2#

8...\Boxd3 9.\Boxh5 9.\Boxh2 \Boxg1t!

Ex. 3-3

E. Jimenez Zerquera – R. Kholmov
Leningrad 1967

1...d4! (1 point)

2.\Boxe4?! White should have preferred either 2.\Boxa4t
or 2.\Boxd1+. The latter can be met by the
tempting 2...\Boxxc2 with the point 3.\Boxxc2 d3
4.\Boxb1 dxe2! 5.\Boxg6 \Boxe6 \Boxe6; however 3.\Boxxd4
keeps White in the game.
If 2...\Boxxd4, then 2...\Boxad8+.

2...\Boxxe4 3.\Boxxe4
3.\Boxxe4 loses to 3...\Boxg5!.

3...c5
3...\Boxg5 4.\Boxh1 \Boxxe4? would be bad, due to
5.\Boxd3 \Boxf2+ 6.\Boxxf2 \Boxxd3 7.\Boxxf8+–.

4.\Boxd3 \Boxae8 5.\Boxg3
If 5.\Boxxa6, then 5...\Boxg5 6.\Boxg3 h4 7.\Boxe1
\Boxf4 8.\Boxd2 \Boxxe4+–.

5...\Boxh6 6.h4
But not 6.\Boxxh7? because of 6...h4 7.\Boxd6
\Boxc8! 8.\Boxb6 \Boxf4+–.

6...\Boxf4 7.\Boxxf4 \Boxxf4+–

Ex. 3-4

M. Matulovic – R. Kholmov
Kislovodsk 1966

1...d5! (2 points)

Only 1 consolation point for 1...\Boxxf4 2.\Boxg3!
\Boxxf2+ 3.\Boxxf2 \Boxxf2 4.\Boxc6+.

2.\Boxxd5
After 2.\Boxe5 there follows 2...\Boxd6 3.g3 \Boxc2
4.\Boxd3 \Boxxe3! 5.\Boxxd5? \Boxf5t 6.\Boxg1 \Boxd1t
7.\Boxg2 \Boxh4#.

2...\Boxf4t 3.\Boxg1
3.\Boxh1 would be more stubborn: 3...\Boxxf2t
4.\Boxg1 \Boxe4 5.\Boxa8 h5 6.\Boxc6 \Boxxf2t 7.\Boxh2
**Solutions**

鸥g3 8.鸥f3 h4 9.鸥a1 鸥c5 and the threat of ...鸥f1+ is decisive.

3...鸥xf2+ 4.鸥h2 鸥f4+ 5.鸥h1

5.鸥g1 鸥c5+--

5...鸥g3+ 6.鸥g1 鸥e2+ 7.鸥h1 鸥f1+ 0-1

**Ex. 3-5**

Y.Kots – R.Kholmov

Moscow 1961

1...鸥xg2!

2...鸥g6 would not be so strong: 2.g3±

2.鸥g2

2.d5 is met by 2...鸥f6 (or, even better, 2...鸥g6 3.鸥g1 鸥xe4 4.鸥xe2 鸥f3+--)

3.鸥g2 鸥f3+ 4.鸥xf3 鸥d2+ 5.鸥g2 鸥xb3

6.鸥a2 bxa4 7.鸥c4 鸥e5 and Black is winning.

(1 point for this variation)

2...鸥e3+ (another 1 point)

3.鸥xe3 鸥xb3+ 4.鸥c4 鸥xa4 5.b3 鸥a5 6.dxe5

dxe5 7.鸥c2

7.鸥xe5 b4+--

7...鸥b6 8.鸥xe5 鸥fe8 9.f4 鸥ad8 10.鸥e2

鸥xe5! 11.fxe5 鸥d3 0-1

**Ex. 3-6**

R.Kholmov – B.Milic

Belgrade 1967

1.h4!

1...鸥ab1 would not be so powerful after 1...鸥a8+, nor would 1.鸥eb1 f6± 2.鸥b2 鸥a5. Nevertheless, for these suggestions you get 1 consolation point.

1...鸥a8

1...鸥xh4? 2.鸥xh4 鸥h4 3.鸥g5! 鸥g4 4.鸥e2

鸥f5 5.g4 鸥e4 6.f3+- (another 1 point for this variation)

2.h5 鸥a5 3.鸥c1 鸥a8 4.hxg6 fxg6

After 4...hxg6 too, White would have a dangerous initiative, e.g. 5.鸥e5 鸥xe5 6.鸥xe5

鸥f8 7.鸥g5 鸥g7 8.鸥xg7 鸥xg7 9.鸥xg6!

fxg6 10.鸥e7+ 鸥h6 11.鸥h2+- and 鸥h1 is coming.

5.鸥e5 鸥xe5 6.鸥xe5 鸥e8 7.鸥h6 鸥f8

8.鸥h3?!

White has a promising attack.

**Ex. 3-7**

R.Kholmov – L.Aronson

USSR Team Ch, Riga 1954

1.鸥xd7! 鸥b7

White simply wins a pawn, since 1...鸥d8? is met by 2.鸥e6+--.

(1 point)

If 1...鸥xe4?, then 2.鸥g5+-.

(another 1 point)

2.鸥g5 鸥f8 3.鸥d6! 鸥c5+

3...鸥xd6 4.鸥xd6 b5 5.c5+-

4.鸥xc5 bxc5 5.鸥e7 鸥f4 6.鸥e6+ 鸥h8

7.鸥d5!

1-0

**Ex. 3-8**

T.Petrosian – R.Kholmov

Vilnius 1951

1...鸥xf2!!

(1 point)

2.鸥b7

If 2.鸥xf2, then 2...鸥xd1--.

After 2.鸥xd5 comes 2...鸥d1--+, threatening both 鸥xe2 and 鸥b6+.

(another 1 point for this variation)

2...鸥d1+

Weaker is 2...鸥xb7 3.鸥xd5 鸥b6? 4.鸥d4

鸥xd4 5.鸥xd4±.

3.鸥xd1 鸥d2 4.鸥e2 鸥xd1+ 5.鸥xf2 鸥xe2+

6.鸥xe2 鸥a8!+ 7.鸥d2 a4 8.鸥c2 a3 9.鸥b1

a2+ 10.鸥a1 鸥d6 0-1
Ex. 3-9

R. Kholmov – G. Borisenko
USSR Ch, Leningrad 1956

1. \( \text{Q}e5! \)

This ‘just’ leads to a positional advantage.

(1 point)

If 1... \( \text{dxe}5 \), then 2. \( \text{Q}xe5? \) is followed by 2. \( \text{Q}xf6 \) \( \text{Q}xg6 \)

3. \( \text{Q}xe8 \) \( \text{Q}xd3 \) 4. \( \text{Q}xf6 \) \( \text{Q}xb2 \) 5. \( \text{Q}xg6 \) \( \text{Q}xh2 \)

6. \( \text{Q}xh2 \)\( \text{Q}d4 \).

(1 point for this variation)

2. \( \text{Q}xf6 \)

3. \( \text{e}6 \) 4. \( \text{Q}xb2 \) \( \text{Q}xh2 \) 5. \( \text{Q}a8 \) \( \text{Q}d4 \) 6. \( \text{Q}b1 \) \( \text{Q}d4 \) ±.

Ex. 3-10

W. Uhlmann – R. Kholmov
Moscow 1960

1. \( \text{d}5! \)

2. \( \text{cxd}5 \)

3. \( \text{Q}xd5 \) \( \text{Q}xd5 \) 4. \( \text{Q}xd5 \) \( \text{Q}xb2 \)+

(1 point)

The point behind the combination.

4. \( \text{Q}xd5 \) \( \text{Q}f2 \) 5. \( \text{Q}f4 \)

White cannot meet all the various threats.

6. \( \text{Q}e1 \) \( \text{Q}d4 \)

7. \( \text{Q}c6 \) \( \text{Q}xd4 \) 8. \( \text{Q}xd4 \) \( \text{Q}e5 \) 9. \( \text{Q}xh2 \)\# is the threat.

(2 points)

5. \( \text{Q}f4 \)

And now ... \( \text{Q}g2 \)\# is threatened.

0–1

Ex. 3-11

R. Kholmov – E. Chukaev
Vilnius 1960

1. \( \text{Q}xd6! \)

White wins a pawn.

1... \( \text{Q}c8 \)

Or 1... \( \text{Q}xf3 \) 2. \( \text{gxf3} \) ±.

(1 point)

2. \( \text{Q}xf8 \) \( \text{Q}xf8 \) 3. \( \text{d}6+ \) \( \text{Q}e7 \) 4. \( \text{Q}g3 \) \( \text{Q}d7 \) 5. \( \text{Q}e7 \) \( \text{Q}e4 \) 6. \( \text{Q}e1 \) \( \text{Q}e4 \) 7. \( \text{Q}c7 \) \( \text{Q}d8 \)

If 7... \( \text{Q}xb5 \), then 8. \( \text{Q}d7 \) (or 8. \( \text{Q}d5 \) \( \text{Q}e4 \) 9. \( \text{Q}xf7\)\#) 8... \( \text{Q}xd7 \) 9. \( \text{Q}d5 \) ±.

8. \( \text{Q}e3 \)

Threatening \( \text{Q}g6\)\#.

9. \( \text{Q}e6 \) 9. \( \text{Q}c6 \) \( \text{Q}e8 \)

10. \( \text{d}7! \) \( \text{Q}xd7 \) 11. \( \text{Q}xd7 \)

1–0

Ex. 3-12

I. Vistanetskis – R. Kholmov
Vilnius 1953

1... \( \text{g}5! \)

The white bishop is coming under pressure.

2. \( \text{Q}e3 \) \( \text{d}5!! \)

(1 point)

The threat is ... \( \text{d}5-d4 \).

3. \( \text{cxd}5 \)

4. \( \text{Q}xd5 \) \( \text{Q}xd5 \) 5. \( \text{Q}xd5\# \) \( \text{Q}h8 \)

Now the other bishop is pinned and will be lost. Black threatens 6... \( \text{Q}b4 \) or 6... \( \text{Q}f5 \).

(another 1 point)

6. \( \text{Q}a1 \) \( \text{b}6 \) 7. \( \text{Q}xg5 \)

7. \( \text{Q}xe6 \) would not offer any hope: 7... \( \text{Q}xd2 \)

8. \( \text{Q}xd2 \) \( \text{Q}d6++ \)

If 7. \( \text{a}3 \), then 7... \( \text{Q}e5 \) 8. \( \text{Q}f d1 \) \( \text{Q}e7-+ \).

7... \( \text{hxg5} \)

8. \( \text{e}4 \) \( \text{d}4-+ \) 9. \( \text{f}4 \) \( \text{gf4} \) 10. \( \text{gf4} \)

\( \text{Q}xd5! \)

Black simplifies the position with the help of ‘minor’ tactics.

11. \( \text{exd}5 \) \( \text{Q}e2\# \) 12. \( \text{Q}g2 \) \( \text{Q}e4\# \) 13. \( \text{Q}f3 \) \( \text{Q}xf4\# \)

0–1
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 25

22 points and above \(\rightarrow\) Excellent
17 points and above \(\rightarrow\) Good
12 points \(\rightarrow\) Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
How should you study an opening? In this chapter we shall use a method which I call 'Follow my leader'. You choose yourself a 'leader', a strong chess player who plays the said opening very well and successfully, and you study his games. As you do so, it is more important to understand the ideas behind the opening, than simply to copy the opening moves of the top player.

The grandmaster Evgeny Sveshnikov is a very successful and strong opponent of the French Defence. He always chooses to play the Advance Variation against it (1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5).

In this variation White has an advantage in space, which normally means an initiative on the kingside. In rare cases White can also act on the queenside, though there he mostly restricts himself to purely defensive operations. Let us see how Sveshnikov pursues this strategy.

E. Sveshnikov – L. Psakhis
Sochi 1987

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3

Diagram 4-1

4...\(\mathcal{Q}c6\)

Another plan for Black is 4...\(\mathcal{B}b6\) followed by 5...\(\mathcal{D}d7\). Black then wants to exchange the light-squared bishops. An example from our leader: 4...\(\mathcal{B}b6\) 5.\(\mathcal{Q}f3\) \(\mathcal{D}d7\) 6.a3?! \(\mathcal{B}b5\) 7.b4 (7.c4?! \(\mathcal{Q}xc4\) 8.\(\mathcal{Q}xc4\) dxc4 9.\(\mathcal{Q}bd2\) \(\mathcal{W}a6\) 10.\(\mathcal{Q}e2\)=) 7...\(\mathcal{Q}xd4\) 8.\(\mathcal{Q}xb5\) \(\mathcal{W}xb5\) 9.\(\mathcal{Q}xd4\) \(\mathcal{Q}d7\) 10.\(\mathcal{Q}c3\) \(\mathcal{W}c6\) 11.\(\mathcal{Q}a4\) a5 12.\(\mathcal{Q}d2\) \(\mathcal{Q}xb4\) 13.a\(\mathcal{Q}xb4\) \(\mathcal{W}a6\) 14.b5! (White aims to exploit his lead in development) 14...\(\mathcal{Q}xb5\) 15.\(\mathcal{Q}c3\) \(\mathcal{Q}xa1\) 16.\(\mathcal{Q}xb5\) \\(\mathcal{X}xd1\) 17.\(\mathcal{X}xd1\) \(\mathcal{Q}b8\) 18.\(\mathcal{Q}e2\) \(\mathcal{Q}d7\) 19.\(\mathcal{Q}b1\) \(\mathcal{Q}c6\)

E. Sveshnikov – A. Grosar, Celje 2003. White has a dangerous initiative. See Ex. 4-2.

5.\(\mathcal{Q}f3\)

In this variation, White must defend the d4-pawn well.

5...\(\mathcal{Q}ge7\)
This move is rarely employed. The main continuations are 5...b6 and 5...d7.

6.d3
6.a3, intending c2, is an alternative.

6...cxd4 7.cxd4 d5
A standard strategy: Black puts pressure on d4. But here White can exchange the knight.

8.xf5 exf5 9.c3 e6

Diagram 4-2

10.e2!
White is still delaying castling. In many cases he needs the advance h2-h4 in order to be able to develop an initiative on the kingside.

If 10.0-0, then 10...e7 plans ...g5 with level chances.

10...e7

10...h6 is met by 11.h4.

If 10...b6, then 11.f4 h6 12.h4 g6 13.f1 e7 14.g3 0-0-0 15.g2 b8 16.b1± G.Sax – M.Gurevich, Bundesliga 1993.

11.h4! a5?!?
Black just loses a tempo with this. The rook is so well posted on h1, that White will prefer artificial castling: f1 and then either g1 or g3 and g2. Therefore 11...b6 at once would have been more advisable.

12.f1 h6 13.f4± c8
Castling queenside would be safer.

14.g1 b6
Black could consider 14...g6! followed by f8-g7.

15.h5?! b4?!
Black tries to make use of the c-file for counterplay. But this strategy is based on a tactical oversight.

15...0-0 is answered by 16.h3 intending g3.

Diagram 4-3

16.d2! c2?
It was better to retreat with 16...c6, although after 17.c3± White would soon move his rook via h3 to g3 and obtain excellent attacking chances.

17.xe6! xe6 18.c1±
The knight is now pinned.

18...xb2 19.d1 xd4 20.xc2 0-0
Black does not have sufficient compensation to show for the piece.

21.h3 xe2
Opening 1

After 21...\texttt{\textbf{W}}xe5 White has a pleasant choice:

a) Simplest is 22.\texttt{\textbf{R}}e3 \texttt{\textbf{W}}d6 23.\texttt{\textbf{R}}c3\# (or 23.\texttt{\textbf{W}}e2\#) when the black pawns in the centre are blockaded and can be attacked.

b) More complicated, but also good for White is 22.\texttt{\textbf{R}}c3! \texttt{\textbf{W}}d6 23.\texttt{\textbf{R}}g3 e5 (23...\texttt{\textbf{R}}g5 24.\texttt{\textbf{R}}f3--+) 24.\texttt{\textbf{R}}d3 d4 25.\texttt{\textbf{R}}b4 \texttt{\textbf{W}}e6 26.\texttt{\textbf{R}}g6 \texttt{\textbf{R}}f6?!\#.

22.\texttt{\textbf{R}}xc2 \texttt{\textbf{W}}a4 23.\texttt{\textbf{R}}c3!
White coordinates his forces.

23...\texttt{\textbf{W}}xa2 24.\texttt{\textbf{R}}d4!+-
24.\texttt{\textbf{R}}c7 is also good.

24...\texttt{\textbf{W}}a6
Or 24...\texttt{\textbf{R}}e8 25.\texttt{\textbf{R}}xe6 \texttt{\textbf{R}}b4 26.\texttt{\textbf{R}}c2+-.

25.\texttt{\textbf{R}}g3
The threats are \texttt{\textbf{R}}xh6 and \texttt{\textbf{R}}g6. The black position collapses.

1–0

E.Sveshnikov – J.Timman
Tilburg 1992

1.e4 \texttt{\textbf{e}}6 2.d4 \texttt{\textbf{d}}5 3.e5 \texttt{\textbf{c}}5 4.c3 \texttt{\textbf{c}}c6 5.\texttt{\textbf{f}}f3 \texttt{\textbf{W}}b6 6.a3
White wants to play b4, because then he could also play on the queenside and extend his advantage in space. The d4-pawn can then also be protected by \texttt{\textbf{R}}b2.

After 6.\texttt{\textbf{R}}d3 \texttt{\textbf{R}}d7 the d4-pawn is hanging. The pawn sacrifice after 7.0–0 is very unclear according to theory.

6...c4
The alternatives are 6...\texttt{\textbf{h}}h6 and 6...\texttt{\textbf{d}}d7.

7.\texttt{\textbf{R}}bd2 \texttt{\textbf{d}}d7!!

This gives White extra possibilities. The correct way is 7...\texttt{\textbf{a}}a5 8.\texttt{\textbf{e}}e2 \texttt{\textbf{d}}d7 9.0–0 \texttt{\textbf{e}}e7 10.\texttt{\textbf{h}}h1?!.

8.b3!
A surprise. White exploits his lead in development and starts play on the wing where he should actually be weaker. To spot such opportunities at the right time, you need to have outstanding feeling for the position.

8.g3?! is a standard alternative.

8...cxb3 9.\texttt{\textbf{a}}xb3 \texttt{\textbf{a}}a5
9...\texttt{\textbf{c}}c8?!
10.\(\text{dxa5}\) \(\text{wxax5}\) 11.\(\text{d2}\) \(\text{a4}\)

The queen is not safe here; 11...\(\text{c7}\) would be better.

12.\(\text{b1}\)±

The white pawn structure is weakened on the queenside. So White absolutely must hang on to the queens and play for an attack.

12...\(\text{c6}\)

12...\(\text{b5}\) is met by 13.\(\text{d3}\), intending \(\text{c2}\) and \(\text{a4}\)±.

13.\(\text{d3}\) \(\text{e7}\) 14.0–0 \(\text{h6}\)

14...\(\text{c8}\) 15.\(\text{xh7}\)±

15.\(\text{c1}\) \(\text{c8}\)

\text{Diagram 4-5}

A typical problem in the Advance Variation; the black knight from \text{g8} and the bishop on \text{f8} are getting in each other's way.

Slightly better was 15...\(\text{d8}\) 16.\(\text{a2}\)±.

16.\(\text{c4}\)!

Otherwise Black could transfer his knight to \text{b6} and bring the queenside under his control.

16...\(\text{xc4}\)!!

Nor would 16...\(\text{b6}\) be any better, on account of 17.\(\text{xh5}\) \(\text{exd5}\) (17...\(\text{xh5}\) 18.\(\text{c4}\) \(\text{wb5}\) 19.\(\text{b4}\)±) 18.\(\text{e6}\)! with a strong attack.

17.\(\text{xc4}\) \(\text{b5}\)

If 17...\(\text{a6}\), then 18.\(\text{xc6}\) \(\text{xc6}\) 19.\(\text{b5}\)±.

18.\(\text{xb5}\) \(\text{xb5}\) 19.\(\text{xc8}\)± \(\text{xc8}\) 20.\(\text{xb5}\)± \(\text{d8}\)

21.\(\text{f1}\)±

White has a decisive advantage in material. Sveshnikov continues to play very energetically.

21...\(\text{c7}\) 22.\(\text{c1}\)± \(\text{b8}\) 23.\(\text{xc8}\)± \(\text{xc8}\) 24.\(\text{e8}\)! \(\text{f6}\)

25.\(\text{a4}\) \(\text{e7}\) 26.\(\text{f7}\) \(\text{d7}\)

\text{Diagram 4-6}

27.\(\text{d5}\)! \(\text{exd5}\) 28.\(\text{e6}\)†

And Black has no defence against the strong manoeuvre \(\text{f4}-\text{f5}\)(or \(\text{g6}\)), which led him to resign immediately.

\text{E.Sveshnikov – E.Bareev\at Russian Ch, Elista 1996}

1.\(\text{e4}\) \(\text{e6}\) 2.\(\text{d4}\) \(\text{d5}\) 3.\(\text{e5}\) \(\text{c5}\) 4.\(\text{c3}\) \(\text{Dc6}\) 5.\(\text{f3}\) \(\text{wb6}\)

After 5...\(\text{d7}\) Sveshnikov prefers the variation 6.\(\text{e2}\) \(\text{ge7}\) 7.\(\text{a3}\) \(\text{f5}\) 8.\(\text{c2}\); see the exercises.

6.\(\text{a3}\) \(\text{h6}\)
Opening 1

6...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d7\) 7.b4 \(\text{cxd4}\) 8.cxd4 \(\text{\textdoubleslash}c8\) 9.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}b2\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}a5\) 10.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}bd2\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}c4\) 11.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xc4\) dxc4 12.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}c1\) is another main variation.

7.b4 \(\text{cxd4}\) 8.\(\text{cxd4}\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}f5\) 9.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}b2\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}e7\)

9...a5 10.b5 a4 11.g4 \(\text{\textdoubleslash}e7\) 12.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}c3\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}b8\) 13.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d3\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}d7\) 14.0-0 \(\text{\textdoubleslash}g6\) 15.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}c1\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}e7\) 16.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xa4\) and although Black has some compensation for the pawn, White stands slightly better, E.Sveshnikov – E.Bareev, Moscow 1995.

9...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d7\) 10.g4 \(\text{\textdoubleslash}h6\) is another alternative.

10.h4!!

Diagram 4-7

White wants to play g4 and chase away the knight. If he plays 10.g4 at once, then Black replies 10...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}h4\).

10...h5

10...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d7??\) was played in the game Sveshnikov – Doroshkevich; see Ex. 4-8.

11.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d3\)

Now the exchange on f5 gains in strength, because the g5-square has been weakened.

11...a5 12.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xf5\) \(\text{exf5}\) 13.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}c3\) \(\text{axb4}\)?

13...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}e6\) is correct: 14.b5 a4∞

14.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xd5\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}a5\)

14...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d8\) is followed by 15.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xe7\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}xe7\) 16.d5 \(\text{bxa3}\) 17.0-0#!.

15.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xe7\) \(\text{b3}\)

Black cannot profit from the discovered check, but other moves are no better either:

a) 15...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xa3??\) 16.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d2\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}xe7\) 17.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xa3\)+

b) 15...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xe7\) 16.0-0#

c) 15...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xe7\) 16.0-0 \(\text{\textdoubleslash}d5\) 17.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d2\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}h6\) 18.axb4± (Sveshnikov)

16.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}d2\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}xe7\) 17.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xb3\)

17.0-0? would be simpler. Black must reply 17...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}e6\) and now not 18.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xb3??\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}b6\)+, but 18.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}c1\)± (Sveshnikov).

17...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}h6\)

Black could try 17...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}e6?!\) 18.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xb7\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}d5\) (Har Zvi), but he does not obtain sufficient counterplay.

18.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}c3\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}d5\)

Sveshnikov himself recommends 18...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}a6??\) here.

19.0-0 \(\text{\textdoubleslash}xb3\)

19...\(\text{\textdoubleslash}g6\) 20.f3±

20.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}xb3\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}c6\) 21.\(\text{\textdoubleslash}b4\) \(\text{\textdoubleslash}d5\)
Diagram 4-8

22.\textbf{\textit{Da5!}±}

White was later able to convert his advantage in material.

In the exercises which follow, many useful ideas will crop up too. Make your decisions and take a look at the solutions to see how well you are already mastering these sorts of positions.
Exercises

Ex. 4-1

Ex. 4-2

Ex. 4-3

Ex. 4-4

Ex. 4-5

Ex. 4-6
Solutions

Ex. 4-1

E.Sveshnikov – A.Dreev
St. Petersburg 1993

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ɑc6 5.ɑf3 ɑd7
6.ɑxe2 ɑge7 7.ɑa3 cxd4 8.ɑxd4 ɑxf5 9.ɑc2
ɑb4 10.0–0 ɑxc2 11.ɑxc2 h5 12.ɑ.d2 ɑe7
13.ɑ.d3 ɑb6 14.ɑxf5 exf5

Diagram Ex. 4-1

15.ɑg5!

Neither 15.a4 nor 15.ɑac1 is very promising, and each gets only 1 consolation point. Black can reply, for example, 15...ɑc8.

The move in the game swaps off his opponent’s good bishop. And so White obtains the initiative on the dark squares.

15...ɑxg5 16.ɑxg5 ɑxd4 17.ɑfd1 ɑh4
18.ɑd2± ɑc4

The alternatives do not solve Black’s problems:

a) 18...ɑe6 19.ɑf4!+– and White is threatening to trap the black queen after ɑe3 followed by ɑg3 and h3.

b) 18...ɑc6 19.e6 ɑf6 20.ɑf7 0–0 21.ɑd6 ɑfd8 22.ɑxf5±

c) 18...ɑd8 19.ɑf4 ɑc6 20.h3! d4 21.ɑ.h2!+– and once again the black queen is in trouble.

19.ɑac1 ɑb5 20.a4 ɑb3 21.ɑc3 ɑb6
22.ɑxd5 0–0 23.a5! ɑxb2 24.ɑf3!+–

White threatens both ɑxd7 and ɑxh5.

Ex. 4-2

E.Sveshnikov – A.Grosar
Celje 2003

20.ɑa7!

(2 points)

White sets his opponent some unpleasant problems. But 20.ɑd6?! (also 2 points) would be just as good: 20...ɑxd6 21.exd6 ɑxd6
22.ɑxb7 ɑf6 23.ɑc1 e5 24.dxe5+ ɑe6±

20...ɑxa7?

The correct defence was 20...ɑc7 21.ɑxc6
bxc6! (21...ɑxc6 22.ɑc1+ ɑd7 23.ɑa5±)

22.ɑa5+ ɑc8 23.ɑb6 ɑc7 24.ɑb3+ ɑc8
25.ɑg5 ɑh6 and Black is holding the position.

21.ɑxb7+ ɑe8 22.ɑb8+! ɑd7 23.ɑxf8+-
24.ɑc1 h6 25.h4 ɡ6 26.ɑxh6 ɑxh6
27.ɑxf8 ɑh5 28.g4 ɑh7 29.ɑe3 ɑe7
30.ɑf8 ɑc6 31.ɑg5 ɑxh4 32.ɑxf7+ ɑe8
33.f3 ɑh1 34.ɑf6

1–0

Ex. 4-3

M.Illlescas – A.Yusupov
Linares 1992

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ɑb6 5.ɑf3 ɑd7
6.a3 c4 7.ɑbd2 ɑc6 8.g3 ɑe7??

Diagram Ex. 4-3

Danger! Tactics!

9...ɑxc4!–

(2 points)

9...ɑa5

Of course 9...dxc4 would be bad, in view of
10.ɑxc4 followed by ɑd6+–.

10.ɑe2 ɑb5 11.ɑb4–

Black obtains no compensation for the pawn he has lost and went on to lose the game after a rather hopeless struggle.

Ex. 4-4

E.Sveshnikov – V.Eingorn
Sochi 1986

1.e4 c5 2.c3 e6 3.d4 d5 4.e5 ɑc6 5.ɑf3 ɑb6
6.a3 c4 7.g3 ɑd7 8.h4 ɑa5 9.ɑbd2 ɑc6
10.ɑg5 h6 11.ɑf3 ɑa4 12.ɑf3 ɑc2 13.ɑf4
ɑc7 14.ɑg2 ɑh7

Diagram Ex. 4-4

15.ɑb4!

(3 points)

Black must take the pawn, but then his queen is forced to retreat to g8. White obtains a lead in development, which represents more than enough compensation for the pawn sacrifice. If you don’t take any risks, you don’t get to drink the champagne!
For 15.b3 you get 2 points, because there is no need to give your opponent the extra option of 15...\texttt{axb3}

Only 1 consolation point for the more passive moves 15.h5 or 15..\texttt{d2}.

15...\texttt{axb3} 16..\texttt{d3} \texttt{g6} 17..\texttt{bb1} \texttt{a4} 18..\texttt{e3} \texttt{e8} 19.c4 \texttt{dxc4} 20.\texttt{dxc4} \texttt{dxc4} 21.\texttt{dxc4} \texttt{d5}

21...\texttt{axc4}? is answered by 22.\texttt{dxc4} \texttt{e6} 23.\texttt{axb3}! \texttt{a6} 24.d3 with a decisive attack.

22..\texttt{d2} \texttt{e7} 23.0-0?

Although this won in the end, 23..\texttt{e2}! would have been even more energetic: 23..\texttt{e6} 24..\texttt{e4}±

Ex. 4-5

E.Sveshnikov - S.Iskusnyh

St. Petersburg 1997

1.e4 c5 2..\texttt{f3} \texttt{c6} 3.d4 d5 4.e5 \texttt{d6} 5..\texttt{f3} \texttt{d7} 6..\texttt{e2} \texttt{h6} 7.0-0 \texttt{f5} 8..\texttt{a3} \texttt{cxd4} 9..\texttt{xd4} \texttt{a3} 10.bxa3 \texttt{b6} 11..\texttt{e3} \texttt{e6} 12.fxe\texttt{3} \texttt{d8} 13..\texttt{b1} \texttt{b6} 14.e4 0-0 15..\texttt{d3} \texttt{h6} (\texttt{\textcircled{1}} 15...\texttt{dxe4} 16..\texttt{xe4} \texttt{h6}?) 16.exd5 exd5 17..\texttt{h3} \texttt{c7} 18..\texttt{b3} \texttt{a5}

Diagram Ex. 4-5

19..\texttt{b6}!

(2 points)

19..\texttt{xd5}?! would not be so good: 19...\texttt{c6} 20.\texttt{d6} \texttt{xd6} 21.exd6 \texttt{ad8}\texttt{\textcircled{1}} (Psakhis)

19...\texttt{xb4}?! This just improves his opponent's pawn structure unnecessarily. 19...\texttt{c6}! would be better, when play may continue 20.\texttt{exe7} \texttt{exe7} 21..\texttt{ac1} \texttt{ec8} 22..\texttt{a6} \texttt{ac1} 23.\texttt{xc1} \texttt{c6}- (Psakhis).

20.axb4 \texttt{c4} 21.a4 \texttt{f8} 22..\texttt{f2} \texttt{c7} 23.g4 \texttt{eac8} 24..\texttt{e2} \texttt{e8} 25..\texttt{h4}±

White intends \texttt{f5}.

Ex. 4-6

E.Sveshnikov - A.Fominyh

Russian Ch, Elista 1996

1.e4 c5 2..\texttt{f3} \texttt{c6} 3.e3 c6 4.d4 d5 5..\texttt{e2} \texttt{d7} 6..\texttt{e2} 7..\texttt{a3} \texttt{f5} 8..\texttt{c2} \texttt{e7} 9.0-0 \texttt{cxd4} 10.exd4 \texttt{h5} 11.b4 \texttt{c8} 12..\texttt{b1} a6 13.a4 \texttt{b6} 14.b5 \texttt{axb5} 15..\texttt{xb5} \texttt{c7} 16..\texttt{e3} \texttt{xe3} 17..\texttt{xe3} \texttt{a5}

Diagram Ex. 4-6

18..\texttt{g5}±

(2 points)

The typical idea: White swaps off the dark-squared bishops. See Ex. 4-1.

1 consolation point for 18..\texttt{d3}; Black's French bishop is no longer bad as it is attacking the a4-pawn. You also get 1 point for the solid move 18..\texttt{d3}.

18..\texttt{xb5} 19..\texttt{xb5} \texttt{c4} 20.h4 \texttt{b6} 21..\texttt{xe7} \texttt{c7} 22..\texttt{g5} \texttt{a8} 23..\texttt{b3}!

White plans \texttt{b3}.

23...\texttt{e7} 24..\texttt{c2} \texttt{g6} 25..\texttt{f3} \texttt{f8}?

25...0-0! is better, and if 26..\texttt{f6} (intending \texttt{27.g4! hXg4 28.h5}), then 26...\texttt{b4}!

Now Black is playing practically without the f8-rook.

26..\texttt{b1}! \texttt{d7} 27..\texttt{b4} \texttt{c7} 28..\texttt{c3} \texttt{d8} 29..\texttt{h7}! \texttt{h8} 30..\texttt{f6} \texttt{e7} 31..\texttt{b3} \texttt{e6} 32..\texttt{b5} \texttt{c7} 33.a5!±

White went on to win.

Ex. 4-7

E.Sveshnikov - L.Ortega

Sochi 1987

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3..\texttt{e5} \texttt{c5} 4..\texttt{c3} \texttt{c6} 5..\texttt{f3} \texttt{dg7} 6..\texttt{a3} \texttt{cxd4} 7..\texttt{xd4} \texttt{fs} 8..\texttt{c2} \texttt{a5} 9..\texttt{d2} \texttt{b6} 10..\texttt{c3} \texttt{e7} 11..\texttt{d3} a5 12..\texttt{e3} \texttt{g6} 13.0-0 \texttt{d7} 14..\texttt{c2} \texttt{h5} (14...0-0 15..\texttt{g4} and then \texttt{f6}?) 15..\texttt{d2} \texttt{g8} 16.g3 \texttt{d4}

Diagram Ex. 4-7

17..\texttt{xf5}!

(2 points)

Sveshnikov's favourite plan: he weakens his opponent's kingside.
Solutions

1 consolation point for 17...gxf5
17...exf5? 18.a3+-

18.h4 g5 19.g3 d6 20.g5± Nh8
21.a3

Better is the immediate 21.g2.
21...c6 22.g2?! g7 23.e1 c4 24.f4
f3 25.e3

Intending f3 followed by hxg5.
25...b5

25...hxg5?! is an improvement, and if 26.fxg6! fxg6 27.gxg5±, then not 27...hxg5? 28.hf6+-, but 27...h7 and White has no more than a perpetual check after 28....xh5.

26.eac1 c4 27.g2 Bcg8 28.f3 Nh8?

Better is either 28...hxg5 or 28...Nh6!.

29.fxg6

1-0

Ex. 4-8

E.Sveshnikov – V.Doroshkievich
St. Petersburg 2000

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 d6 5.f3 f6 6.b4 a6 7.g4 f6 8.cx d4 fx d4 9.d2 d e8 10.d3 a6 11.f3 d6 12.d4 e5 13.d5 exd5 22.e6! would be even stronger: both 22...fxe6 23.0-0-0 and 22...fxe6 23.g5f5 d8 24.e5 give White a strong attack.

22...d8 23.g3

Better is 23...f8.

24.f4

Stronger is 24.g3! followed by xf5.

24...d5?! 25.f5 d6 26.d4 d7 27.g5f5 d6 28.g3 e5 29.fx e4

Ex. 4-9

E.Sveshnikov – D.Brumen
Bled 2000

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 d6 5.f3 f6 6.b4 a6 7.g4 f6 8.cx d4 fx d4 9.d2 d e8 10.d3 a6

Diagram Ex. 4-9

14.a4!±

(2 points)

Otherwise ...Bb5 follows and Black succeeds in exchanging his bad French bishop.

14...Bb4 15.Bd2 g5?! 16.g3 a8 17.fxe8+ fxe8 18.f1 d7 19.g2 Bb7 20.d3 Wb4 21.d1 fxe3 22.d2 Bb6 23.fx e3 h5 24.Wd2 g4 25.a5 a7 26.b4 d5 27.d2 Bb8 28.Bd2 Bb7 29.f5!

Ex. 4-10

Opening variation

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 d6 5.f3 f6 6.g4 a6 7.c3 d4 8.c4 g5 9.d2 Bb6 10.0-0 Bb7 11.f4! 11...fxe5 (1 point)

Diagram Ex. 4-10

White wins a piece by means of a pin.

12.Bxd4 cxd4 13.Bd3 c5 14.b4+-

(1 point)
Solutions

Ex. 4-11

E. Sveshnikov - S. Dolmatov
USSR Team Ch, Naberezneye Chelny 1988

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 c6 5.d3 d7
6.e2 0-0 7.a3 cxd4 8.cxd4 f3 9.c2
10.0-0 a5 11.g4 e7 12.fe1 b5
13.d5 h5 14.gxh5 f5 15.e3 c4 16.a4
cxe3 17.fxe3 c4 18.d3 b3 19.b5
d8 20.e2 xc2

Diagram Ex. 4-11

21.a5!

A necessary intermediate move. If 21.xc2, then 21...xc3.

21...c7 22.fc1 c8 23.a6= b6 24.a4
c4! 25.xe2 xc2 26.xc8=

Better is 26.xe2 c7 27.g2= c4 28.e2
B4 (28...h4= 29.c2 Bb4= 30.b3 b5
31.d3=) 29.a2= 26...xc8 27.xe2 e7

Ex. 4-12

O. Romanishin - V. Ivanchuk
Irkutsk 1986

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 c6 5.d3 d7
6.e2 fe 7.0-0 fe5 8.xe5 xe5 9.dxe5
c7 10.c4 xe5 (10...0-0-0= 11.cxd5
xe5 12.f3 exd5 13.e1 d6=) 11.h5
g6 12.f3 0-0-0 13.e1 xd6 14.c3! dc4
15.xe2 xc6 16.xc4 c7 17.f4 xd4=

Diagram Ex. 4-12

18.b5!!

(2 points)

18...xb5
18...xc4?? 19.xa7#
19.xb7!!

(another 1 point)

Black now resigned. 19...xb7 is met by
20.xb5 c8 21.c6#.

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 26

22 points and above ➔ Excellent
17 points and above ➔ Good
12 points ➔ Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Simple rook endings

Rook endings occur very frequently in praxis. In order to better understand and play these important endgames, you need to have some specific knowledge concerning the elementary positions with rook and pawn versus rook.

There are only a limited number of positions that you have to study, but the evaluation of these positions and the typical methods of play must be thoroughly assimilated. In this lesson we shall examine some of the most important positions and methods.

The bridge

Diagram 5-1

The bridge is a typical and universal method which demonstrates the way to win in positions where there is a pawn on the 7th rank. Of course it does not work only in the position in the diagram.

1.\( \texttt{Be2} \)

It is always a good idea to drive the opposing king as far away as possible from the passed pawn.

1...\( \texttt{d7} \)

If 1...\( \texttt{d6} \) were played, the white king would be able to use the e8-square: 2.\( \texttt{f8} \) \( \texttt{hf1} \) 3.\( \texttt{e8}! \) \( \texttt{g1} \)

4.\( \texttt{e7} \) \( \texttt{a1} \) (4...\( \texttt{g2} \) 5.\( \texttt{f8} \) intending \( \texttt{f7} \) then g8\( \texttt{\texttt{\#}} \) )

5.\( \texttt{f8}! \) \( \texttt{a8} \) 6.\( \texttt{e8} \) and wins.

1...\( \texttt{f6} \) is answered by 2.\( \texttt{f8} \) and then g8\( \texttt{\#} \).

2.\( \texttt{e4} \)

White prepares to build the bridge (here the blocking of the g-file). The attempt to move away with the king does not yet achieve anything as Black simply delivers checks.

2...\( \texttt{h2} \)

After 2...\( \texttt{f1} \) 3.\( \texttt{h4} \) \( \texttt{e6} \) 4.\( \texttt{h8} \) the road is clear for the pawn.

3.\( \texttt{f7} \) \( \texttt{f2} \) 4.\( \texttt{g6} \) \( \texttt{g2} \) 5.\( \texttt{f6} \)

White now threatens \( \texttt{e5}-\texttt{g5} \).

5...\( \texttt{f2} \)

5...\( \texttt{d6} \) is met by 6.\( \texttt{d4} \) (but not 6.\( \texttt{e5??} \) \( \texttt{xg7} \) )

6...\( \texttt{c5} \) 7.\( \texttt{d8} \) \( \texttt{f2} \) 8.\( \texttt{e5} \) and wins.

6.\( \texttt{g5} \) \( \texttt{g2} \) 7.\( \texttt{g4} \)

The bridge has been successfully built and White wins.
The Philidor position

**Diagram 5-2**

1...\(\text{b}6!\)

Philidor’s defensive method is very simple: Black keeps the rook on the 6th rank until White advances the pawn to f6, and then Black activates his rook, by posting it on the first rank and giving checks from behind.

*Passive defence*, where the black rook remains on the back rank, leads to a loss against a bishop’s pawn:

1...\(\text{g}8?\) 2.\(\text{g}6\) \(\text{c}8\) 3.f6 \(\text{d}8\) 4.\(\text{g}7\)\(t\) \(\text{f}8\) 5.\(\text{h}7\)

(Note that with a knight’s pawn or a rook’s pawn this winning manoeuvre is not possible, and the game would end in a draw!) 5...\(\text{g}8\) 6.f7\(t\) \(\text{f}8\) 7.\(\text{h}8\)\(t\) \(\text{e}7\) 8.\(\text{x}d8\)\(+-\).

1...\(\text{c}8?\) 2.\(\text{g}6\) \(\text{c}1\) also loses, on account of 3.\(\text{a}8\)\(t\) \(\text{e}7\) 4.f6\(t\) \(\text{e}6\) 5.\(\text{e}8\)\(t\) \(\text{d}7\) 6.f7\(+-\).

1...\(\text{b}1\) is analysed below.

2.f6 \(\text{b}1\) 3.\(\text{g}6\) \(\text{g}1\)\(t\) 4.\(\text{f}5\) \(\text{f}1\)\(t\)=

**Diagram 5-3**

1...\(\text{b}1\)

The second defensive method is important because:

1) sometimes the safer first method cannot be employed;

2) it also demonstrates some important endgame ideas, such as the \textit{short side} and the \textit{flank attack}.

Let’s remind ourselves: 1...\(\text{b}6!\) 2.f6 \(\text{b}1=\) is the first and best defensive method in the Philidor position.

2.\(\text{g}6\)

If 2.\(\text{f}6\), then we can transpose into the main Philidor defensive method with 2...\(\text{b}6!\).

2...\(\text{f}1\)!

The best defence. Black aims to prevent the move f5-f6 (after White’s rook checks).

2...\(\text{b}6?\) loses to 3.f6.

2...\(\text{g}1?\) is less precise, but is also sufficient for a draw: 3.\(\text{g}6\) \(\text{g}8!\) 4.\(\text{a}8\)\(t\) \(\text{h}7\) 5.\(\text{f}7\) \(\text{b}1\) 6.f6 \(\text{b}7\)\(t\) 7.\(\text{e}6\) \(\text{b}6\)\(t\)=

3.\(\text{f}6\)

3.\(\text{a}8\)\(t\) achieves nothing, on account of 3...\(\text{e}7=\)

and the pawn gets no further.

3...\(\text{g}8!\)

**Diagram 5-4**

The king absolutely has to go to the short side.
3...\texttt{e}e8\texttt{?} would be bad, because of 4.\texttt{a}a8\texttt{+} \texttt{d}d7 5.\texttt{f}f8 (White prepares the move \texttt{f}5-\texttt{f}6) 5...\texttt{e}e2 6.\texttt{g}g7 \texttt{c}c7 7.\texttt{f}f6+ \texttt{d}d7 8.\texttt{a}a8 \texttt{g}g2\texttt{+} 9.\texttt{f}f8 \texttt{e}e2 10.\texttt{f}f7 \texttt{g}g2 11.\texttt{a}a1 and we have reached the type of position dealt with above, where White wins by building a bridge: 11...\texttt{g}g3 12.\texttt{d}d1\texttt{+} \texttt{c}c7 13.\texttt{d}d4! \texttt{g}g1 14.\texttt{e}e7 \texttt{e}e1\texttt{+} 15.\texttt{f}f6 \texttt{f}f1\texttt{+} 16.\texttt{e}e6 \texttt{e}e1\texttt{+} 17.\texttt{f}f5 and wins.

4.\texttt{a}a8\texttt{+} \texttt{h}h7 5.\texttt{f}f8

The threat is \texttt{e}e7 followed by \texttt{f}6. However, Black has at his disposal a typical defence, which is once more linked with the activation of his rook.

Diagram 5-5

5...\texttt{a}a1!

Black wants to start checking from the side.

6.\texttt{e}e8

Or 6.\texttt{e}e7 \texttt{a}a7\texttt{+}.

6...\texttt{f}f1!

Once more White is prevented from advancing his \texttt{f}-pawn.

7.\texttt{e}e7\texttt{+} \texttt{g}g8=

### Flank attack against a pawn on the 7th rank

#### Diagram 5-6

N.Grigoriev

1937

Here Black can exploit the unfavourable position of the white rook and save the game with a flank attack.

However, note that if it were White to move, then the position very much resembles a bridging position and White can win very easily! The simplest way is 1.\texttt{g}g1\texttt{+} \texttt{h}h7 2.\texttt{e}e1\texttt{!} and next the white king will clear the way for his pawn.

1...\texttt{a}a8\texttt{!}

The flank attack saves Black!

1...\texttt{d}d2 loses, on the other hand, in view of 2.\texttt{g}g1\texttt{+} \texttt{h}h7 3.\texttt{g}g4\texttt{+}=. Once more the bridging method!

2.\texttt{d}d7 \texttt{a}a7\texttt{+} 3.\texttt{d}d6 \texttt{a}a6\texttt{+!}

But not 3...\texttt{a}a8\texttt{?} due to 4.\texttt{a}a1! \texttt{b}b8 5.\texttt{c}c7\texttt{+}.

A typical winning method!

4.\texttt{d}d5 \texttt{a}a5\texttt{+} 5.\texttt{c}c6 \texttt{a}a6\texttt{+} 6.\texttt{c}c7

The rook does not attack the \texttt{e}-pawn until the white king has moved far enough away from it; thus 6.\texttt{b}b7 is met by 6...\texttt{e}e6\texttt{=}.

6...\texttt{a}a7\texttt{=}
For flank attacks it is very important that the distance between the black rook and the pawn consists of at least three files. If the distance is smaller, the attack will be ineffective, as we shall soon see.

2. $\text{\texttt{\textcolor{black}{\textbf{d}7}}} \text{\texttt{b7t}} 3. \text{\texttt{d}6} \text{\texttt{b8}}$

Or $3... \text{\texttt{b6t}} 4. \text{\texttt{c}7} \text{\texttt{e}6} 5. \text{\texttt{d}7+-}.$

4. $\text{\texttt{c}7} \text{\texttt{a8}} 5. \text{\texttt{a}1t} \text{\texttt{h8}} 6. \text{\texttt{d}7+-}$

Flank attack against a pawn on the 6th rank

Diagram 5-8

Black must act at once. If it were White to move, he would simply force the opposing king further away with $\text{\texttt{g}1t}$, advance his pawn to the 7th rank and then prepare a bridge.

1... $\text{\texttt{a}7t}$!

This flank attack is the only salvation.

2. $\text{\texttt{d}7}$

White wants to advance his pawn after the discovered check.

If 2. $\text{\texttt{d}6}$, then 2... $\text{\texttt{f}8}$ 3. $\text{\texttt{b}1} \text{\texttt{a}6t}$ 4. $\text{\texttt{e}5} \text{\texttt{a}2}$=

(Philidor defence).

2... $\text{\texttt{a}8}$

There are many other moves which do not lose:

a) 2... $\text{\texttt{a}5}$ 3. $\text{\texttt{e}8t}$ (3. $\text{\texttt{d}6} \text{\texttt{a}8}$! 4. $\text{\texttt{d}7} \text{\texttt{f}6}$=) 3... $\text{\texttt{f}6}$ (but not 3... $\text{\texttt{g}8}$? 4. $\text{\texttt{e}7} \text{\texttt{a}8t}$ [4... $\text{\texttt{a}1}$ 5. $\text{\texttt{d}2+-}$. 5. $\text{\texttt{d}8} \text{\texttt{a}7} 6. $\text{\texttt{c}8+-}$.] 4. $\text{\texttt{e}7} \text{\texttt{e}6}$!)

Diagram 5-9

5. $\text{\texttt{f}8} \text{\texttt{f}5t}=$

b) 2... $\text{\texttt{a}1}$ is also good enough.

c) On the other hand, 2... $\text{\texttt{a}6??}$ would be bad. This is the only move on the a-file which loses! 3. $\text{\texttt{e}8t}$ $\text{\texttt{f}6}$ 4. $\text{\texttt{e}7} \text{\texttt{a}8t}$ (if 4... $\text{\texttt{e}6}$, then 5. $\text{\texttt{f}8t}+-$, and Black has no saving check on the f-file as in variation 'a') 5. $\text{\texttt{d}8} \text{\texttt{a}7} 6. $\text{\texttt{d}6t} \text{\texttt{g}7}$ 7. $\text{\texttt{e}6} \text{\texttt{a}8t}$ 8. $\text{\texttt{d}7+-}$

3. $\text{\texttt{d}8}$

After 3. $\text{\texttt{b}7}$ Black can has more than one way to hold:
a) 3...\texttt{g6} 4.\texttt{d6} \texttt{f6} 5.\texttt{f7}+ \texttt{g6} 6.\texttt{f1} \texttt{a6}+ 7.\texttt{d7} \texttt{a7}=  
b) 3...\texttt{a1} 4.\texttt{e8}+ (or 4.\texttt{d6}+ \texttt{f6} 5.\texttt{f7}+ \texttt{g6} 6.\texttt{f2} \texttt{a6}+=) 4...\texttt{f6}! 5.e7 \texttt{a8}+ 6.\texttt{d7} \texttt{f7}=  
Another very important variation is 3.\texttt{d6}? after which there is only a single defence!

Diagram 5-10
Black must wait with 3...\texttt{g6}! (not 3...\texttt{a7}+? 4.\texttt{e8}+ nor 3...\texttt{b8}? 4.\texttt{d8} \texttt{b7}+ 5.\texttt{d6} \texttt{b6}+ 6.\texttt{d7} \texttt{b7}+ 7.\texttt{c6}+--) and now a draw will result after, for example, 4.\texttt{d8} \texttt{a7}+ 5.\texttt{d6} \texttt{a6}+ 6.\texttt{e5} \texttt{a5}+ 7.\texttt{d5} \texttt{a1} 8.\texttt{d6} \texttt{f6}=.

Diagram 5-11
3...\texttt{a7}!  
The simplest solution. Black must prevent \texttt{e8} followed by \texttt{e7}.
Thus 3...\texttt{a2}? would be bad, because of 4.\texttt{e8} \texttt{f6} 5.e7 \texttt{e6} 6.\texttt{b8}+--.
But here 3...\texttt{a6} is also possible! After 4.\texttt{d7} (or 4.\texttt{d6} \texttt{a8}!) there follows 4...\texttt{f6} 5.\texttt{f8}+ \texttt{e5}=.
4.\texttt{d6} \texttt{a6}+ 5.\texttt{e5} \texttt{a5}+ 6.\texttt{d5} \texttt{a1}  
Now \texttt{e7} is no longer a threat.
7.\texttt{d6} \texttt{f8}=  

The stalemate defence

Diagram 5-12
Another useful defensive idea.
1...\texttt{g7}+=  
Black must of course avoid passive defence!  
1...\texttt{b8}? loses after 2.\texttt{a7} \texttt{c8} 3.\texttt{g7}+ \texttt{f8} 4.\texttt{h7} \texttt{g8} 5.f7+.  
2.\texttt{f5}  
Or 2.fxg7 stalemate.
2...\texttt{g2}=  
With a transition to the Philidor defence.

In the exercises you will need these ideas and methods in order to find the correct solutions. To understand the positions better, you may perhaps have to return to this lesson at some later point and repeat the instructional material. You can also try to explain the subject to another player; this will help you understand the lesson much better yourself!
Exercises

Ex. 5-1  ★★★

Ex. 5-4  ★★

Ex. 5-2  ★

Ex. 5-5  ★★

Ex. 5-3  ★★

Ex. 5-6  ★★★
Exercises

Ex. 5-7

Ex. 5-10

Ex. 5-8

Ex. 5-11

Ex. 5-9

Ex. 5-12
Solutions

Ex. 5-1

1. \text{f1}! =

(3 points)

Passive defence saves the day very simply in the fight against a g-pawn! (cf. Diagram 5-2).

1. \text{g8} would be wrong, because of 1...\text{g3}
2. \text{f1} (here we see why the second defensive method fails against the g-pawn; the king has to go to the long side, which is the wrong side)
2...\text{h1}+ 3. \text{e2} \text{g1} 4. \text{g7} \text{h2}+ followed by \text{g4} and builds the bridge!

Ex. 5-2

1. \text{g1}!

(1 point)

The short side (see Diagram 5-4).

1...\text{a1}+ 2. \text{h2} \text{f1} 3. \text{a8}!

Flank attack.

Ex. 5-3

1. \text{d8}!

(1 point)

The second defensive method (see Diagram 5-3).

1...\text{c3} 2. \text{b1}!

(another 1 point)

The short side,

2. \text{h1}+ 3. \text{a2} \text{c2}

Or 3...\text{e1} 4. \text{h8} with the flank attack.

4. \text{g8} \text{d1} 5. \text{h8}

Or 5. \text{g2}+ \text{d2} 6. \text{g1} (but not 6. \text{g8?} \text{c1}+--) 6...\text{c3} 7. \text{h1} \text{d3} 8. \text{a3}!.

5...\text{c3} 6. \text{h2}+ \text{d2} 7. \text{h1} \text{d3}+ 8. \text{b3} \text{b2}+ 9. \text{a3}=

Ex. 5-4

1. \text{b3}!

(2 points)

The main defence in the Philidor position.

Of course the second defensive method can be employed here too (e.g. after 1.\text{b8}), but the first method is a safe and simple defence. For that reason only 1 point for 1.\text{b8}.

1.e3 2.\text{b8}=

Ex. 5-5

G.Kamsky – A.Yusupov

Linares 1993

1. \text{f8}+!

(2 points)

Leading to Diagram 5-1 – the bridge.

1...\text{xe7} 2. \text{f3} \text{e8} 3. \text{e3+} \text{d7} 4. \text{e4} 1-0

Ex. 5-6

W.Uhlmann – B.Gulko

Niksic 1978

In the game White played 1.\text{b3}? and after 1...\text{a6} 2. \text{b1} \text{h6} 3. \text{g1} \text{g6} he had to resign. Passive defence does not work against a central pawn.

White should make use of the stalemate defence! The correct way is:

1. \text{b2}! \text{a6} 2. \text{f2}+!

(3 points)

Ex. 5-7

1.e7!

(1 point)

1...\text{e1} does not win, on account of 1...\text{b8}+ 2. \text{c7} (or 2. \text{d7} \text{b7}+ 3. \text{c6} \text{a7=}) 2...\text{a8}!.

1...\text{b8+}

1...\text{xe7} loses immediately to 2. \text{f1}+.

2. \text{c7} \text{e8} 3. \text{d6}!

(another 1 point)

3...\text{b8}

3...\text{xe7} 4. \text{f1}+=

4. \text{f1}+ \text{g7} 5. \text{c7} \text{a8} 6. \text{a1}!

(another 1 point for this variation)

6...\text{e8} 7. \text{d7}+

Ex. 5-8

1...\text{a2}!

(2 points)

Flank attack.

1...\text{d2}+ 2. \text{e7} \text{a2} loses after 3. \text{g1}+.

2.e7 \text{a7}+=
Ex. 5-9

1.\textit{Be1}!

(2 points)

This strong move threatens to advance the pawn. White is exploiting the somewhat unfavourable position of the black king on g6.

Instead 1.\textit{Be8} \textit{Bb8+} does not make any progress; and 1.\textit{Bf1?} would be bad: 1...\textit{Ba2}!-

1...\textit{Ec2} 2.\textit{Bd7} \textit{Ed2} 3.\textit{Exe8} \textit{Bg7} 4.e7 \textit{Ed3} 5.\textit{Bg1}+ \textit{Sh7} 6.\textit{Bg4}--

The bridge.

Ex. 5-10

1.\textit{Be2}!

(2 points)

It is correct to cut the black king off from our passed pawn here. Since the black king is on the long side, a flank attack cannot be effective (there will only be two files between the pawn and the rook).

1...\textit{Ec3} 2.d7 \textit{Bb3}+ 3.\textit{Exe8} \textit{Ec3}+ 4.\textit{Exd8} \textit{Ac1} 5.\textit{Bf2}+ \textit{Sh7} 6.\textit{Bf4}--

The bridge.

Ex. 5-11

\textbf{G.Sax – V.Tseshkovsky}

Rovinj/Zagreb 1975

In the game White played

1.\textit{Ah3}??

With this move White just worsens the position of his rook.

The simplest win is 1.f7!.

Black is defenceless:

a) 1...\textit{Bd7} 2.\textit{Bd8}+--

b) 1...\textit{Ec8} 2.\textit{Exe7} \textit{Ec7}+ 3.\textit{Ed7}+--

c) 1...\textit{Ee1}+ 2.\textit{Ef6} \textit{Ef1}+ 3.\textit{Exe7} \textit{Ee1}+ 4.\textit{Exf8} \textit{Ea1} 5.\textit{Bh3}+ \textit{Bh6} 6.\textit{Bf8}+--

White has two alternative ways to win, for which you also get 3 points: 1.\textit{Ed8} \textit{Ee1}+ 2.\textit{Exf7} \textit{Bf1} 3.\textit{Exe7} \textit{Bf1}+ 4.\textit{Exf8} \textit{Ea1} 5.\textit{Bh3}+ \textit{Bh6} 6.\textit{Bf8}+--

2.\textit{Exf7} \textit{Ea1} 3.\textit{Exf8}+-- or 1.\textit{Ee7} \textit{Ec7}+ 2.\textit{Ed7} \textit{Ec8} 3.\textit{Ed8} \textit{Ec7}+ 4.\textit{Ed6} \textit{Bh6} 5.\textit{Bf6}+--

However, all other moves do not win!

1...\textit{Bg6} 2.\textit{Bg3}+

Black resigned here, although the position is drawn!

2...\textit{Bh7} 3.f7 is followed by 3...\textit{Ee8}! (but not 3...\textit{Ec6}+ 4.\textit{Ed7}+-- 4...\textit{Ee7} 4.\textit{Ed3} \textit{Bh7} 5.\textit{Exe7}+ 6.\textit{Ed7} \textit{Bf8} 7.\textit{Ed3} \textit{Bf8}--

Compare this example with Ex. 5-7. Here White cannot divert the black rook, since there is an additional file available to it!

Ex. 5-12

\textbf{J.Capablanca – V.Menchik}

Hastings 1929

1...\textit{Ea6}??

Black must leave the 6th rank quickly!

As we saw in Diagram 5-8 (Flank attack 3), Black should choose 1...\textit{Bb8}+!, 1...\textit{Bb1}= or 1...\textit{Bb5}=.

(2 points)

2.\textit{Ed7}??

After 2.\textit{Ef8}+! \textit{Bh6} 3.f7 \textit{Bf6} 4.\textit{Eg8}+-- Black would not have a check on the g-file.

2...\textit{Bb8}= 3.\textit{Ed7} \textit{Ea5}??

Repeating the mistake. Correct alternatives are 3...\textit{Bb8}=, 3...\textit{Ba1}= or 3...\textit{Bh6}=.

4.\textit{Eh8}+! \textit{Bh6} 5.f7 \textit{Bh8}+--

6.\textit{Ee8} \textit{Bf8} 7.\textit{Ee6}+ \textit{Bf7}+ 8.\textit{Bh8}?

7.\textit{Ee1} wins simply: 7...\textit{Bf8}+ (7...\textit{Eg6} 8.\textit{Bh6}+ 8...\textit{Eg8}) 8.\textit{Bh6} \textit{Ba7} 9.\textit{Ee6} \textit{Ba8} 10.\textit{Exe6} \textit{Ba8} 11.\textit{Ee8}+

And 7.\textit{Ee6} also wins.

7...\textit{Bb8}+ 8.\textit{Bg7}= 9.\textit{Bh6}

1-0

A comedy of errors!
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 27

24 points and above → Excellent
19 points and above → Good
13 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 13 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Fighting against the pawn centre

We have already underlined the importance of the pawn centre on several occasions. But a pawn centre may not be advantageous in all circumstances. When under fire from the opposing pieces, especially fianchettoed bishops, it is also vulnerable. It is therefore very important to support the pawn centre in good time with the pieces. If you march your pawns forward prematurely, you can be attacked on all sides by pieces and pawns before you are able to consolidate the position.

The classic central strategy, in which one tries to occupy the centre with pawns as soon as possible, was supplemented in the 20th Century with an alternative strategy: You first open fire on the opponent's centre with your pieces, so that at a time of your choosing you can break it apart with your pawns.

This strategy can be seen in many modern openings: from the Grünfeld Defence to the Reti Opening, in the Pirc Defence or in the Alekhine Defence.

R. Letelier Martner – R. Fischer
Leipzig Olympiad 1960

1.d4 ♙f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.e4 0-0 5.e5?!
A risky decision. White advances his pawns too quickly.
5...♗e8 6.f4

6...d6!
Black must attack the pawn centre immediately and energetically!

7.♗e3
7.♗f3 would be better, but after 7...dxe5 8.dxe5 ♙xd1+ 9.♕xd1 ♙f6 White no longer has an opening advantage.

7...c5! 8.dxc5 ♙c6!
Black develops his pieces very quickly and tries to open the game.
Fighting against the pawn centre

Diagram 6-2

9.cxd6?!  
9.e3 g4 10.e2 was a better alternative.

9...exd6 10.e4?!  
White is playing with fire. He would do better to develop his kingside.

10...f5! 11.g3?  
The worst of all strategies is constantly changing plans! The principled move 11.exd6 e6d6 12.wxd6 w6xd6 13.exd6 exb2 14.wb4 w2f2 w2xa2 w2e2 a5 (Fischer) leads after 17.d2 c3 18.g3 to a complicated position.

11...e6 12.f3 c7  
12...dxe5 13.wxd8 wxd8 14.c5 exf4 would also be good for Black.

13.wb1 dxe5 14.f5

Diagram 6-3

14.e4!  
Black counters in the centre!

15.fx6  
15.wxe4 is not good: 15...gxf5 16.xf5 a5t+ (Fischer)

15...fxf3 16.gxf3 f5! 17.f4 g6  
The e6-pawn will soon fall.

18.e2 fxe8 19.f2 fxe6  
Once more Black attacks in the centre!

20.e1 e8 21.f3

Diagram 6-4

21...e3! 22.e3 e3 23.e3 wxf4t!  
0–1

Fischer indicated the following variation: 24.g2 (24.xf4 h6#) 24...d4† 25.g2 e3† 26.g2 d4 27.wb1 g4† 28.wf1 xfx3--

However, it is very important to understand that you must not delay the counterplay in the centre for too long. Otherwise your opponent will bring his pieces into play and end up controlling the centre. The struggle against the pawn centre is the struggle for the centre! The goal is always to achieve control over important central squares.

We shall continue with a few more examples which show how you must act when faced with a strong pawn centre.
1...f5!
A typical idea. It is now not only the d4-pawn which is under attack, but also the e4-pawn.

2.e5
White capitulates in the centre and closes the position. But 2.\( \text{d}g3 \) is answered by 2...\( \text{a}d7! \) with even more pressure.

2...c4 3.\( \text{d}c2 \text{e}6!^+ 
Intending ...\( \text{d}e7 \) and ...\( \text{d}d5 \). Black has blockaded the opposing pawns and thus won the struggle in the centre. He can go on to exploit his pawn majority on the queenside.

M.Yudovich – M.Botvinnik
Moscow Team Ch 1966

1.e4 g6 2.d4 d6 3.\( \text{c}c3 \text{c}6 \) 4.f4
4.\( \text{f}f3 \) or 4.\( \text{e}e3 \) are solid alternatives.

4...\( \text{g}g7 \) 5.\( \text{e}e3 \)
5.a4 is possible (Botvinnik).

5.\( \text{f}f3 \) \( \text{g}g4 \) 6.\( \text{e}e3 \) \( \text{b}b6 \) 7.\( \text{d}d2 \) \( \text{xf}3 \) 8.\( \text{g}xf3 \) \( \text{d}d7 \) is the critical variation.

5...\( \text{b}6?! 
Diagram 6-6
Why is Black developing his queen so early? It is not only aiming at the b2-pawn, which is now in need of defence. The second goal is the pinning of the white pawn on d4. This means that in many variations the important move e4-e5 is no longer possible.

6.\( \text{b}1 \) f5?!
A typical attack on the white centre. 6...e5 would not be so good after 7.\( \text{f}3\)±.

But Black does have alternatives: 6...\( \text{b}6?! \) 7.\( \text{f}3\) 0–0± (intending ...d5) or 6...\( \text{h}6?! \) 7.\( \text{e}2 \) 0–0 8.\( \text{f}3 \) \( \text{g}4 \) 9.\( \text{g}1\)±.

7.\( \text{f}3?! 
It is only this modest move which justifies Botvinnik's risky strategy. The correct response is to sacrifice a pawn for the initiative by 7.e5! \( \text{dxe}5 \) 8.\( \text{xe}5 \) \( \text{xe}5 \) 9.\( \text{d}3 \) (Botvinnik).

7...\( \text{d}7?! 

Diagram 6-5
S.Gligoric – V.Smyslov
USSR – Yugoslavia, Kiev 1959

1...f5!
A typical idea. It is now not only the d4-pawn which is under attack, but also the e4-pawn.

2.e5
White capitulates in the centre and closes the position. But 2.\( \text{d}g3 \) is answered by 2...\( \text{a}d7! \) with even more pressure.

2...c4 3.\( \text{d}c2 \text{e}6!^+ 
Intending ...\( \text{d}e7 \) and ...\( \text{d}d5 \). Black has blockaded the opposing pawns and thus won the struggle in the centre. He can go on to exploit his pawn majority on the queenside.
7...fxe4 8.Qxe4 Qh6 followed by ...Qf5 would be equally possible.

8.exf5

8.e5 is not as effective as on the previous move:
8...dxe5 9.fxe5 Qxe5 10.Qxe5 Qxe5 11.Qa4 Qa5??
8...gxg5 9.Qd3 Qd6
Black has brought the central e4-square under his control and is not badly placed.
10.Qe2 Qh6

Diagram 6-7

11.h3
White plays too passively and loses the struggle for the centre. 11.d5?? is better: 11...Qc7 12.Qd4 0-0
13.dxc6 bxc6 14.0-0=
11...Qd7 12.0-0 Qc7 13.Qg5?!
This apparently active move achieves nothing for White, since he is not yet in the position of being able to support the activity of the knight with his other pieces. First 13.Qf2 would have been better, intending Qh4 or Qg5-e6.

Diagram 6-8

13...d5!
Black exploits the opportunity: the white knight has wandered off and is no longer ready to occupy the e5-square.
14.Qd2 Qd6 15.Qh2?!
Or 15.Qe5 Qg6?? and Black will continue with ...Qe4.
15...Qe4??
16.Qh5?? can be met simply by 16...Qg6. Thanks to the strong position of his knight, Black already has the advantage.
16.Qf3
A rueful retreat...
16...Qg6 17.Qxe4?!
17.Qe1?? would be better.
17...Qxe4 18.Qe5 Qxe5 19.dxe5?
Better is 19.fxe5 Qf5 20.Qf2 h5 21.Qe2==.
19...Qf5?? 20.Qf2?!
20.Qg4?? Qd4 21.Qe3 (21.f5?? Qg7 22.f6 Qf7??)
21...Qf3?? 22.Qxf3 exf3 23.Qxf3 (23.f5 Qxf5+-)
23...Qxc2++ (Botvinnik)
20...h5!!+ 21.b4 Qg8
Threatening 22...e3.
22.Qg1 h4
Now the threat is 23...e3 24.\he e3 g3\+.
23.\he e1 f7
23...e3! 24.\he f3 0-0-0--
24.b5!!
24.\he e2 is more stubborn.
24...\he g7 25.bxc6 \he c6

Diagram 6-9
White has achieved nothing. It is very instructive to observe how Botvinnik has activated and coordinated all his forces.
26.\he e2 e3 27.\he f1 \he g8 28.g4 hxg3\+ 29.\he xg3 d4
30.\he b4 \he xg3 31.\he xg3 \he c2 32.\he xg7 \he xg7
0-1

A.Khavin – R.Kholmov
USSR Team Ch, Riga 1954
1.e4 e5 2.\he f3 \he c6 3.\he c4 \he c5 4.c3 \he f6 5.d4 exd4
6.cxd4 \he b4 7.\he d2 \he xd2 8.\he bxd2

Diagram 6-10
8...d5!
With this typical move Black restores the balance in the centre.
9.exd5 \he xd5 10.0-0
The immediate 10.\he b3 is better: 10...\he a5 (or 10...\he ce7) 11.\he a4\+ \he c6=
10...0-0 11.\he e1 \he b6
And Black is already somewhat better.
12.\he b3 \he a5 13.\he c3 \he xc4 14.\he xc4 \he xc4
15.\he xc4 \he e6 16.\he c5 c6\+
Exercises
Exercises

Ex. 6-7

Ex. 6-8

Ex. 6-9

Ex. 6-10

Ex. 6-11

Ex. 6-12
Solutions

Ex. 6-1

R. Reti – F. Yates
New York 1924

1.d4!

White now takes the initiative in the centre.

1...e4 2.\( \texttt{\#e5} \) \( \texttt{\#xe5} \) 3.\( \texttt{dxe5} \) \( \texttt{\#h7} \)
Or 3...\( \texttt{\#h5} \) 4.f4±.

4.f4±

White even gets a kingside pawn majority.

4...exf3 5.exf3 \( \texttt{\#g5} \) 6.f4 \( \texttt{\#h3} \)†
6...\( \texttt{\#e4} \) is met by 7.\( \texttt{\#d1} \)++.

7.\( \texttt{\#h1} \) d4 8.\( \texttt{\#xd4} \) \( \texttt{\#d8} \) 9.\( \texttt{\#xc6} \) bxc6
10.\( \texttt{\#xc6} \) \( \texttt{\#f2} \)† 11.\( \texttt{\#g2} \) \( \texttt{\#xd4} \) 12.\( \texttt{\#xd4} \) \( \texttt{\#xd4} \) 13.\( \texttt{\#xe8} \) \( \texttt{\#e4} \) 14.e6 \( \texttt{\#d2} \)† 15.\( \texttt{\#f3} \)
1-0

Ex. 6-2

A. Beliavsky – E. Torre
Moscow 1981

1...f6!

(2 points)

With this strong move Black neutralizes the white attack in the centre.

A decent alternative is 1...b5?! (1 point)
2.exd6 \( \texttt{\#xc6} \)! (2...exd6 is not so good, due to 3.axb5 \( \texttt{\#xa8} \) \( \texttt{\#xa8} \) 5.\( \texttt{\#e7} \)± 3.bxc3 exd6
4.\( \texttt{\#e7} \) \( \texttt{\#c8} \) 5.axb5 \( \texttt{\#xb5} \) 6.\( \texttt{\#xa8} \) \( \texttt{\#xa8} \) 7.\( \texttt{\#xc7} \) \( \texttt{\#xc7} \) 8.\( \texttt{\#xb5} \).

White has some compensation for the exchange.

2.exd6

If 2.e6, then 2...\( \texttt{\#e8} \) 3.\( \texttt{\#cl} \) b5 4.axb5 (after 4.\( \texttt{\#a2} \) f5 the d5-pawn is a weakness) 4...axb5 5.\( \texttt{\#xa8} \) \( \texttt{\#xa8} \) 6.\( \texttt{\#xb5} \) \( \texttt{\#xb5} \) 7.\( \texttt{\#xb5} \) \( \texttt{\#xd5} \)†.

The far-advanced white pawn on e6 can become weak in the endgame.

2...exd6 3.\( \texttt{\#e3} \) f5
3...b5?! is followed by 4.axb5 (4.\( \texttt{\#a2} \) f5) 4...axb5 5.\( \texttt{\#xa8} \) \( \texttt{\#xa8} \) 6.\( \texttt{\#xb5} \) \( \texttt{\#xb5} \) 7.g4!–.

4.\( \texttt{\#d3} \) \( \texttt{\#xc3} \) 5.\( \texttt{\#xc3} \) f4 6.\( \texttt{\#d2} \) b5† 7.\( \texttt{\#a2} \) \( \texttt{\#xd5} \) 8.\( \texttt{\#xd5} \)†

Or 8.\( \texttt{\#d3} \) c4 9.\( \texttt{\#d4} \) \( \texttt{\#df6} \)±.

8.\( \texttt{\#xd5} \)†

Ex. 6-3

A. Lilienthal – V. Korchnoi
USSR Ch, Kiev 1954

1...c5!

(1 point)

A typical idea. This move does not have to be prepared with 1...\( \texttt{\#ac8} \) (1 consolation point) which would give White time to improve his position with 2.\( \texttt{\#b4} \).

2.\( \texttt{\#xc5} \)

2.\( \texttt{\#e4} \) \( \texttt{\#xe4} \) 3.\( \texttt{\#xe4} \) is not so good, due to 3...\( \texttt{\#c4} \) 4.\( \texttt{\#cl} \) \( \texttt{\#xe5} \)†.

2...\( \texttt{\#c7} \)!

(another 1 point)

Black attacks the central e5-pawn.

3.\( \texttt{\#xb6} \)!

3.\( \texttt{\#e1} \) bxc5 4.\( \texttt{\#h3} \) would be better, or even 3.c6 \( \texttt{\#xc6} \) 4.\( \texttt{\#d6} \).

3...\( \texttt{\#c5} \) 4.\( \texttt{\#xe5} \)
4.\( \texttt{\#c1} \)†

4...\( \texttt{\#xe5} \) 5.\( \texttt{\#e2} \) axb6†

White simply has more weaknesses on the queenside than his opponent!

Ex. 6-4

B. Spassky – V. Korchnoi
Moscow 1964

1.\( \texttt{\#xd5} \)!

(2 points)

Threatening \( \texttt{\#xf6} \)† or \( \texttt{\#c7} \). Playing 1.\( \texttt{\#f4} \) first is not so strong: 1...\( \texttt{\#d7} \) 2.\( \texttt{\#xd5} \) \( \texttt{\#e5} \)–

1...\( \texttt{\#xd5} \)

1...\( \texttt{\#d8} \) 2.\( \texttt{\#c7} \)!±

2.\( \texttt{\#f4} \) \( \texttt{\#d6} \)

2...\( \texttt{\#xg2} \) is even worse, in view of 3.\( \texttt{\#xe6} \) \( \texttt{\#xf1} \) 4.\( \texttt{\#xf8} \) \( \texttt{\#h3} \) 5.\( \texttt{\#d3} \) \( \texttt{\#xf8} \) 6.\( \texttt{\#e4} \)–.

3.\( \texttt{\#xd5} \) \( \texttt{\#g5} \) 4.\( \texttt{\#f4} \) \( \texttt{\#d8} \) 5.\( \texttt{\#c3} \)!±

Black now loses too much material.

5...\( \texttt{\#a6} \)

Or 5...\( \texttt{\#c6} \) 6.\( \texttt{\#b5} \)–.

6.\( \texttt{\#xa8} \) \( \texttt{\#b8} \) 7.\( \texttt{\#d5} \) \( \texttt{\#xa8} \) 8.\( \texttt{\#xd4} \) \( \texttt{\#c5} \) 9.b4
\( \texttt{\#e6} \) 10.\( \texttt{\#d3} \) \( \texttt{\#e8} \) 11.e4
1-0
Ex. 6-5
B.Spassky – R.Fischer
Siegen Olympiad 1970
1...£5!
(2 points)
We have already seen this typical idea in the game Gligoric – Smyslov.
Only 1 point for the simpler 1...ib7, since White then has 2.f5!? with unclear play.
2.g4 fxg4
2...&b7!? would not have been bad either.
3.&xe4 &b7 4.&g3 &c4 5.&xb7 &xb7
6.&f2 &c6 7.&e2 exd4 8.&xd4 b5
Black is now slightly better and can play actively on the queenside and in the centre.
Despite that, Spassky was later able to turn this game round and to win it!

Ex. 6-6
C.Kottnauer – S.Flohr
Groningen 1946
1...e5!
(1 point)
Everything is ready for this thrust.
2.&xf7 £xf7 3.d5
Some other continuations deserve consideration, for example 3.dxe5 fxe5 or 3.f4 exd4 4.&xd4 &c5=.
Now Black takes the initiative, although it did not prove enough for victory in the game.
3...exd5 4.&cxd5 &xd5 5.&xd5 &c5 6.f3 &b6 7.&xb6 &xb6 8.&f2 &xf2 9.&xf2 &b3
10.&xd8+ &xd8=+

Ex. 6-7
A.Fox – J.Capablanca
New York 1906
1...f6!
(2 points)
Black exchanges the strong e5-pawn. Black should not delay his operations in the centre for too long! Only 1 point for 1...&e7.

Ex. 6-8
F.Lee – A.Nimzowitsch
Ostend 1907
1...d5!
(2 points)
A typical operation, which weakens the white centre.
2.&d3
White cannot win the pawn: 2.exd5 is met by 2...&b6+ and Black seizes the d5-pawn back.
2.dxe4 3.&xe4 &xe4 4.&xe4 &f6 5.&d3 &d5=
5...&g4?! would also be good. Black controls the d5-square and can easily attack the isolated d4-pawn.

Ex. 6-9
S.Rosenthal – W.Steinitz
Vienna 1873
1...d5!
(2 points)
This move is good here too, because White must bear in mind the threat of ...c5 followed by ...d4. Here 1...f5 would be slightly worse, since it weakens the castled position. Despite that, you get 1 point for the suggestion.
2.exd5
2.e5? c5=+
2...&xd5 3.&xd5 &xd5 3.c3 &d8=
Solutions

Ex. 6-10

B. Englisch – W. Steinitz
London 1883

1...d5!

(2 points)

2.exd5

If 2.e5, then 2...\textit{\texttt{lg4 3.g5}} a6 4.a4 \textit{\texttt{xe5+}}.

2...\textit{\texttt{exd5 3.exd5 \texttt{vbxd5 4.e2 lg4+}}}

Ex. 6-11

H. Pillsbury – M. Chigorin
St. Petersburg 1895

1...f5!

(2 points)

The counter-attack in the centre is vital for Black! Otherwise White would be able to shore up his central position and then go onto the attack.

2.e5?!

This concedes Black the d5-square without any compensation.

2...\textit{\texttt{gb3?!}} was no better, because of 2...\textit{\texttt{xd4}}

3....\textit{\texttt{xe6\dagger e7 4....e2 fxe4+}}

And 2.a3?! \textit{\texttt{xc3\dagger bxc3 fxe4 3.e2 f6}}

Ex. 6-12

Z. Azmaiparashvili – A. Yusupov
Las Palmas 1993

1.c4?!

(2 points)

Playing in the centre is positionally correct.

1.g5 (1 consolation point) would be far more dangerous. After 1...\textit{\texttt{dh5 2.xd5 ef4}}

3....\textit{\texttt{xb7 xe2\dagger \texttt{xe2}}}

4....\textit{\texttt{xe2 gxf5 5.h4}}

Black obtains attacking chances, since the white king now has only the f-pawn as a shield.

1...\textit{\texttt{xd4 2.xd4 ec8}}

2...\textit{\texttt{xc7?}} would be interesting, meeting 3....\textit{\texttt{e3 with 3...\texttt{ad8=}} followed by \texttt{...b6}, or even 3...\textit{\texttt{b4?!}}.

3....\textit{\texttt{xb7 ecx4 4.a6! ec4 5.f1 df4 6.e3 d6d5 7.ed2 eb4=}}

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 23

20 points and above ———> Excellent
16 points and above ———> Good
11 points ———> Pass mark

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Trapping pieces

It is not only the king which can be attacked; unprotected pieces are also excellent targets for this sort of action. If a piece is cut off from its main forces or if it has no escape squares, then there is always the danger that the opponent can trap it. Even very mobile pieces like the queen can sometimes be trapped.

In this chapter we shall be trying to exploit the unfavourable position of pieces.

Diagram 7-1

T.Petrosian – A.Kotov
Moscow 1952

Black finds an interesting combination.
1...\(\text{Q}xg4\) 2.\(\text{W}xg4\) f5 3.exf5 exf5 4.\(\text{a}4\)

Even here the queen will find no peace.
If 4.\(\text{W}g3\), then 4...f4 5.\(\text{g}4\) 6.\(\text{b}5\) 6.\(\text{x}g6\) (after 6.\(\text{e}6\) comes 6...\(\text{e}7\) 7.\(\text{f}5\) 8.\(\text{h}4\) 9.\(\text{e}6\) 10.\(\text{f}4\) 11.\(\text{d}5\) 12.\(\text{c}5\) 13.\(\text{d}4\) 14.\(\text{g}4\) 15.\(\text{h}4\) 16.\(\text{f}5\) 17.\(\text{e}5\).

4...\(\text{e}8\) 5.\(\text{h}3\)

Diagram 7-2

White overlooks the main threat. 5.\(\text{b}3\) \(\text{x}h4\)
6.\(\text{d}5\) was correct, and White could still fight on although his castled position has been shattered.
5...\(\text{e}5\)!

The queen is lost.

0–1
Trapping pieces

Diagram 7-3

A. Lugovoi — Y. Balashov
Russian Ch, Krasnoyarsk 2003

1. ♜xf6†!
White sets a trap with this strong move.
1... ♞xf6?! 
Black falls into it. He had to try the alternative recapture, although prospects are not good there either: 1...gx6 2. ♘h6 ♞e8 3. ♘e5 ♕f5 4. ♘h5±
2. ♘g5! ♝xf3 3. ♖d2!
A typical tactical motif. Black cannot save the queen without losing a decisive amount of material!
3... ♝xd4 loses to 4. ♗xh7+. And 3... ♞f4 is followed by 4. ♜xf4 ♘xg2 (4... ♖c6 5. ♘g5! ♝xd4 6. ♖xf3++) 5. ♖g1+-.
Disappointed, Black resigned...

We have seen that sometimes even very strong players can underestimate the danger of having a piece trapped. Next we have the most famous example from a world championship.

Diagram 7-4

B. Spassky — R. Fischer
World Ch(1), Reykjavik 1972

1... ♖xh2?!
A typical mistake. There is no explanation for what Fischer may have overlooked here. The correct continuation is 1... ♖e7 2. h3 (2. ♖d4? ♖xh2++) 2... e5 followed by 3... ♖e6 (Botvinnik).
2. g3
Now the bishop is cut off. The rescue operation will come too late.
2... h5 3. ♖e2 h4 4. ♖f3
Of course not 4. gxh4 ♖d6±.
4... ♖e7
After 4... h3 there comes 5. ♖g4 ♖g1 6. ♖xh3 ♖xf2 7. ♖d2+— followed by ♖g2 and the bishop is trapped.
5. ♖g2 hxg3 6. fxg3 ♖xg3 7. ♖xg3
White won this ending, although subsequent analysis has shown that Fischer could still have saved the draw.
Sometimes a rook can be trapped on its starting square. It is much rarer to see a bishop facing that danger.

**Diagram 7-5**

J. Magem Badals – Z. Franco
Leon 1990

1...\texttt{xe8!!}
After 1...\texttt{xe8} 2.\texttt{dxe8}+ \texttt{f8} 3.\texttt{d6} the bishop is lost.
1–0

The following typical trapping of the queen only happened because Black had taken a poisoned pawn.

**Diagram 7-6**

L. Schmid – W. Sahlmann
Essen 1948

1.\texttt{a4!}
1.\texttt{db5} would also be very dangerous for Black. But the move in the game is better because play is now forced.
1...\texttt{a3} 2.\texttt{c1!}
And Black resigned, on account of 2...\texttt{b4}+ 3.\texttt{d2} \texttt{a3} 4.\texttt{b5}+–.

The following three examples show other typical ideas for trapping a piece.

**Diagram 7-7**

U. Andersson – E. Torre
Biel 1977

1...\texttt{b4!!}
The threat is 2...\texttt{d6}.
2.\texttt{xb4} b5! 3.\texttt{h5}
Or 3.\texttt{b3} b4–+
3...\texttt{d6} 4.\texttt{b3} b4!
Black has achieved his aim. The white rook has been cut off. For all practical purposes, White is playing without a rook. Black can protect the e6-pawn and then stroll with the king to a4.
0–1
Black does not see the trap which has been set.

1...\texttt{h}4?? 2.\texttt{f}3! \texttt{d}2

Or 2...\texttt{d}4 3.\texttt{h}3! (\Delta \texttt{g}3) 3...\texttt{e}5 4.\texttt{g}6+--.

3.\texttt{h}3! \texttt{e}1

3...\texttt{c}3 4.\texttt{g}3+-

4.\texttt{g}2\texttt{t}

4.\texttt{g}3 \texttt{xf}4 5.\texttt{xf}4 \texttt{xf}2 6.\texttt{h}4! also wins.

1-0

1.\texttt{f}3! \texttt{x}d1 2.\texttt{c}4!

The bishop cuts the knight off and 3.\texttt{e}2 will collect it.

1-0
Exercises

Ex. 7-1

Ex. 7-2

Ex. 7-3

Ex. 7-4

Ex. 7-5

Ex. 7-6

78
Exercises

Ex. 7-7

Ex. 7-10

Ex. 7-8

Ex. 7-11

Ex. 7-9

Ex. 7-12
Solutions

Ex. 7-1
1.\texttt{hxg6} 2.\texttt{h5+}
Next comes 2.\texttt{b1}.

(1 point)

Ex. 7-2
\textbf{A.Yusupov – G.Siegel}
Swiss Team Ch 2000
1.\texttt{xf3}†
And then 2.\texttt{a4}.
1–0

(1 point)

Ex. 7-3
\textbf{M.Blau – J.Donner}
Chaumont Neuchatel 1958
1.\texttt{xd6!!} 2.\texttt{xe5}+

(1 point)

Ex. 7-4
\textbf{H.Pfleger – L.Keitlinghaus}
Bundesliga 1986
1...\texttt{e3!} 2.\texttt{xe3} \texttt{d4++}

(1 point)

Ex. 7-5
\textbf{K.Burger – Huendorfer}
Munich 1924
1.\texttt{xd5!} \texttt{exd5} 2.\texttt{c7}
1–0

(1 point)

Ex. 7-6
\textbf{Engels – Stein}
Königsberg 1938
1.\texttt{f5!}

(1 point)

Ex. 7-7
\textbf{K.Darga – B.Ivkov}
Hastings 1955
1...\texttt{f8}!!

(1 point)

Ex. 7-8
\textbf{V.Ivanchuk – B.Gelfand}
Linares 1991
1.\texttt{c3} 2.\texttt{a6} 3.\texttt{a3}!
1–0

(2 points)
This is the simplest solution, trapping the knight on b4.

Ex. 7-9
The end of a study by
\textbf{A.Gurvitch}
1959
1.\texttt{c4!!}

(1 point)

1...\texttt{g5}† 2.\texttt{e6}!

(1 point)

2...\texttt{hxg5} 3.\texttt{h4}++

(another 1 point)
Black is in zugzwang.
Note that 2...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}texttt{\textbackslash{}b5}} would be wrong, because of 3.\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}texttt{\textbackslash{}b3}}!.

After 2...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}texttt{\textbackslash{}a4}}! White resigned, in view of the variation 3.b4 (or 3.\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}texttt{\textbackslash{}xc5}} \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}x5}} \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}b5}} \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}+-}})
3...cxb4! 4.cxb4 \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}xb4}} \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}+-}}.

Ex. 7-12
The end of a study by

A. Hildebrand
1957

1.\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}f2}}!
(1 point)

Not 1.\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}g2}}? \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}g3}}= nor 1.\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}g2}}? \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}g3}}=.

1...\textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{}g3}}\texttt{+} 2.\texttt{\textbackslash{}g2}+-
(another 1 point)

Black is in zugzwang.

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 21

- 19 points and above \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{\texttt{\textbackslash{}texttt{\textbackslash{}arrow}}}} Excellent
- 16 points and above \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{\texttt{\textbackslash{}texttt{\textbackslash{}arrow}}}} Good
- 12 points \textit{\texttt{\textbackslash{\texttt{\textbackslash{}texttt{\textbackslash{}arrow}}}} Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Calculating short variations

It is more important to be able to calculate accurately short variations (3-4 moves deep) than very long variations. It is precisely in the early moves that errors frequently occur, making it nonsensical to go on to calculate long variations. A mistake on move 7 of a variation is something you can still perhaps spot and correct in good time during the game, but a mistake in the very first moves usually has fatal consequences.

Here are a few examples which show accurate calculation of short variations in practice.

**R.Kasimdzhanov - V.Kramnik**

Wijk aan Zee 1999

1.d4 Qf6 2.c4 e6 3.Qf3 d5 4.Qc3 Qe7 5.Qg5 h6 6.Qh4 0–0 7.e3 b6 8.Qc1 Qb7 9.Qxf6 Qxf6 10.cxd5 exd5 11.Qd3 e5 12.0–0 Qd7 13.Qf5

Diagram 8-1

White attacks the knight. But Black is not very impressed.

13...g6! 14.Qxd7

14.Qh3 is an alternative. Then Black can simply reply 14...Qg7.

14...cxd4!

A good intermediate move. 14...Qxd7?! 15.dxc5 bxc5 16.Qe4! Qxb2 17.Qxc5 Qe7 18.Qb1 Wxc5 19.Qxb2 is better for White.

15.Qc6

15.Qxd4 Wxd7 is harmless.

15...Qxc6 16.Qxd4 Qb7 17.Qa4 Qe7

And Black keeps things level thanks to his bishop pair.

½–½
White has sacrificed a pawn and is hoping to be able to develop an initiative on the kingside. Black brings his forces into play.

1...\(\text{Be}c8\)! 2.\(\text{Bd}d4\) \(\text{Bc}4\) 3.\(\text{Bg}3\) \(\text{Bc}8\)!

It is important to control the f5-square. 3...\(\text{Bc}5\)!
4.\(\text{Bh}6\) g6 would lose to 5.\(\text{Cf}5\).

4.\(\text{Bc}3\)

Diagram 8-3

4...\(\text{Be}8\)!

Black prepares his counterplay. 4...\(\text{Bc}5\) would give his opponent the chance to deliver perpetual check: 5.\(\text{Bx}g7\)† \(\text{Bx}g7\) 6.\(\text{Bx}g5\)† \(\text{Bx}h8\) 7.\(\text{Bx}f6\)†

5.f4 f6!

5...\(\text{Bc}5\) 6.\(\text{Cd}1\) f6 is less precise.

6.\(\text{Bf}2\)

6.e6 \(\text{Bc}5\) is followed by 7.\(\text{Cd}1\) \(\text{Bx}e6\) and Black wins.

6...\(\text{fx}e5\)

But not 6...\(\text{Bc}5\), on account of 7.\(\text{Cd}3\).

7.\(\text{fx}e5\)

Diagram 8-4

7...\(\text{Bx}e5\)!

Black had to calculate this tactical operation with great accuracy.

8.\(\text{Df}3\)!

8.\(\text{Bx}e5\) loses to 8...\(\text{Bc}1\)†; and no better is 8.\(\text{Bx}e3??\) \(\text{Bx}e3\)!—.

8...\(\text{Bh}5\)!

The only move!

9.\(\text{Bx}g5\) \(\text{Bf}7\) 10.\(\text{Bx}d5\) \(\text{Dh}7\)

The tactical exchange hasn’t brought Black any new gain of material, but he has opened up the play for his bishop and simplified the position. After a few more moves to consolidate, the advantage will be even clearer.

11.\(\text{Cf}3\) h6 12.\(\text{Bx}e8\)† \(\text{Bx}e8\) 13.\(\text{Bd}2\) \(\text{Bc}8\) 14.\(\text{Dh}3\) \(\text{Be}7\)

15.\(\text{Dh}1\) \(\text{Bf}6\) 16.\(\text{Bc}3\) \(\text{Bx}8\) 17.\(\text{Bf}2\) \(\text{Cd}5\)—+
Calculating variations 1

Diagram 8-5

A.Lutikov – F.Silva
Odessa 1976

1. \( \text{d}8t! \text{e}7 \\
   \text{One important variation is 1...xd8 2.\text{d}6t \text{g}7 \\
   3. \text{e}8t \text{g}6 4.\text{f}6t \text{h}5 5.\text{g}7t \text{h}4 6.\text{g}3#.} \\
2. \text{\text{d}7t!} \\
   \text{White attacks in grand style.} \\
2...\text{xd7} \\
   \text{If 2...\text{f}8, then 3.\text{d}6t \text{g}7 4.\text{h}5t \text{g}6 5.\text{f}6t \text{h}5 6.\text{xf}7t+-}. \\
3. \text{\text{d}5t \text{e}8} \\
   \text{3...\text{e}8 would be more stubborn, but after 4.\text{f}6!} \\
   \text{(this is even better than 4.\text{h}8t \text{f}8 5.\text{d}6 \text{a}4 \text{b}6+-) 4...\text{f}8 (or 4...\text{g}7 5.\text{e}5+-) 5.\text{c}7+-} \\
   \text{there is no longer any defence.} \\
4. \text{\text{f}6t \text{c}8 5.\text{b}6#} \\

Typical mistakes in calculating variations
1) Some candidate moves have not been considered.
2) The opponent’s strongest defence has not been taken into account.
3) Alternatives in the early moves have simply been ignored.
4) The calculation of a variation has been broken off too soon, although the opponent still has some active moves at his disposal.

Diagram 8-6

A.Yusupov – C.Shytaj
Porto Mannu 2009

1. e4? \( \text{x}e4?? \\
   \text{Black should decline the sacrifice. But he probably under-estimated White’s third move.} \\
   \text{1...\text{b}7 would maintain level chances after either 2.\text{f}4 or 2.\text{a}6.} \\
2. \text{\text{x}e4 \text{\text{x}e4 3.\text{f}3?} \\
   \text{3.\text{a}7 first would be even better, meeting 3...e5} \\
   \text{with 4.\text{f}3! \text{f}4 5.g3 \text{h}6 6.\text{c}6+-}. \\
3...\text{f}4 4.\text{c}6 \text{e}8? \\
   \text{4...\text{c}7 would be more stubborn: 5.\text{x}e7t \text{f}8} \\
   6.\text{c}6±
Calculating short variations

Diagram 8-7

5...\( \mathcal{xa}7 \rightarrow \mathcal{f}5 \)

6...\( \mathcal{b}x\mathcal{f}6 \) \( \mathcal{e}x\mathcal{f}6 \)

6...\( \mathcal{b}x\mathcal{f}6 \) 7...\( \mathcal{b}x\mathcal{e}7 \rightarrow \) offers no hope, so Black sets a final trap.

7...\( \mathcal{g}4! \)

But not 7...\( \mathcal{w}x\mathcal{d}7? \) because of 7...\( \mathcal{e}e1 \rightarrow \mathcal{w}h2 \) \( \mathcal{f}4\rightarrow \).

1-0

In the test which follows you must do some short calculations. Try to avoid the mistakes mentioned above.

- Look for active moves!
- Always finish your variations with an evaluation!
- Try to take into account all sensible replies by your opponent and remain particularly on your guard during the early moves!

The ability to calculate short variations accurately is a sure foundation for future success in chess!
Exercises

Ex. 8-7

Ex. 8-10

Ex. 8-8

Ex. 8-11

Ex. 8-9

Ex. 8-12
Ex. 8-1
Variation from the game

A. Alekhine – M. Euwe
World Ch(19), Netherlands 1935

1. \( \text{b}5 \text{t} \)

(1 point)

But not 1. \( \text{c}8t \) \( \text{d}7 \) 2. \( \text{b}5t \) \( \text{c}6t \). Nor would 1. \( \text{b}2 \) 0-0t be so strong.

1-.. \( \text{b}5 \)

1... \( \text{d}7 \) allows simply 2. \( \text{a}4+ \).

After 1... \( \text{xb}5 \) there follows 2. \( \text{c}8t \) \( \text{e}7 \) 3. \( \text{c}7t \) \( \text{d}7 \) (3... \( \text{d}7 \) 4. \( \text{d}6+ \) 4. \( \text{c}5t+- \).

(another 1 point for this variation)

2. \( \text{c}8t \) \( \text{d}7 \)

Or 2... \( \text{e}7 \) 3. \( \text{c}5t \) \( \text{d}7 \) 4. \( \text{h}8+- \).

Ex. 8-2

R. Hübner – J. Timman
Bugojno 1978

1. \( \text{a}xg2 \)

(1 point)

But not 1... \( \text{f}3t \) 2. \( \text{xf}3 \) \( \text{xf}3 \) 3. \( \text{xd}8 \) \( \text{h}3t \), because of 4. \( \text{e}8t \).

2. \( \text{xd}8 \)

If 2. \( \text{xd}5 \), then 2... \( \text{c}6+- \).

2... \( \text{e}4! \)

Threatening ... \( \text{h}3t \).

3. \( \text{h}3 \)

3. \( \text{a}xg5 \) \( \text{h}3 \) 4. \( \text{f}3 \) \( \text{e}2+- \)

3... \( \text{f}3t \)

White resigned, in view of the variation
4. \( \text{a}xg2 \) \( \text{xd}4t \) 5. \( \text{h}2 \) \( \text{xb}5 \) 6. \( \text{e}1 \) \( \text{e}1 \)
7. \( \text{e}1 \) \( \text{d}8-+ \).

Ex. 8-3

S. Furman – E. Vasiukov
Riga 1975

1. \( \text{a}xg7 \)

(1 point)

1. \( \text{a}4? \pm \)

1... \( \text{xd}7 \) 2. \( \text{e}5t \)

(another 1 point)

2... \( \text{f}7 \)

2... \( \text{e}63 \) \( \text{c}4+-; \) 2... \( \text{d}8 \) \( \text{d}5+-; \) 2... \( \text{d}6 \)
3. \( \text{e}5t+- \).

3... \( \text{xd}7-+ \) \( \text{h}8 \) 4. \( \text{e}3 \)

I-0

Ex. 8-4

E. Geller – H. Pilnik
Saltsjobaden 1952

1. \( \text{d}1! \)

(1 point)

But not 1... \( \text{f}3t \) on account of 1... \( \text{e}e3t \).

1... \( \text{b}5 \)

1... \( \text{be}3 \) runs into 2. \( \text{c}2+- \).

2. \( \text{f}3 \) \( \text{c}4 \) 3. \( \text{e}2+- \)

(another 1 point)

3... \( \text{bc}5 \)

If 3... \( \text{d}5 \) 4. \( \text{xd}5 \) \( \text{xd}5 \) 5. \( \text{xc}4 \) \( \text{h}1 \), then 6. \( \text{b}5+- \).

4. \( \text{xc}4 \) \( \text{xc}4 \) 5. \( \text{hd}1 \) \( \text{b}5 \) 6. \( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{c}2t \) 7. \( \text{h}1 \) \( \text{a}1 \) 8. \( \text{h}8 \) \( \text{f}6 \) 9. \( \text{c}4 \) 10. \( \text{a}8 \) \( \text{d}8 \) \( \text{e}3 \) 11. \( \text{h}2t \) 11. \( \text{e}3 \)

I-0

Ex. 8-5

M. Yudovich – V. Chekhover
Leningrad 1934

1. \( \text{a}f7t \)

(2 points)

Only 1 consolation point for 1. \( \text{c}4t \) or 1. \( \text{a}4t \) – White has a better solution.

First 1. \( \text{f}4 \) \( \text{f}5 \) and only then 2. \( \text{xf}7t \) (also 1 point) is not so accurate; after 2...\( \text{xf}7 \)
3. \( \text{d}8t \) \( \text{g}7 \) 4. \( \text{c}3t \) \( \text{f}6t \) 5. \( \text{c}7t \) \( \text{h}8 \) the threat of ... \( \text{al}t \) keeps Black in the game.

1... \( \text{g}7 \)

If 1...\( \text{xf}7 \), then 2. \( \text{d}8t \) \( \text{g}7 \) 3. \( \text{c}3 \) (not 3. \( \text{xf}7t \)?? \( \text{xf}7 \) 4. \( \text{c}1 \) \( \text{e}8-+ \)) 3...\( \text{f}6 \)
(3...\( \text{e}7 \) 4. \( \text{f}4-+ \)) 4. \( \text{c}7t+- \)

(another 1 point for the whole variation)
Solutions

2...\textit{d}5 \textit{f}5 3.e4 \textit{B}be8 4.f4+- \textit{C}5e7 5.e5!? 5.exf5 would not be so clear: 5...\textit{c}e1t 6.exel \textit{B}xe4t 7.\textit{c}f1 \textit{B}xf4t 8.\textit{B}f3 \textit{B}xe1t 9.\textit{B}xe1 \textit{B}clt
5...\textit{B}h4 6.\textit{g}3 \textit{B}xg3 7.\textit{h}xg3 \textit{B}c7 8.\textit{B}b3 \textit{B}c3 9.\textit{B}f2 \textit{B}5 10.\textit{B}d8 \textit{B}xd8 11.\textit{B}xd8 \textit{a}5 12.\textit{B}b8 \textit{a}4 13.\textit{B}d5 \textit{B}c5 14.\textit{g}g8t \textit{B}h6 15.\textit{B}d8 \textit{B}c7 16.\textit{B}e3 \textit{B}h5 17.\textit{B}d4 \textit{B}c2 18.\textit{B}b8 \textit{B}d2t 19.\textit{B}c5 \textit{B}g4 20.e6 \textit{B}xe6 21.\textit{B}xe6t \textit{B}xg5 22.\textit{B}d5 \textit{B}xf4 23.\textit{B}xb5 \textit{a}5 24.\textit{B}b3 1-0

\textbf{Ex. 8-6}

E. Pogossians

1977

1.d6!

(1 point)

Only 1 consolation point for the variation
1.\textit{B}e8? \textit{c}7 2.\textit{B}xe7 \textit{B}e5 3.\textit{B}d7 \textit{B}d6 4.c7 \textit{B}xh7 5.\textit{B}xh7 \textit{B}xh5 6.\textit{B}xh5t=
1...\textit{B}d6 2.\textit{B}xe8 \textit{c}7 3.\textit{B}d7 \textit{B}b8 4.\textit{B}c8

(another 1 point)

4...d5 5.\textit{B}xb8t+

\textbf{Ex. 8-7}

V. Ragozin – A. Pinkus

Moscow 1946

1.\textit{B}xb6!

(1 point)

This strong move wins a pawn. 1...\textit{B}cl = would not be so convincing.

1...\textit{B}ec8

If 1...\textit{B}xe6, then 2.\textit{B}d8t \textit{B}e8 (or 2...\textit{B}xd8 3.\textit{B}xh8t \textit{B}f8 4.c7+-) 3.\textit{B}xe6t \textit{B}xe6 4.c7+- and the threat of \textit{B}d8 is decisive.

(1 point for this variation)

2.\textit{B}d8

Or 2.\textit{B}cl \textit{cxb6} 3.c7 \textit{B}c8 4.\textit{B}d8t \textit{B}e8 5.\textit{B}xe8t \textit{B}xe8 6.c8\textit{B}+-

2...\textit{B}f8 3.\textit{B}xe8 \textit{B}xe8 4.\textit{B}c4+-

\textbf{Ex. 8-8}

S. Kudrin – D. Johansen

London 1982

1...\textit{B}e4t!

(1 point)

Black has an alternative route to victory in
1...\textit{B}d3t 2.\textit{B}g3 \textit{B}f2t! (but not 2...\textit{B}h4t? 3.\textit{B}h3=) 3.\textit{B}xf2 \textit{B}e2t+- (1 point).

2.\textit{B}f3

Or 2.\textit{B}h2 \textit{B}xh4+-

2...\textit{B}xf3t 3.\textit{B}xf3 \textit{B}g4 4.\textit{B}g2 \textit{B}e2# (another 1 point)

\textbf{Ex. 8-9}

A. Rubinstein – E. Bogoljubow

Stockholm/Gothenburg(8) 1920

The game continued: 1...\textit{B}b1t? 2.\textit{B}d1 \textit{B}xa2 3.h6 \textit{B}xe2? (3...\textit{B}c8 4.h7 \textit{B}xe2t) 4.\textit{B}f6 \textit{B}a2 (4...\textit{B}h5? 4.g4=) 5.c4? (5.\textit{B}xf7\textit{B}d5? 6.\textit{B}xd5t=) 5.\textit{B}xc4? (5...\textit{B}c8 6.\textit{B}xf7 \textit{B}xf7 7.\textit{B}xf7 \textit{B}xh6t) 6.\textit{B}xf2+- \textit{B}xf2t 7.\textit{B}xc4 \textit{B}a8 8.\textit{B}d8 \textit{B}xc4 9.\textit{B}xh8 1-0.

Black would have done better to play:

1...\textit{B}xh5!

(1 point)

2.\textit{B}xf8t \textit{B}c8 3.f3

3.\textit{B}g2 loses to 3...\textit{B}b1t 4.\textit{B}d1 \textit{B}xe1t 5.\textit{B}g2 \textit{B}h1#.

3...\textit{B}xe3t 4.\textit{B}g2 \textit{B}xg2 (another 1 point for this variation)

Black is clearly winning.

5.\textit{B}xf7 \textit{B}xe2t 6.\textit{B}g1 \textit{B}h2+-

\textbf{Ex. 8-10}

M. Euwe – S. Flohr

Amsterdam(8) 1932

1.\textit{B}xh7!

(1 point)

1...\textit{B}f1? (also 1 point) is equally strong. Black has no good way of stopping the threatened \textit{B}d4-h4, e.g. 1...\textit{B}c6 2.\textit{B}d7+ or 1...\textit{B}ad8 2.\textit{B}xf7+-.
Solutions

1...\texttt{h}8
If 1...\texttt{h}h7, then 2.\texttt{x}g6\#.

And now:
\begin{enumerate}
\item 2...\texttt{d}8 3.\texttt{d}7\# (or 3.\texttt{h}7\# \texttt{x}h7
4.e4+-)
\item 2...fxg6 3.gd7\# ci>h6 4.h4\#
\end{enumerate}

After 1...\texttt{d}8 comes 2.e5 \texttt{x}h7
3.\texttt{x}g6\#+-.

2.h4!
2.g5+- is also good.

2...\texttt{d}7 3.h5 \texttt{d}8 4.h6!
1-0

Ex. 8-11

B.Gurgenidze – R.Nezhmetdinov
Moscow 1957

1...\texttt{x}f2!

The strongest solution.

2.\texttt{x}f2

2.\texttt{x}f2 is followed by 2...\texttt{h}8 3.e1 (3.\texttt{f}3
\texttt{e}xe3 4.exe3 \texttt{x}g3\#+-; 3.\texttt{x}f8 \texttt{x}xe3\# 4.\texttt{f}2
\texttt{x}g3\#+-) 3...\texttt{f}1\#! 4.\texttt{x}f1 \texttt{x}e3\#+-.

(another 1 point for this variation)

2...\texttt{h}2\# 3.e1 \texttt{x}g3\# 4.d2 \texttt{xe}5

(another 1 point)

5.d5 \texttt{g}5\# 0–1

Ex. 8-12

H.Bach – D.Botto
Tjentiste 1975

1.\texttt{g}6!

(1 point)

1.\texttt{x}f4?! is less convincing after 1...\texttt{e}5\#.

1...\texttt{f}xg6
Or 1...\texttt{c}3 2.g7+-.

2.hxg6 \texttt{f}7 3.\texttt{f}8\#

(another 1 point)

3.gxf7 is also good enough: 3...\texttt{x}f7 4.g1+-
3...\texttt{x}f8 4.xh7\# \texttt{g}8 5.h6#

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 26

\begin{itemize}
\item 22 points and above \rightarrow \text{Excellent}
\item 18 points and above \rightarrow \text{Good}
\item 13 points \rightarrow \text{Pass mark}
\end{itemize}

If you scored less than 13 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Contents

- Weak squares
- Weak points
- Guidelines for play with and against weaknesses

Weak points

The subject of 'weak points' has already featured in this series of books – in Chapter 20 of Build Up Your Chess 1 and in Chapter 4 of Boost Your Chess 1. Let us now return to this central theme of positional play.

During a game of chess the pawns are advanced and of course that can also lead to the appearance of weaknesses.

A square is weak if it cannot be protected by a pawn and if the opponent is able to post his pieces on it. Otherwise such a structural weakness is of no practical significance.

The concept of a 'weak point' is somewhat broader than that of a 'weak square'. It is used to describe not only a square, but also a pawn, which cannot be supported by another pawn and which is being attacked by the opponent.

The following two examples demonstrate how to provoke and exploit weaknesses in the opposing position.

Diagram 9-1

A.Yusupov – A.Khalifman
Ubeda 1997

This ending looks level. But White possesses a powerful centre. This strong central position allows him to put his pieces on good squares.

1.\texttt{d3} 0–0 2.\texttt{e2}!

White wants – if required – to support his centre even more with the f-pawn. The knight can be activated via c3.

2...\texttt{d7} 3.\texttt{b1}!

Threatening \texttt{d2}. White is attempting to weaken his opponent's queenside.

3.\texttt{cl} is less accurate and leads to massive exchanges on the c-file: 3...\texttt{fc8} 4.\texttt{d2} e6 5.\texttt{xc8+ xc8} 6.\texttt{cl} \texttt{xc8} 7.\texttt{xc1 f8} = A.Yusupov – B.Gulko, Linares 1989.

3...\texttt{b6}

The first success: the a6-square has been weakened.

4.\texttt{d2 fc8} 5.\texttt{a6 d8}
Not 5...\textit{\textbf{c7}} due to 6.\textit{\textbf{hcl}} and White wins the struggle for the c-file.

6.\textit{\textbf{hcl}} \textit{\textbf{c8}}!

With great skill, Khalifman neutralizes his opponent's initiative on the open file.

7.\textit{\textbf{d3}} \textit{\textbf{h7}} 8.\textit{\textbf{c7}}

\textbf{Diagram 9-2}

8...\textit{\textbf{ac8}}! 9.\textit{\textbf{bc1}}

After 9.\textit{\textbf{xe7}} \textit{\textbf{f8}} White would be forced to part with the exchange.

9...\textit{\textbf{xc7}} 10.\textit{\textbf{xc7}} \textit{\textbf{c8}} 11.\textit{\textbf{xc8}}

11.\textit{\textbf{xe7}}?! would be too risky: 11...\textit{\textbf{f8}}! 12.\textit{\textbf{e5}}∞ (but not 12.\textit{\textbf{d7}}? \textit{\textbf{b4}}† 13.\textit{\textbf{d1}} \textit{\textbf{c6}}+) 12...\textit{\textbf{b4}}† 13.\textit{\textbf{d1}} \textit{\textbf{d6}} 14.\textit{\textbf{b5}} \textit{\textbf{a6}} and Black has an initiative for the pawn.

11...\textit{\textbf{xc8}}

\textbf{Diagram 9-3}

Black has beaten off the first attack down the c-file. But White has another object of attack, the a7-pawn!

12.\textit{\textbf{c3}}!± \textit{\textbf{c6}} 13.\textit{\textbf{b5}}! \textit{\textbf{c6}}

Black has nothing better. If he moves the a7-pawn, the two pawns on a6 and b6 become even weaker:

13...\textit{\textbf{a6}} 14.\textit{\textbf{d5}} \textit{\textbf{c5}} 15.\textit{\textbf{e7}} results in White winning a pawn.

14.\textit{\textbf{c3}}!

\textbf{The central pawns are very good standing together like this.} White's position is without weaknesses, since the pieces secure the centre well.

Capturing the pawn is not to be recommended: after 14.\textit{\textbf{xa7}} \textit{\textbf{xd3}} 15.\textit{\textbf{xc6}} \textit{\textbf{xe4}} 16.\textit{\textbf{xe7}}† \textit{\textbf{f8}}† Black gets more saving chances than in the game.

14...\textit{\textbf{f8}} 15.\textit{\textbf{a4}} \textit{\textbf{h7}} 16.\textit{\textbf{g4}}!

White improves his position on the kingside too.

16...\textit{\textbf{e8}} 17.\textit{\textbf{c4}}!

This attacks the f7-pawn and prevents the black king from coming into the centre.

17...\textit{\textbf{b8}}

Black has no more useful moves.

18.\textit{\textbf{d3}}

White does not want to move his central pawns too soon, so as not to weaken his position unnecessarily.

18...\textit{\textbf{a6}}

\textbf{Diagram 9-4}

White has succeeded in provoking this new weakening.
Positional play 2

19.\(\text{c7}\) 20.\(\text{d5}\) 21.\(\text{b4}\)!

Forcing a further pawn move, since the f7-pawn is now also being attacked.

21...a5 22.\(\text{d5}\)!

After the exchange of bishops Black can no longer defend his weak b5-square.

22...\(\text{xd5}\) 23.\(\text{xd5}\) !

Diagram 9-5

Strategically speaking, White is winning. The black pawns on the queenside are blockaded and weak. The white pawns in the centre are, on the other hand, mobile and strong. White aims to use the b5-square to penetrate with his king.

23...e6 24.\(\text{c3}\) \(\text{c7}\) 25.\(\text{b5}\) ! \(\text{c6}\) 26.\(\text{c4}\) \(\text{f8}\)

27.\(\text{f4}\) \(\text{b4}\) 28.\(\text{f3}\) \(\text{f8}\)

Diagram 9-6

29.\(\text{d5}\) !

White forces a bishop vs. knight endgame in which he is for practical purposes a pawn up.

29...\(\text{exd5}\) ! 30.\(\text{exd5}\) ! \(\text{b7}\) 31.\(\text{d6}\) ! \(\text{xd6}\) 32.\(\text{xd6}\)

= g5

Forced, because otherwise White will be able to play g5 himself, after which the knight no longer has a square. But this means that the black g-pawn has now also become weak.

33.\(\text{g3}\) !

White needs all the reserve tempi! The waiting move 33.h3 is worse, which we shall see clearly in the comments on move 36.

33...\(\text{f6}\)

33...\(\text{a6}\) 34.\(\text{d6}\) \(\text{b7}\) 35.\(\text{b5}\) \(\text{c5}\) 36.\(\text{f2}\) \(\text{d7}\)

37.\(\text{d4}\) ! leads to a zugzwang position.

34.\(\text{e5}\) \(\text{d7}\) 35.\(\text{d4}\) \(\text{c7}\)

Or 35...\(\text{a6}\) 36.\(\text{d6}\) \(\text{b7}\) 37.\(\text{b5}\) !.

36.\(\text{b5}\) \(\text{f6}\)

The main variation would be 36...\(\text{d6}\) 37.\(\text{xb6}\) \(\text{xb6}\) 38.\(\text{xb6}\) \(\text{xd5}\) 39.\(\text{xa5}\) \(\text{c5}\) 40.\(\text{a6}\) \(\text{c6}\)

41.a5 \(\text{f6}\) 42.\(\text{a7}\) \(\text{c7}\) 43.\(\text{a6}\) \(\text{h6}\) 44.\(\text{h3}\) !! Another illustration of how careful you should be about moving pawns!

37.\(\text{f2}\) \(\text{d6}\)

Or 37...\(\text{b7}\) 38.\(\text{d6}\) !.

38.\(\text{xb6}\) \(\text{e5}\) 39.\(\text{xa5}\)

Black has lost his queenside. The passed a- and d-pawns decide the game very quickly.
39...\(\text{Nxf3}\) 40.\(\text{Bc3}\)

Black resigned, since he cannot stop the white pawns. For example: 40...\(\text{Qxh2}\) 41.a5 \(\text{Qxg4}\) 42.a6 \(\text{Qe3}\) 43.a7 \(\text{Qxd5}\) 44.\(\text{Qa5+}\)

**Diagram 9-7**

**A.Yusupov – B.Lalic**

European Team Ch. Pula 1997

A little tactical exchange leads to a better position for White.

1.\(\text{Bb3!}\) 2.\(\text{Nxd3}\) \(\text{Qb2}\) 3.\(\text{Nxa7}\) \(\text{Qc4}\) 4.\(\text{Bc1}\)

Nothing is achieved by 4.\(\text{Bd3}\) due to 4...\(\text{Qb2+}\) (but not 4...\(\text{Qc7}\)! on account of 5.d5±).

4...\(\text{Bxe4}\)?

4...\(\text{Bxe3}\) is correct: 5.\(\text{Bxb7}\) \(\text{Qg2+}\) 6.\(\text{Bf2}\) \(\text{Bc2}\) 7.\(\text{h6}\) \(\text{Bf8}\) 8.\(\text{Bxg2}\) \(\text{Qxe2+}\) 9.\(\text{Bxg3}\) \(\text{Qxa2}\)

5.\(\text{h5}\)

The dark squares on the kingside are weak. White entrenches his minor pieces there.

5...\(\text{c6}\) 6.\(\text{h6}\)

The black king is now in constant danger.

5...\(\text{e5}\)

5...\(\text{Bd6}\)?! is met by 6.\(\text{Bxa6}\), and if 6...\(\text{b5}\) then White has 7.\(\text{d5! exd5}\) 8.\(\text{Bd4}\)

6.\(\text{Bf6}\) \(\text{exd4}\) 7.\(\text{Bxd4}\) \(\text{e8}\) 8.\(\text{Bf2}\) \(\text{b5}\)

**Diagram 9-8**

Black has not found a counter-plan. But in order to win the game, White must first secure his advantages on the kingside.

8.\(\text{g4!}\) 9.\(\text{b6}\) 10.\(\text{g5}\) \(\text{d7}\)

If 9...\(\text{Aa8}\) 10.\(\text{Bxa8}\) \(\text{Bxa8}\), then 11.\(\text{Bd8+}\)

10.\(\text{Be3}\)

White could keep the bishop, but after the exchange on \(f6\) the position of the black king becomes even worse.

10...\(\text{Bxf6}\) 11.\(\text{gxg6}\) \(\text{g5}\)

**Diagram 9-9**

Black further weakens his position with this move, but in any case it was already lost.

12.\(\text{Bf5!}\) \(\text{f8}\) 13.\(\text{Bd6}\) \(\text{Bc6}\) 14.\(\text{Be4}\) 15.\(\text{e6}\) 16.\(\text{Bd4}\!\)

Black has no defence against \(\text{Bd5}\) followed by \(\text{Bd6}\).

1–0
Guidelines for play with and against weaknesses

1) Weak squares offer ideal positions for the opponent's pieces! So avoid unnecessary pawn moves. Try to protect potential weaknesses in good time.

2) Provoke weaknesses in the opposing pawn structure! Exploit the weak squares in the opposing position and post your minor pieces there. Try to entrench and support these strongly posted pieces. Then you can also attack other opposing pawns and pieces with greater ease.

3) Exchange off those pieces of your opponent which protect his weaknesses!

4) Attack your opponent at his weak point! Try to use all your resources. Often manoeuvring (alternating attacks against different weaknesses or attacking from different angles or with different pieces) achieves the desired success.

5) One weakness in your opponent’s position is good, two are much better! You can then attack these weaknesses turn about and the defender is often overstretched! This is known as the principle of two weaknesses.
Exercises

Ex. 9-7

Ex. 9-10

Ex. 9-8

Ex. 9-11

Ex. 9-9

Ex. 9-12
Solutions

Ex. 9-1

V.Smyslov – I.Rudakovky
USSR Ch, Moscow 1945

1. ...h5!

A typical idea: White exchanges the knight which is defending the d5-square.

1. ...h4 would be wrong, because of 1...d5 or even 1...d5 2.g5 xg5 3.xg5 f6+.

1...xe8 2.xf6 3.xd5+ 4.d8

Or 3...xc2 4.f2 a4 5.c7+.

4.c3 b5 5.b3 c5+ 6.xh1 c8 7.b3 8.b6

8.f6! gxf6 9.xh4 xg8 10.xf6 xg7 11.xg3 xxe6 12.xf6 c8g8 13.fd1 d6 14.xg7

1-0

Ex. 9-2

N.Zubarev – A.Rubinstein
Moscow 1925

1...d5!

Black exchanges an important defensive piece and thus further weakens the e2-pawn.

1...f5?! (also 2 points) would be just as good.

2.xd5xd5 3.xe1 xh5+

The simpler 3...f5?! would be very strong:

4.xacl b5+-

4.d1! xe2 5.xe2 xe2

But not 5...xe2? on account of 6.g4+-.

6.xa4 xe6 7.b1 f3 8.d1!

8.xf1 would be more stubborn: 8...xe2 9.xb3+

8...xe2 9.xf1 c4! 10.b4 cxd3 11.xb3 xf2!

0-1

Ex. 9-3

G.Levenfish – P.Dubinin
USSR Ch, Leningrad 1934

1.e5!

This further weakens the black pawn structure.

1...xe8

1...dxe5?? loses immediately to 2.d6.

2.xd6 cd6+

Now Black has a backward pawn on d6.

3.xf8 xf8 4.xf4 xf1 5.xd8 15

5...d5?? 6.xd5+-

6...xd5+ 7.xd5

6...xe1?? 7.xf6+.

7.h4?!-+ b7 8.c4 d7 9.c3 10.e2 g6 11.h5 f8 12.h6 g5 13.b2 g8 14.f4 d8 15.d6+ xf6 16.xf6 d5 17.cxd5

1-0

Ex. 9-4

D.Bronstein – M.Botvinnik
World Ch (16), Moscow 1951

1...h5!

A piece which can still defend the light squares is of course exchanged immediately.

1...a3 xe3 2.g3

White's weakness on e4 is now even more pronounced.

3.d5+ f6 4.xd5 h6 5.g5 6.h6 f5 7.h4 g8 8.xd1 h5 9.h4 h5 10.g2 a8+

Ex. 9-5

E.Terpugov – D.Bronstein
USSR Ch, Moscow 1951

1...e6!

The simplest and safest solution: the knight is heading for d4. You get 1 point for 1...ba7 or 1...b3.

2.a6 ba7 3.a5

If 3.ea5, then 3...xa5 followed by ...d4.

3.xc6 is met by 3...c5+-.

3...c5 4.h4 d6 5.h5 g5 6.xf2 d4 7.xd2 g8 8.xa2

0-1
Solutions

Ex. 9-6

H. Pillsbury – M. Chigorin
Vienna 1898

1. \( \text{c4} \)!

(1 point)

White improves the position of his knight and transfers it to d6.

1...\( \text{\textit{E}}d5 \) 2.\( \text{d6} \) b6 3.b4 \( \text{\textit{E}}d8 \) 4.\( \text{d3} \) \( \text{\textit{E}}e7 \)
5.\( \text{\textit{E}}e3 \) \( \text{c7} \) 6.\textit{f}4±

Ex. 9-7

S. Tarrasch – Em. Lasker
World Ch(2), Germany 1908

Black must back up his strong bishop on e3.

1...\( \text{f}5 \)!

(1 point)

1...\( \text{d}4 \)!? (also 1 point) is equally strong:

2.c3 \( \text{c5} \)
2.\( \text{\textit{E}d1} \) \( \text{f4} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{E}h1} \) \( \text{d4} \) 4.\( \text{\textit{E}f2} \) \( \text{\textit{E}a6} \)!
5.\( \text{\textit{E}d3} \) \( \text{\textit{E}g5} \)

Black has a powerful attack.

6.\( \text{\textit{E}a1} \)

See Ex. 9-8.

Ex. 9-8

S. Tarrasch – Em. Lasker
World Ch(2), Germany 1908

1...\( \text{\textit{W}h6} \)!

(2 points)

Black finds a new point to attack – the h2-pawn. 1...\( \text{\textit{E}g8} \) first is equally good.

2.\( \text{\textit{E}el} \)

If 2.h3, then 2...\( \text{\textit{E}g3} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{E}d5} \) \( \text{\textit{f}3} \)–+

2...\( \text{\textit{E}xh2} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{E}d1} \)\textit{??} \( \text{\textit{E}g1} \)†

4.\( \text{\textit{E}el} \) \( \text{\textit{E}g5} \)
5.\( \text{\textit{E}c6} \)
6.\( \text{\textit{E}xc7} \) \( \text{\textit{E}e7} \)
7.\( \text{\textit{E}d8}† \) \( \text{\textit{E}g7} \)
8.\( \text{\textit{f}4} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{f}5} \)–+

9.\( \text{\textit{g}xf3} \) \( \text{\textit{g}5} \)

0–1

Ex. 9-9

A. Alekhine – V. Mikenas
Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1. \( \text{\textit{E}d6} \)!

(1 point)

The bishop is very well placed here.

1...\( \text{\textit{f}5} \)

1...\( \text{\textit{E}f6} \) would be no better: 2.\( \text{e5} \) \( \text{\textit{E}e8} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{E}a3} \) \( \text{\textit{E}g8} \) 4.\( \text{\textit{E}f4} \)–+

2.\( \text{\textit{E}e5}† \)

2.\( \text{\textit{E}xf5} \) is not bad either: 2...\( \text{\textit{E}xf5} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{E}fe1} \) \( \text{\textit{E}e8} \)
4.\( \text{\textit{E}e2} \) \( \text{\textit{E}f6} \)±

2...\( \text{\textit{E}g8} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{h}4} \) \( \text{\textit{b}6} \)

For 3...\( \text{\textit{E}f8} \) see Ex. 9-11.

4.\( \text{\textit{E}e2} \) \( \text{\textit{f}8} \) 5.\( \text{\textit{a}5} \) \( \text{\textit{b}5} \) 6.\( \text{\textit{g}6} \) \( \text{\textit{h}8} \) 7.\( \text{\textit{g}2} \) \( \text{\textit{g}8} \)
8.\( \text{\textit{h}1} \) \( \text{\textit{f}7} \) 9.\( \text{\textit{f}4} \) \( \text{\textit{E}g8} \)±

White has a large positional advantage.

See Ex. 9-10.

Ex. 9-10

A. Alekhine – V. Mikenas
Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1. \( \text{\textit{b}3} \)!

(2 points)

Now White wants to open a file on the queenside after c2-c4 and thus also activate his major pieces, in order to better support the strong bishop.

1...\( \text{\textit{E}h7} \) 2.\( \text{c4} \) \( \text{\textit{a}d7} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{E}ac1} \) \( \text{\textit{a}f8} \) 4.\( \text{\textit{a}e2} \) \( \text{\textit{a}c8} \)

4...\( \text{\textit{a}g5} \) loses after 5.\( \text{\textit{h}xg5} \) \( \text{\textit{E}xg5} \) 6.\( \text{\textit{a}xg5}† \) \( \text{\textit{h}xg5} \) (6...\( \text{\textit{E}xg5} \) 7.\( \text{\textit{E}h3} \) 7.\( \text{\textit{a}h5}† \) \( \text{\textit{E}g7} \) 8.\( \text{\textit{a}e6}† \) \( \text{\textit{a}xe6} \) 9.\( \text{\textit{a}xg5}† \)– (Alekhine).

5.\( \text{\textit{E}xd5} \) \( \text{cxd5} \) 6.\( \text{\textit{E}f8} \) \( \text{\textit{a}f8} \)

Black has exchanged the strong bishop on d6 but it is too late; White controls the only open file.

7.\( \text{\textit{E}c5}† \) \( \text{\textit{a}a7} \) 8.\( \text{\textit{a}d3} \) \( \text{\textit{a}g7} \) 9.\( \text{\textit{a}hc1} \) \( \text{\textit{a}c8} \)
10.\( \text{\textit{E}xe8} \) \( \text{\textit{E}xc8} \) 11.\( \text{\textit{a}c3} \) \( \text{\textit{E}h7} \) 12.\( \text{\textit{a}c5} \) \( \text{\textit{E}g7} \)
13.\( \text{\textit{a}b6} \) \( \text{\textit{E}e7} \) 14.\( \text{\textit{a}c5} \) \( \text{\textit{g}5} \) 15.\( \text{\textit{h}xg5} \) \( \text{\textit{h}xg5} \)
16.\( \text{\textit{a}e1}† \) \( \text{\textit{E}g6} \) 17.\( \text{\textit{a}ed3} \) \( \text{f}4 \) 18.\( \text{\textit{a}h1}† \) \( \text{\textit{E}g8} \)
19.\( \text{\textit{E}g4} \) \( \text{\textit{f}xg3} \) 20.\( \text{\textit{f}xg3} \) \( \text{\textit{a}h4}† \) 21.\( \text{\textit{g}xh4} \) \( \text{\textit{g}xh4} \)
22.\( \text{\textit{E}d2} \) \( \text{\textit{a}f7} \) 23.\( \text{\textit{a}xe6} \) \( \text{\textit{a}h7} \) 24.\( \text{\textit{E}d6} \)

1–0
Solutions

Ex. 9-11
Variation from the game

A. Alekhine – V. Mikenas
Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1. ¿g5!

(2 points)

White exploits his advantage in space to mount an elegant combination. 1. ¿g5† (also 2 points) is just as good: 1...hxg5 2. ¿xg5++

1...hxg5

Or 1...¿xd6 2.exd6 hxg5 3. ¿xg5† ¿h8 4.dxe7 ¿d7 5. ¿xe6++. 2. ¿xg5† ¿h8 3. ¿f7† ¿h7 4. ¿xd8++

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 19

16 points and above — Excellent
12 points and above — Good
9 points — Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

Ex. 9-12

R. Kholmov – I. Livshin
USSR Ch, Kiev 1954

1.e5!

(2 points)

The opening of the game quickly leads to victory.

1... ¿d8

Or 1...dxe5 2.fxe5 ¿xe5 3. ¿xe5 fxe5 4. ¿f1 ¿d8 5. ¿xe5 ¿h6 6. ¿f4 ¿g7 7. ¿f6 ¿h6 8. ¿f4++. 2.exd6 ¿xd6 3. ¿d4 ¿ab7 4.g4! ¿e8 5.g5 ¿be7 6.f5! ¿b7 7. ¿f1 ¿h8 8.gxf6 ¿f7 9.fxg6 ¿xg6 10. ¿g2 ¿h6 11. ¿g3 ¿g8 12. ¿d3

1-0
Line blocking

The aim of line blocking combinations is to disrupt the communication between opposing pieces (or between a piece and an important square).

We have already looked at line blocking in Chapter 19 of Build Up Your Chess 1 - 'Combinations involving promotion'. Here is another spectacular example.

Diagram 10-1

V.Nenarokov - N.Grigoriev
Moscow 1923

The white rook is controlling the d-pawn, the bishop the h-pawn. After the following very startling move, one of the pieces is no longer able to carry out its task.

1...d6!! 2...xd6
The rook blocks the diagonal c7-h2. If 2...xd6, then simply 2...d1++. 2...h2
0–1

Line blocking is very often employed in the attack.

Diagram 10-2

Zhuravlev - Borissenkov
Moscow 1949

Black would like to play ...f4-f3, but the white queen protects the square. For that reason there comes first:

1...d3! 2...xd3
And only now:

2...f3
White cannot beat off the attack.

3.e3
Or 3...xe7 wh3+ 4.g1 wh1#.
3...h1+ 4.g1 xg1# 5.xg1 dg8+ 6.f1 h1#
Diagram 10-3

J.Armas - A.Crisan
Calimanesti 1986

The black major pieces are protecting the h5-square. With his next move, White cuts off the link to this important square.

1. xe5! xe5 2. h5\+ g6
Or 2... g8 3. xe8\+-. White now wins by force.

3. xg6\+! xg6 4. f7! e7 5. f6\+ h7 6. xh6\+! xh6 7. f8\+
1-0

In defence too, line blocking is a dangerous weapon, which can very easily be overlooked.

Diagram 10-4

V.Tseshkovs - A.Miles
Palma de Mallorca 1989

White was hoping that his next moves would manage to restore the balance.

1. c1? 
1. xd4 would have been better: 1...xd4 2. f5\+

1... xd5 2. c8
White aimed to win back the piece by threatening x a8 followed by c8. But Black can break the line of communication between the queen and rook.

2... c4!! 3. xc4
3. xa8 loses to 3... xc1\+. 

3... bc4
Black has kept his material advantage and quickly wins the game.

4. d7 a1\+ 5. f1 cxb3 6. xd6
Or 6. xd8\+ g8--.

6... g8
0-1

Diagram 10-5

Minsk 1978

1. g5!
The future world champion starts a correct combination.
1...\textit{d8}

1...\textit{xg5} is met by 2.\textit{xf6}. What we are interested in is the defence to this which GM Soltis quotes in his book and describes as being sufficient for equality: 2...\textit{f3}?! - a surprising example of line blocking. We now have:

a) 3.\textit{xe7} is bad, due to 3...\textit{xf6}.

b) 3.g3?? loses after 3...\textit{xf6}.

c) 3.\textit{xg5}? is followed by 3...\textit{xg2}\textit{t} 4.\textit{w}\textit{xg2} \textit{xg2}\textit{t} 5.\textit{h1} \textit{f2}\textit{t} with perpetual check.

d) The correct move, which Soltis did not find, is 3.\textit{g8}!+-.

Did Kasparov see it during the game?
We give the rest of the game without comment.

2.\textit{w}\textit{f4} \textit{e6} 3.h4 \textit{d5} 4.g4 \textit{g7} 5.gxh5 \textit{fxg5} 6.\textit{e5} \textit{h6} 7.\textit{hxg6} \textit{gxh4} 8.\textit{f5} \textit{g6} 9.\textit{h2}
1-0

Diagram 10-6

\begin{center}
\textbf{A.Anderssen - L.Paulsen}
Breslau 1877
\end{center}

1...\textit{a7}\textit{t} 2.\textit{h1}
Black thought that White had overlooked his tactical idea.

2...\textit{g3}\textit{t}?! 3.hxg3 \textit{f6}

How can White ward off the mate threat without losing material? 4.\textit{f2}!

White blocks the diagonal a7-g1. On account of his back rank weakness, Black cannot capture the rook.
1-0

Here is another typical line blocking which frequently appears in praxis.

Diagram 10-7

\begin{center}
\textbf{L.Portisch - R.Fischer}
Santa Monica 1966
\end{center}

1...\textit{e3}!
Black wins the exchange.

2.\textit{h1}xe3

If 2.f3, then 2...\textit{d2} 3.\textit{g1} \textit{f2}+- (Fischer).

2...\textit{fxe3} 3.\textit{xe3} \textit{xa2}+-
Exercises
Ex. 10-1

B. Baum – O. Thal
West Germany 1975

1...b4!!

(1 point)

2.axb4 c4† 3.d2 d3† 4.c1 b1†
5.d2 xb2†
0–1

(another 1 point)

Ex. 10-2

H. Munoz – H. Salazar
Novi Sad Olympiad 1990

1...d3! 2.cxd3
2.xe4 dxc2–+
2...c4!!

(2 points)

Blocking the c-file.

3.bxc4
3.dxe4 is more stubborn, but also insufficient: 3...c2 4.g6† h7! 5.g7† g8
6.xf4 c1†

3...c2–+ 4.xf4 c1† 5.xe4 d1
0–1

6.xa5 is met by 6...e1†.

Ex. 10-3

A. Miles – C. Pritchett
London 1982

1.e5!!

(1 point)

Black resigned. He loses quickly in all variations:

a) 1...xe5 2.xg7#

b) 1...xb2 2.xb2–+

c) 1...xd1† 2.xd1 2xe5 3.bxc3–+

d) 1...xd7 2.xd7 2xe5 3.bxc3–+

e) 1...xe5 2.xe8† h7 3.g6†–

Ex. 10-4

V. Simagin – D. Bronstein
Moscow 1947

1.g5!!

(1 point)

Blocking the g-file.

1...h1

After 1...fxg5 2.f6, the threat of 3.g7# wins immediately.

Also hopeless is 1...xg5 2.c8† g7
3.d7† g8 4.xh2–+

(1 point for this variation)

2.e8† g7 3.g6† f8 4.xf6† g8
5.d8† g7 6.e7† g8 7.e8†

Black resigned, on account of 7...g7 (or 7...h7 8.xg6† h8 9.xf6#) 8.f6† h7
9.f7† h8 10.g7#.

(another 1 point for this variation)

Ex. 10-5

C. Ahues – N. N.
Berlin 1920

Black resigned! But he could still have won the game by blocking the g-file.

1...g4!!

(1 point)

1...gxf6?? 2.g3† h8 3.xf6#

2.hxg4 gxf6–+

Ex. 10-6

Sergeev – A. Panchenko
USSR 1984

1.d5!

(1 point)

This forces Black to exchange rooks.

1...e2†

1...xd5 2.exd5++; 1...xd5? 2.d7#.

2.h1 xd5 3.exd5 g5 4.d7† g4 5.a5 c3
6.a6 xd5 7.a7 b6 8.a8# 9.xa8 9.a6

Black is mated next move, either by 10.g2# or after 9...g4 10.d7#.

1–0
Solutions

Ex. 10-7
B. Perenyi – J. Brandics
Budapest 1985

1. \textit{\texttt{g5!!}}

(1 point)

Of course not 1. \textit{\texttt{g6} \texttt{g1} ++ +}.

1... \textit{\texttt{fxg5}}

1... \texttt{g1} \texttt{g6} 2. \textit{\texttt{xf6}++ g8} 3. \texttt{h7}++

2. \textit{\texttt{g6}}

1–0

Ex. 10-8
J. Klovans – A. Tolush
USSR Team Ch, Leningrad 1962

1. \textit{\texttt{c7!}}

(1 point)

Blocking the 7th rank. Black resigned, in view of 1... \texttt{xc7} 2. \texttt{wc3}++--.

Ex. 10-9
Kasparovich – Buchman
Moscow 1977

1... \textit{\texttt{g6!!}}

(1 point)

Black blocks the g-file and prepares ... \texttt{g1}.

2. \textit{\texttt{g2}}

2. \texttt{gxg6} \texttt{g1} 3. \texttt{xf7}++ \texttt{h7} 4. \texttt{g6}++ (or
4. \texttt{g8}++ \texttt{h8}+++) 4... \texttt{g6}+--

(another 1 point for this variation)

2... \texttt{e3}++ 3. \texttt{h4} \texttt{g5}++

0–1

Ex. 10-10
M. Tal – I. Platonov
Dubna 1973

1. \textit{\texttt{g6!}}

(1 point)

1. \texttt{xg6}++ 1... \texttt{g7}+++

1. \texttt{xf8}++ 2. \texttt{e5} 3. \texttt{xd7} \texttt{h4}++

1... \texttt{exg6}

1... \texttt{fxg6} 2. \texttt{xf8}#

2. \texttt{fxg6} \texttt{fxg6} 3. \texttt{xf8}#

(another 1 point)

Ex. 10-11
Zhuravlev – Kapanadse
Tiblisi 1977

1. \textit{\texttt{xb1}}

1... \texttt{f5} also wins: 2. \texttt{beb1} \texttt{b1}!!++

2. \texttt{xb1} \texttt{f5}++

3. \texttt{f1}

3. \texttt{xf5} \texttt{f3}+++

3... \texttt{e2}

0–1

Ex. 10-12
P. San Segundo – J. Dorfman
Mondarat 2000

1. \textit{\texttt{c5!}}

(1 point)

A typical idea!

2. \texttt{dxc5}

2. \texttt{xc5} bxc5 3. \texttt{xf6} cxd4++

2... \texttt{xc7} 3. \texttt{xf6} \texttt{gxf6} 4. \texttt{c6} \texttt{fc8}++
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 19

17 points and above → Excellent
14 points and above → Good
10 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 10 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
CHAPTER 11

Contents
✓ Lasker Variation
✓ 9.cxd5 Variation
✓ 9.♗c2 Variation
✓ 9.♖c1 Variation

Opening repertoire for Black against 1.d4

This chapter is only one example of how you can prepare an opening repertoire. You do not have to play the variation suggested if you do not like this opening or if you prefer more aggressive variations. However, some knowledge of typical positional ideas resulting from the opening can also be useful and will extend your positional arsenal.

Our opening repertoire against 1.d4 will be constructed around the improved Lasker Variation of the Queen's Gambit. This is a solid and reliable weapon. Black's play is strategically simple and based on sound positional foundations.

Characteristic of the Lasker Variation (1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♗c3 ♔f6 4.♖g5 ♔e7 5.♗f3 h6 6.♗h4 0-0 7.e3) is the exchange of dark-squared bishops after 7...♗e4. This exchange leads to a straightforward situation for Black; the queen finds a secure position on e7 and in most lines the light-squared bishop is fianchettoed to b7. After the obligatory 8.♗xe7 ♔xe7, White has three main variations: 9.cxd5, 9.♗c2 or 9.♖c1.

The 9.cxd5 variation

A.Karpov – A.Yusupov
Candidates(6), London 1989

1.d4 ♔f6 2.c4 e6 3.♗f3 d5 4.♗c3
4.g3 leads to the Catalan Opening.
4...♗e7 5.♗g5
5.♗f4 is the other variation which Black should study.
5...0-0 6.e3 h6
Lasker played the immediate 6...♗e4. But in some variations the move ...h7-h6 is useful for Black.
7.♖h4
After 7.♗xf6 ♔xf6 8.♖c1 c6 9.♗d3 ♔d7 10.0-0 Black should play 10...dxc4 11.♗xc4 e5 and in that way solve the problem of the light-squared bishop - it will later come into play via the c8-h3 diagonal.
7...\textit{\textbf{Re}4} 8.\textit{\textbf{R}xe}4 \textit{\textbf{R}xe}7 9.\textit{\textbf{Rx}d}5

\textbf{Diagram 11-1}

This forces further exchanges. 9.\textit{\textbf{R}xe}4 \textit{\textbf{R}xe}4 10.\textit{\textbf{R}d}2 \textit{\textbf{f}5} is not dangerous for Black.

9...\textit{\textbf{R}xc}3 10.\textit{\textbf{B}xc}3 \textit{\textbf{R}d}5 11.\textit{\textbf{B}b}3 \textit{\textbf{R}d}8 12.\textit{\textbf{c}4}

White obtains a strong centre. But Black is well developed and can prepare counterplay in good time.

12...\textit{\textbf{d}xc}4 13.\textit{\textbf{B}xc}4 \textit{\textbf{B}c}6!

Threatening ...\textit{\textbf{R}a}5.

14.\textit{\textbf{B}c}3

The main alternative is 14.\textit{\textbf{B}e}2?! \textit{\textbf{b}6} 15.0-0 \textit{\textbf{B}b}7 16.\textit{\textbf{B}fc}1 \textit{\textbf{Bac}8} 17.\textit{\textbf{B}a}4 \textit{\textbf{B}a}5 (a typical idea, Black prepares ...\textit{\textbf{c}7-c}5) 18.\textit{\textbf{B}c}3 \textit{\textbf{c}5} 19.\textit{\textbf{B}ac}1 \textit{\textbf{R}xd}4 20.\textit{\textbf{R}xd}4 \textit{\textbf{B}xc}3 21.\textit{\textbf{B}xc}3 Computer Deep Fritz – Kramnik, Bahrain 2002. And here I recommend the active 21...\textit{\textbf{R}e}4 22.\textit{\textbf{B}f}1 (22.\textit{\textbf{B}f}3?! \textit{\textbf{B}b}1† 23.\textit{\textbf{d}d}1 \textit{\textbf{R}xd}1† 24.\textit{\textbf{R}xd}1 \textit{\textbf{B}c}6†) 22...\textit{\textbf{B}d}6=.

14...\textit{\textbf{g}4}!

\textbf{Diagram 11-2}

This will weaken the opponent's pawn structure. 14...\textit{\textbf{B}b}4 is not so strong: 15.\textit{\textbf{B}c}1± (Alekhine)

15.0-0

If 15.\textit{\textbf{B}e}2, then 15...\textit{\textbf{B}xf}3 16.\textit{\textbf{g}xf}3 (16.\textit{\textbf{B}xf}3 is bad, due to 16...\textit{\textbf{R}xd}4 17.\textit{\textbf{B}xb}7 \textit{\textbf{B}ab}8 18.\textit{\textbf{B}a}6 \textit{\textbf{B}f}6) 16.\textit{\textbf{B}d}6 and Black threatens ...\textit{\textbf{R}xd}4†, Martinez – Guimard, Argentina 1948.

15...\textit{\textbf{B}xf}3 16.\textit{\textbf{g}xf}3 \textit{\textbf{B}f}6!

Black improves the position of his queen and begins preparing ...\textit{\textbf{c}7-c}5.

17.\textit{\textbf{B}e}2

17.\textit{\textbf{f}4} \textit{\textbf{e}7} (\textit{\textbf{D}c}7-c5) 18.\textit{\textbf{d}d}3 \textit{\textbf{B}ac}8± (ECO).

17...\textit{\textbf{B}ac}8!

\textbf{Diagram 11-3}

Black's plan is clear: ...\textit{\textbf{B}e}7 and ...\textit{\textbf{c}7-c}5.

18.\textit{\textbf{B}ab}1 \textit{\textbf{b}6} 19.\textit{\textbf{B}fc}1

19.\textit{\textbf{B}a}6 is followed by 19...\textit{\textbf{B}xf}3! 20.\textit{\textbf{B}xc}8 \textit{\textbf{B}xc}8 21.\textit{\textbf{B}fc}1 (or 21.\textit{\textbf{h}3} \textit{\textbf{d}8} 22.\textit{\textbf{B}h}2 \textit{\textbf{B}xd}4 23.\textit{\textbf{g}1} \textit{\textbf{g}6} 24.\textit{\textbf{g}3} \textit{\textbf{x}f}2† 25.\textit{\textbf{g}2} \textit{\textbf{f}3†} 21...\textit{\textbf{B}e}7, intending ...\textit{\textbf{B}f}5-h4 with an excellent initiative on the kingside.

19...\textit{\textbf{B}e}7=

Black has good chances on the kingside (e.g. ...\textit{\textbf{B}d}5-h5, ...\textit{\textbf{B}h}4). In the centre he should not forget the planned ...\textit{\textbf{c}7-c}5.
The 9.\textit{w}c2 Variation

\textbf{A.Karpov – A.Yusupov}

Candidates(4), London 1989

1.d4 \textit{w}f6 2.c4 e6 3.\textit{d}f3 d5 4.\textit{c}c3 \textit{w}e7 5.g5 0–0 6.e3 h6 7.\textit{g}h4 \textit{d}e4 8.\textit{x}xe7 \textit{w}xe7 9.\textit{w}c2

Diagram 11-4

A solid system, but one which only offers White very modest hopes of an advantage.

9...\textit{x}xc3 10.\textit{w}xc3 dxc4

The simplest solution. Black will fianchetto his bishop and obtain good counterplay.

11.\textit{x}xc4 b6 12.0–0

Or 12.\textit{x}c1 \textit{w}b7 13.\textit{e}e2 \textit{d}f7 14.0–0 \textit{w}fc8 15.b4 c5 16.bxc5 \textit{w}xc5 17.\textit{a}a3 \textit{w}f8 18.\textit{x}xc5 \textit{x}xc5=.

12...\textit{b}b7 13.\textit{d}d2

13.\textit{g}fd1 is followed by 13...\textit{d}f7 14.b4 c5 15.bxc5 \textit{w}xc5 16.d5 exd5 17.\textit{g}xd5 \textit{g}xd5 18.\textit{w}xd5 \textit{w}ac8=.

13...c5?

A strategically important move. Black could even make more preparations for this advance: 13...\textit{w}c8 14.b4 \textit{d}f7 15.\textit{w}fc1 (15.\textit{g}fd1 \textit{w}f6?) 15...c5 16.\textit{x}xc5 (16.bxc5 \textit{w}xc5 17.\textit{w}a3 \textit{w}f8=) 16...\textit{x}xc5 17.db5 a6 and White has no advantage.

14.\textit{x}xc5 \textit{g}c8

Diagram 11-5

15.\textit{d}d4?!

After 15.b4 bxc5 16.b5 there comes 16...a6. Despite this, it is the only way for White to fight for an advantage.

15...\textit{x}xc5 16.\textit{w}a3 \textit{d}c6!

The opponent's centralized pieces must either be exchanged off or attacked.

16.\textit{x}xc6

Black is already more active. If 17.\textit{b}b3? then 17...\textit{w}c2 18.\textit{w}f3 \textit{w}xa3 19.bxa3 \textit{w}c8=.

17...\textit{d}d8 18.\textit{g}fd1?!

18.\textit{g}fc1 would be better: 18...\textit{x}c1 19.\textit{x}c1 \textit{w}xa3 20.bxa3 \textit{d}d5 21.\textit{c}c2=

18...\textit{w}c8! 19.\textit{w}f1

19.\textit{b}ac1? is followed by 19...\textit{w}g5 20.g3 (20.\textit{w}f1
\textit{x}xg2!–+) 20...\textit{x}c1 21.\textit{x}c1 \textit{d}d5 22.f3 \textit{d}d2=.

19...d5=+

Black has a dangerous initiative.
The 9.c₁ Variation

V. Zvjaginsev – V. Bologan
Poikovsky 2003

1.d₄ Ʌf₆ 2.c₄ e₆ 3.Ʌf₃ d₅ 4.Ʌc₃ Ʌe₇ 5.Ʌg₅ h₆ 6.Ʌh₄ 0–0 7.e₃ Ʌe₄ 8.Ʌxe₇ Ʌxe₇ 9.c₁

Diagram 11-6
A logical move, which poses Black the most problems.

9...c₆ 10.Ʌd₃ Ʌxc₃ 11.Ʌxc₃ dxc₄ 12.Ʌxc₄ Ʌd₇
Black must develop his light-squared bishop and has two different plans: ...c₆-e₅ or ...b₇-b₆ followed by ...Ʌb₇ and ...c₅.

13.0–0 b₆
13...e₅ is of course possible, but it also opens up the game for the white pieces. The text move appears to be safer.

14.Ʌd₃
Otherwise Black has no problems developing his queenside.

14...c₅
14...Ʌb₇ is considered risky, on account of 15.Ʌe₄ Ʌac₈ 16.Ʌc₂. However, here Black can try 16...Ʌa₆ followed by ...c₅.

15.Ʌe₄ Ʌb₈ 16.Ʌa₄
16.Ʌc₂ a₅ 17.Ʌd₁ Ʌd₈ 18.Ʌc₆ Ʌb₇ 19.Ʌxb₇ Ʌxb₇ 20.Ʌcd₃ Ʌbb₈ led only to a minimal advantage for White in Khalifman – Korneev, Spain 2003.
A good alternative is to meet 16.Ʌc₂ with 16...Ʌa₆? 17.Ʌc₁ Ʌfc₈ 18.Ʌa₄ cxd₄ 19.exd₄ (or 19.Ʌxd₄ Ʌxc₃ 20.Ʌxc₃ Ʌc₅ 21.Ʌc₂ Ʌxe₄ 22.Ʌc₆? Ʌd₆=) 19...Ʌxc₃ 20.Ʌxc₃ Ʌf₆=.

16...Ʌf₆!

Diagram 11-7
This strong move leads to sharp play. Previously 16...Ʌb₇ 17.Ʌxb₇ Ʌxb₇ 18.Ʌc₂ a₅ 19.a₃ was played here and after 19...Ʌd₈ 20.Ʌd₁ Ʌbb₈ White is only minimally better.

17.Ʌc₆
Black has no problems after 17.dxc₅ bxc₅.

17...cxd₄ 18.exd₄
18.Ʌxd₄ e₅ 19.Ʌf₃ Ʌg₄ doesn’t promise White any advantage.

18...a₆

113
There is also the interesting 18...b5 19...xb5 a6 20.c4 xb2 21...b3 b7.  
19...e5 b7 20.fcl d5!  
This forces equality.  
21...d5...d5 22.xa6 a8 23.xb6 g5  
White now has to weaken his castled position.  

24.g3 xa2 25.d7 d2!  
This gives Black enough counterplay and is stronger than 25...e8 26.c8.  
26.xf8  
Or 26.c8 xb2! 27.xb2 xb2=.  
26...xb2 27.xb2 xb2 28.c8 b7!  
28...g5?! is too optimistic. There follows 29.xe6†  
29.xe6†=  
White must force the draw.  
29...xc8 30.xc8† h7 31.f8†  
With perpetual check.  
1/2–1/2

The test will help you better assimilate some of the important ideas in this opening. Think for about 5 minutes (no more than 10 minutes) and decide what you would play in the position in a game. Give only the necessary reasons for your choice. Your score is not so important. It is more important to play through on a board all the games from the test and to understand the typical ideas.
Exercises

Ex. 11-1

Ex. 11-2

Ex. 11-3

Ex. 11-4

Ex. 11-5

Ex. 11-6
Exercises

Ex. 11-7

Ex. 11-10

Ex. 11-8

Ex. 11-11

Ex. 11-9

Ex. 11-12
Solutions

Ex. 11-1

B.Gulko – A.Yusupov
Reykjavik 1990

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.će3 d7 4.ćf3 ćf6 5.ćg5
0–0 6.će6 h6 7.ćh4 će4 8.ćxe7 ćxe7 9.ćc1
ćc6 10.ćd3 ćxc3 11.ćxc3 dxc4 12.ćxc4 ćd7
13.0–0 b6 14.će2 ćb7 15.ća6 ćxa6 16.ćxa6
ćc5 17.ćfc1

Diagram Ex. 11-1

17...će5!  
A typical idea. Black cranks up the pressure in the centre and achieves equality.

18.ćb7 ćd6 19.ćc4 ćf8 20.će4 exd4
21.exd4 će8 22.ćc2

½–½

Ex. 11-2

R.Cramling – A.Yusupov
Hamburg 1991

1.d4 ćf6 2.c4 e6 3.ćf3 d5 4.ćc3 će7 5.ćg5
h6 6.ćh4 0–0 7.će3 će4 8.ćxe7 ćxe7 9.ćc1
ćc6 10.ćd3 ćxc3 11.ćxc3 dxc4 12.ćxc4 ćd7
13.0–0 b6 14.ćd3 c5 15.ćb5 ćd8 16.će2?!  
(16.ćc6) 16...ćb7 17.ćxd7!?

Diagram Ex. 11-2

17...exd4!平等
A useful tactical idea. Black avoids the weakening of his pawn structure after 17...ćxd7 18.dxc5.

18.ćxd4 ćxd7 19.a3
19.ćfc1 ćd5 20.ćf3 ćxa2平

19...ćac8?!  
19...ćd5 20.ćf3 ćac8 21.ćfc1平

20.ćxc8 ćxc8 21.ćd1 e5 22.ćb5 ćb7  
Better is 22.ćf3 ćf5 23.će1平.

22...ćc6 23.ćf3 će6 24.a4 ćxb5 25.ćxb5 ćc2平
23...ća6 24.a4 ćxb5 25.ćxb5 ćc2平
Or 25...ćc4平.

Ex. 11-3

S.Ionov – A.Yusupov
Oviedo (rapid) 1993

1.ćf3 d5 2.d4 ćf6 3.ćc4 e6 4.ćc3 će7 5.ćg5
h6 6.ćh4 0–0 7.će3 će4 8.ćxe7 ćxe7 9.ćc1
ćc6 10.ćd3 ćxc3 11.ćxc3 dxc4 12.ćxc4

Diagram Ex. 11-3

12...ćd7

(2 points)

Black prepares ...će5.

13.0–0 će5 14.ćxe5 ćxe5 15.će4 ćxf3†  
16.ćxf3 će6 17.ćc4 ćad8平
Black has developed his forces well and can look to the future with optimism.

18.ćxe6 fxe6 19.će2 ćd5 20.ćd1 ćf6
21.ćed4 ćfd8 22.ćc4 a5 23.ćh3 ćad6
24.ćc3 ćd8 25.g3 b6 26.ćd1 ćd7 27.ća3 ćf8 28.ćb4 ćxb4 29.ćxb4 e5 30.ćxd5 ćxd5
31.ćxd5 ćc2 32.ćc2 će4 33.ća4 c5
34.ćxc5 ćxc5 35.ćb5 će7 36.ćg2 h5 37.ćh4 ćf6 38.ćg1 g6 39.ćg2 ćg7 40.ćg1

½–½

Ex. 11-4

E.Lobron – A.Yusupov
Munich 1993

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.ćc3 će7 4.ćf3 ćf6 5.ćg5
h6 6.ćh4 0–0 7.će3 će4 8.ćxe7 ćxe7 9.ćc2 ćxc3 10.ćxc3 dxc4 11.ćxc4 b6 12.d5

Diagram Ex. 11-4

12...exd5

(1 point)

The simplest solution, although 12...ćc6 (also 1 point) would be just as good: 13.ćxe6 ćxe6

13.ćxd5 c6 14.ćc4 ćb7?!
Black gets into difficulties only because of this inattentive move. Either 14...će8? or 14...će6? would be a clear improvement. Or simply first 14...ćd7! and only then 15...ćb7=.

15.će5!  
Threatening ćg6.
Solutions

15...b5?!  
15...a6?!

16...b3  
17.a4  
18.dg6  
19.axb5  
Even better is 21...a7?! c4 22...xc4  
23...xc4  
24...xb7  
25...c5  
25...e7+-.

Ex. 11-5

C.Lutz – A.Yusupov  
Munich 1993

1...d5  
2.c4 e6  
3.d3  
4.dg5  
5.h5  
h6  
6.h4  
7.e3  
8.dxe7  
9.d7  
10...x3c4  
11...c4  
b6  
12...e2  
b7  
13...d5?!  
14.dxc5  
15...c5  
16...x3f3  
17...c4  
18...c8  
19.axb5  
20.0-0  
21...c5  
22...c4  
23...d5  
24...xa7  
25...c5  
26...d5  
27...b5  
28...d7  
29...xd7  
30...f1  
31...f1  
32...e2  
33...xd5  
34...d3  
35...d2  
36...c3  
37...h5  
38...xg5  
39...g7+  
40...d2  
41...b6  
42...f3

Diagram 11-5

18...c6!

(2 points)

After the exchange of the light-squared bishop, Black has to protect some light squares with his pawns.

19...f1  
19...d5

The knight is so well placed here that Black has no more problems.

20.a3  
21.bxa5

But not 21.b5?  
...xb5  
...g5†  
...d3  
+.

21...xa5  
22...dc1  
23...f4  
24...d1  
25...d2  
26...f1  
27...c4  
28...b3  
29...xb1  
30...xb5  
31...xal  
32...xal  
33...d1  
34...h4  
35...h5  
36...d5  
37...xd5  
38...xd5  
39...h2

39...g5†  
40...g2  
41...b6  
41...b3

Ex. 11-6

L.Ftacnik – A.Yusupov  
Bundesliga 1994

1.d4  
2.c4  
3...c6  
4...f6  
5...d5  
h6  
6.h4  
7.e3  
8...xe7  
9...d7  
10...x3c4  
11...c4  
b6  
12...b7  
13...c2  
14.dxc5  
15...b5  
16...c1  
17.bxc5  
18...a3  
19...f1  
20...d7  
21...f1  
22...e7

Diagram 11-6

19...f8!=

(1 point)

A typical move. It is always advisable to unpin as soon as possible.

19...f8 would be somewhat more passive.

But first playing 19...d5 (also 1 point) is not bad either.

20...xc5  
21...b2  
22...d4  
23...a6  
24...a3  
25...b4†  
26...xb4  
27...b5  
28...c3  
29...xd7  
30...f1  
31...f1  
32...e2  
33...xd5†  
34...d3  
35...d2  
36...c3  
37...h5  
38...h5  
39...g7+  
40...h2

Ex. 11-7

J.Benjamin – A.Yusupov  
Zurich 1994

1.d4  
2.c4  
3...c6  
4...f6  
5...d5  
h6  
6.h4  
7.e3  
8...xe7  
9...d7  
10...d3  
11...x3c4  
12...c4  
13...d7  
14...e2  
15...d1  
16...a6  
17...xal  
18...b7  
19...e4  
20...b7  
21...e4  
22...c5  
23...h3  
24...a4  
25...e7  
26...e5

Diagram 11-7

25...e5!

(1 point)

We have already seen this idea in Ex. 11-1.

26...xe5  
27...f5

½–½

Ex. 11-8

J.Granda Zuniga – A.Yusupov  
Moscow Olympiad 1994

1.d4  
2.c4  
3...c6  
4...f6  
5...d5  
h6  
6.h4  
7.e3  
8...xe7  
9...d7  
10...x3c4  
11...c4  
b6  
12...b7  
13...f1  
14...f3  
15...e7

Diagram 11-8

13...e2  
14.dxc5  
15...b4  
16...c1  
17.bxc5  
18...a3  
19...d1  
20...d7  
21...f1  
22...e7  
23...d5  
24...e7  
25...e7

½–½
15...bxc5 16.d5 exd5 17...xd5 ...xd5 18...xd5 ...ac8
19...c1 ...e6 20...d2 ...f6 21...e5 ...b6=
M.Tal – G.Timoshchenko, Tbilisi 1978
Diagram Ex. 11-8

15...a6!

15...fd8 (1 point) is met by 16.b5!. It is useful for Black to control the b5-square.

16...f1 ...f6
Black unpins the c5-pawn. Alternatives are 16...fd8?! 17...ac1 ...f8= and 16...g5?!
17...ac1 ...fd8
Or 17...fc8 18...xc5 ...xc5 19...b4 e5=.
18...xc5 ...xc5= 19...xd8?
Better is 19...b4 ...xd1 20...xd1 ...d8
21...xd8+ ...xd8=.
19...xd8 20...b4
20.b4? is bad, because of 20...d2.

Ex. 11-9

[Ex. 11-9]
J.Granda Zuniga – A.Yusupov
Moscow Olympiad 1994

20...a5!

(2 points)
Of course not 20...e5? on account of 21...xc5++. After the pawn sacrifice Black starts a strong attack.

21...xb6
21...c3 ...xc3 22...xc3 (22...xc3 ...d1
23...d3 ...a6=) 22...d2=+

21...d2 22...f3
An emergency brake.
22.f3 is followed by 22...h4

(1 point)
(another 1 point)
23...b5 (23...c4 ...f2+ 24...h1 ...xb2 25...xc5 ...xf3+++) 23...xb2 (23...f2+ 24...h1 ...xf3 would not be so clear after 25...b8+! ...h7
26...f3 or 26...g3) 24...xc5 ...f2+ 25...h1 ...xf3 26...c8+ ...h7 27...d3+ g6 28...xg6?? ...
29...c3+ ...xg6 30...d3+ f5=.
22...xf3 23...xf3

Ex. 11-10

[Ex. 11-10]
J.Granda Zuniga – A.Yusupov
Moscow Olympiad 1994

26...e4!

(1 point)
27...c4
Other moves also clearly lose:
a) 27...g2 ...d1+ 28...xd1 ...xd1+ 29...f1 ...d2=+
b) 27...f3 ...g5 28...g2 ...xg2+ 29...xg2 ...d2+--
27...a8!

(another 1 point)
27...b7 would not be so good, because of 28...a6!.
28...xf7 ...f2--
Or 28...g5=+
29...xe6?
It is not often that a grandmaster overlooks a mate in one! But the position was lost anyway: 29...xf2 ...xf2 30...xf2 ...b8 31...d3+ ...g8= 29...

Ex. 11-11

[Ex. 11-11]
L.Christiansen – A.Yusupov
Bundesliga 1995

1...d4 ...f6 2.c4 e6 3...c3 d5 4...c6 5...e7 6...h6 7...h4 0-0 7...e4 8...xe7 ...xe7 9...c1
10...d3 ...xc3 11...xc3 dxc4 12...xc4 ...d7
13...c2 e5 14...d3
Diagram Ex. 11-11

14...f5!

(2 points)
Only 1 point for the slightly more passive 14...g6 15.0–0=.
15...xe5 ...xe5 16...xe5 ...xe5 17...d4 ...e6
18.0–0 ...h8 19...d1 ...ae8=
Solutions

Black has mobilized all his forces and tries to exploit his pawn majority on the queenside.

20.h3 c5 21.\textit{\texttt{d}}d6 \textit{\texttt{xb}}2 22.\textit{\texttt{b}}1 \textit{\texttt{xa}}2
23.\textit{\texttt{xb}}7 \textit{\texttt{a}}5 24.\textit{\texttt{h}}2 \textit{\texttt{c}}8
White now forces the draw.

25.\textit{\texttt{xa}}6\texttt{t}! \texttt{gxh}6 26.\textit{\texttt{d}}d6 \textit{\texttt{xb}}7 27.\textit{\texttt{xa}}6\texttt{t} \textit{\texttt{g}}8
28.\textit{\texttt{b}}3\texttt{t} c4 29.\textit{\texttt{xc}}4\texttt{t}

\texttt{½-½}

Ex. 11-12

\textbf{V.Kramnik – C.Lutz}
Bundesliga 1994

1.\textit{\texttt{b}}3 \texttt{d}5 2.\textit{\texttt{d}}4 \textit{\texttt{f}}6 3.\textit{\texttt{c}}4 \texttt{e}5 4.\textit{\texttt{c}}3 \textit{\texttt{e}}7 5.\textit{\texttt{g}}5 6.\textit{\texttt{h}}4 0-0 7.\textit{\texttt{e}}3 \textit{\texttt{d}}4 8.\textit{\texttt{xe}}7 \textit{\texttt{xe}}7 9.\textit{\texttt{xd}}5
\textit{\texttt{xc}}3 10.\textit{\texttt{bxc}}3 exd5 11.\textit{\texttt{b}}3 \textit{\texttt{d}}8 12.\textit{\texttt{c}}4 \textit{\texttt{xc}}4
13.\textit{\texttt{xc}}4 \textit{\texttt{c}}6 14.\textit{\texttt{e}}2 \texttt{b}6! (14...\textit{\texttt{g}}4 15.0-0±)

15.0-0 \textit{\texttt{b}}7 16.\textit{\texttt{ac}}1 \textit{\texttt{a}}5 17.\textit{\texttt{fb}}2

\textbf{Diagram Ex. 11-12}

17...\textit{\texttt{ac}}8=

(1 point)

Preparing the standard move ...\texttt{c}5.

18.\texttt{h}3

Or 18.\textit{\texttt{ec}}3 \texttt{c}5 19.\textit{\texttt{a}}3 \textit{\texttt{f}}8=. 

18...\texttt{c}5 19.\textit{\texttt{dx}}5

19.\textit{\texttt{a}}3 \textit{\texttt{f}}8 20.\textit{\texttt{dx}}5 \textit{\texttt{d}}5!?= does not promise White anything.

19...\textit{\texttt{xc}}5 20.\textit{\texttt{xc}}5 \textit{\texttt{xc}}5 21.\textit{\texttt{c}}1 \textit{\texttt{e}}7 22.\textit{\texttt{d}}4 \textit{\texttt{g}}5

Black should prefer either 22...\textit{\texttt{f}}6 or 22...\textit{\texttt{g}}6±.

23.\textit{\texttt{g}}4 \textit{\texttt{d}}5

23...\texttt{h}5 24.\textit{\texttt{f}}3±

24.\textit{\texttt{f}}3 \textit{\texttt{d}}7 25.\textit{\texttt{xb}}7 \textit{\texttt{xb}}7 26.\textit{\texttt{c}}6±

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 21

\begin{itemize}
  \item 18 points and above \rightarrow \textbf{Excellent}
  \item 14 points and above \rightarrow \textbf{Good}
  \item 11 points \rightarrow \textbf{Pass mark}
\end{itemize}

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Simple rook endings 2

We recently took a look at this subject in Chapter 5 and we shall now study some more simple rook endings (rook and pawn versus rook). It is very important to be familiar with these theoretical positions, so that when you have a complicated position you have a good idea of what sort of ending to aim for.

We shall examine two different type of ending: positions with the pawn in our own half of the board and positions with an advanced rook’s pawn.

The pawn in your own half of the board (with the opposing king cut off)
The following example illustrates some of the most important methods employed in such situations:

1) in defence: frontal attack, transition to a pawn ending, cutting off the king horizontally;
2) in attack: the ‘combined method’.

Diagram 12-1
The threat is $c3-b4$.

Let us first examine a typical defensive idea: the frontal attack.

A) 1...$\text{e}8$?

An attempt to employ the frontal attack fails in this case, because the king is badly placed on e7! If the king were on e6, the position would be drawn! This will not become clear until move 6. Despite that, the frontal attack is an effective method whenever there are at least three ranks between the pawn and the rook.

Black would do better to start with 1...$\text{e}6$ – see variation C below.

2.$\text{b}4$ $\text{b}8$†

2...$\text{d}8$ is too late, in view of 3.$\text{xd}8$ $\text{xd}8$ 4.$\text{b}5$!+-.

3.$\text{a}5$

This is the so-called ‘combined method’. The king advances as far as possible (onto the second square of the diagonal on which the pawn is placed – in this case to a6), after which the rook defends the pawn.
3...c8
   If 3...a8? then 4.b6 b8= 5.c7+.
4.b5 b8= 5.a6 c8 6.d4!

Diagram 12-2

6...e6
   Threatening ...e5. If the king were already on e6, the position after 6...e5 would be a draw.
7.b7! c5
   7...e5 is met by 8.d5=+
8.b6 c8 9.c5+
   You already know from Chapter 5 how to win such positions: after a few moves we reach the 'bridge' position.

But in the starting position (Diagram 12-1) Black actually has several ways to reach a draw.

B) 1..d8!

Diagram 12-3
   Here the simplest solution is the transition to a pawn ending. If White does not agree to the exchange of rooks, the black king gets in front of the pawn and Black can employ the Philidor defence – see Chapter 5.
2.xd8
   2.h1 d7 3.b4 g8 4.b5 g6=
2...xd8 3.d4 e8=  

C) 1..e6!

Diagram 12-4
   This move improves the position of the king for a frontal attack and is also sufficient for a draw. The optimal position for a frontal attack is rook on c8 and king on e6 or e5.
2.b4
   After 2.c5 Black has a choice of ways to draw:
   a) 2...c7! 3.c4 d8=  
b) 2..h4! (cutting off the king horizontally is an important resource for the defence) 3.c6 e7 4.c7 h8=  
2..b8= 3.a5 c8!
   The frontal attack now leads to a draw.
4.b5 b8= 5.a6 c8 6.d4 e5! 7.d5+
   7.h4 e6 8.b5 c5= 
7...e6 8.b5 b8+ 9.a4 c8 10.b4 b8+
Endgame 2

Diagram 12-5

This is also good enough for a draw, since 2.c5 can be answered by 2...d8.

The rule of 6

With a central pawn (c, d, e or f), a useful guide to the assessment of the position is given by adding the rank the pawn is on to the number of files by which the defending king is cut off. If the total is at least 6, then the position is won.

Diagram 12-6

Here the pawn is on the 4th rank and the opposing king cut off two files away; the total of 4 (ranks) + 2 (files) is 6, and White is winning.

1. b4 b8 2. a5 c8 3. b5 b8 4. a6!

White employs the 'combined method'.

4... c8 5. c1

Another route to victory is 5.e4 f5 6.h4 a8 (6...e6 7.b7 c5 8.b6 g5 9.c5+-) 7.b7 a4 8.b6 c6 9.b5 a1 (9...a8 10.c5+-) 10.h7+-.

A very effective attacking method - cutting off the king horizontally.

5... e6

Or 5...e7 6.b7 c5 7.b6 h5 (7...c8 8.c5+-) 8.c5 (8.d1+-) 8...d8 9.d1 c8 10.g1+-.

6. b7!

But not 6.c5? and now:

a) Black must avoid 6...d5? 7.b6 c6 (7...b8 8.c7+-) 8.b5 c8 9.d1+-.

b) Correct is 6...d7! 7.b7 c7 8.b6 c6 9.b5 h6= with a transition to the first Philidor defence.

6... c5 7. b6 h5

7...c8 8.c5 d7 9.c6+- (or 9.d1+-)

8. d1+-

Or 8.c5 d7 9.c6 c8 10.a1+-.

124
Knight’s pawns

Diagram 12-7

Here too, the black king is cut off two files away from the white pawn, but the combined method cannot be used with the knight pawn.

1.\textit{\textbf{c4}}

After a waiting move such as 1.\textit{\textbf{d2}} Black should also wait with 1...\textit{\textbf{e5}}!. The squares \textit{\textbf{e6}} and \textit{\textbf{e5}} are ideal for the king when we are employing the frontal attack. Then after 2.\textit{\textbf{d7}}:

a) 2...\textit{\textbf{e4}}?? is wrong, due to 3.\textit{\textbf{d6}}+ (3.\textit{\textbf{c4}} also wins). Cutting off horizontally is often more dangerous than vertically.

b) The only correct move is 2...\textit{\textbf{e6}}!= and now:

b1) 3.\textit{\textbf{c7}} \textit{\textbf{d6}} 4.\textit{\textbf{c5}} \textit{\textbf{h8}} 5.\textit{\textbf{c4}} \textit{\textbf{g8}} (but not 5...\textit{\textbf{b8}}? 6.\textit{\textbf{b5}}=) 6.\textit{\textbf{b5}} \textit{\textbf{b8}}=

b2) 3.\textit{\textbf{a7}} \textit{\textbf{d6}} 4.\textit{\textbf{a4}} \textit{\textbf{c6}} 5.\textit{\textbf{a5}} \textit{\textbf{b5}}=

1...\textit{\textbf{c8}}? 2.\textit{\textbf{b5}} \textit{\textbf{b8}}=

The frontal attack brings Black the draw.

3.\textit{\textbf{c5}} \textit{\textbf{c8}}? 4.\textit{\textbf{b6}} \textit{\textbf{b8}}=

This example shows why the rule of 6 cannot be used in situations with a knight’s pawn.

Central pawns

Diagram 12-8

\textbf{A.Cheron}

1926

Positions with a central pawn in which the defending king on the short side have some particular features.

1.\textit{\textbf{b2}}!

Black has the optimal position. To win the game, White must pass to black the obligation to move.

The combined method, on the other hand, does not suffice for a win: 1.\textit{\textbf{e4}} \textit{\textbf{e8}}? 2.\textit{\textbf{f5}} \textit{\textbf{d8}} 3.\textit{\textbf{e5}} \textit{\textbf{e8}}? 4.\textit{\textbf{f6}} \textit{\textbf{e8}}? 5.\textit{\textbf{d1}}? \textit{\textbf{b6}} 6.\textit{\textbf{e7}} \textit{\textbf{d5}} 7.\textit{\textbf{e6}} \textit{\textbf{h5}} (Black now employs a flank attack to save the game)

8.\textit{\textbf{c1}} \textit{\textbf{h6}}?=

1...\textit{\textbf{a4}} 2.\textit{\textbf{b7}}

2.\textit{\textbf{d5}}?? is premature, on account of 2...\textit{\textbf{xd5}}?

3.\textit{\textbf{c4}} \textit{\textbf{a3}}!=.

2...\textit{\textbf{a5}} 3.\textit{\textbf{b1}}

Black is in zugzwang. Any move only worsens his position.

3...\textit{\textbf{a6}}
3...\textit{Ed}7 shortens the distance between pawn and rook. There follows 4.\textit{Ec}4 \textit{Ee}7+ 5.\textit{Ec}3 \textit{Ed}7 6.\textit{Ec}5 \textit{Ee}7+ 7.\textit{Ed}6++.

3...\textit{Ea}4 is met by 4.d5! \textit{Exd}5+ 5.\textit{Ee}4++.

If 3...\textit{Eh}8 4.d5 \textit{Eh}4, then 5.d6! \textit{Ea}6 (5...\textit{Eh}6 6.\textit{Ec}4 \textit{Exd}6+ 7.\textit{Ec}5++; 5...\textit{Ea}4 6.d7 \textit{Eh}8 7.\textit{Ec}4++; 5...\textit{Eg}4 6.d7 \textit{Eg}8 7.\textit{Ec}4 \textit{Ed}8 8.\textit{Ec}5+) 6.d7 \textit{Eh}8 7.\textit{Ec}4 \textit{Ed}8 8.\textit{Ed}5 \textit{Exd}7+ 9.\textit{Ec}6!++. White keeps on exploiting the position of the black king on the edge of the board.

4.\textit{Ec}4 \textit{Ec}8+ 5.\textit{Ee}5 \textit{Ed}8 6.\textit{Ed}5 \textit{Ec}8+ 7.\textit{Ed}6! \textit{Ed}8+ 8.\textit{Ec}6!++

\textbf{Diagram 12-9}

Because of the threat of mate, Black cannot prevent the white pawn from reaching d5. White goes on to win as in the 'bridge' position.

\textbf{Positions with rook pawns}

We shall consider two situations:

1) the king is in front of the pawn;
2) the rook is in front of the pawn.

\textbf{The king is in front of the pawn}

\textbf{Diagram 12-10}

If the black king can get to c7 in time, the position is drawn.

1.\textit{Eh}2 \textit{Ed}7 2.\textit{Exh}8 \textit{Ec}7 3.\textit{Eb}8 \textit{Ee}1 4.\textit{Ee}7+ \textit{Ec}8=

White cannot force the black king away.

\textbf{Diagram 12-11}

But if the king cannot reach c7, then White is able to win.

1.\textit{Ec}2! \textit{Ec}7 2.\textit{Ec}8! \textit{Ed}6

Or 2...\textit{Ed}7 3.\textit{Eb}8 \textit{Ea}1 4.\textit{Eb}7 \textit{Ea}1+ 5.\textit{Ec}6 \textit{Ea}1+ 6.\textit{Eb}6 \textit{Ea}1+ 7.\textit{Ec}5++.

3.\textit{Eb}8

The only winning plan.

3...\textit{Ea}1 4.\textit{Eb}7 \textit{Ea}1+ 5.\textit{Ec}8

Nothing is achieved by 5.\textit{Ec}6 \textit{Ea}1+ 6.\textit{Ee}6 \textit{Ea}1+.

5...\textit{Ec}1 6.\textit{Ed}8 \textit{Eh}1 7.\textit{Ee}6+.

But not 7.\textit{Exe}8? \textit{Ee}8+ 8.\textit{Ee}7 \textit{Ee}7+.

7...\textit{Ec}5
Diagram 12-12

8. ecx6†!

A very important idea. As the following variations show, it is quite possible for White to go wrong here:

a) 8. ecx6? ecx1 9. ecx7 ecx6= 
   b) 8. ecx6? ec8† 9. ecx7 ec8† 10. ecx d8 ec8† 11. ecx e7 ec8† 12. ecx f8 (12. ecx f6? ec8†++) 12... ec8† 13. ecx e7 ecx a8= 

8... ecx6

8... ecx d5 9. ecx a6 ec8† 10. ecx c7 ec8† 11. ecx b6--

9. ecx c8!

White builds a bridge.

9... ecx h8† 10. ecx c7 ecx h7† 11. ecx b6+-

The rook is in front of the pawn

Diagram 12-13

With the pawn on the 7th rank, the position is very easy to hold. All the black king has to do is to stay on g7 or h7.

1. ecx g7!

1... ecx a2† is also sufficient, but 1... ecx a3? would lose to 2. ecx h8†! ecx a7 3. ecx h7†.

2. ecx f3 ecx a3† 3. ecx e4 ecx a4† 4. ecx d5 ecx a1 5. ecx c6 ecx c1† 6. ecx b6 ecx b1†=

It is very important to know that even if White had an additional h- or g-pawn, the evaluation of the position would remain the same - a draw. But an extra pawn on another file (e.g. an f-pawn) turns the position into a win for White.

Diagram 12-14

J. Vancura

1924

In positions with the pawn on the 6th rank, White has a plan to make progress. He can bring his king to a7 to protect it from rook checks. Then he will act according to the method of Example 6. The black king cannot move far from the g7-square, because otherwise a7 and ecx h8 would follow. The Vancura defence, which is a flank attack on the king and pawn, is Black's only option in such situations.

1. ecx b5
This threatens simply 2.\texttt{c8}. White achieves nothing with 1.a7 \texttt{a6=).

1...\texttt{f5+! 2.c6 \texttt{f6+! 3.c5 \texttt{f5+! 4.d4 \texttt{f6}!}

But not 4...\texttt{f4+! on account of 5.e5 \texttt{a4} (5...\texttt{f6? loses to 6.g8+)} 6.d5 \texttt{f7 7.c5 \texttt{a1}

8.b6 \texttt{b1+} 9.a7 \texttt{c7 10.b8 and now:

a) 10...\texttt{c1 11.b7 \texttt{b1+ 12.a8 \texttt{a1 13.a7 (or 13.b6+-)} 13...\texttt{d6 14.b7+- See Example 6.}

b) 10...\texttt{a1 11.b7 (or 11.b5+-) 11...\texttt{b1+ 12.a8 transposes to line 'a'.}

5.e5 \texttt{b6 6.d5 \texttt{f6 7.a7 \texttt{a6=}

Of course not 7...\texttt{f7?? 8.g8+!+-.

The Vancura defence can also be employed if the pawn is still on the 5th rank or further back. It is only when the pawn reaches the 7th rank that you have to place the rook behind the pawn.

The Vancura defence also works if your opponent has an additional h-pawn.

The following exercises will help you to better assimilate these important positions.
Exercises

Ex. 12-1

Ex. 12-4

Ex. 12-2

Ex. 12-5

Ex. 12-3

Ex. 12-6
Exercises
Solutions

Ex. 12-1

1...\(\text{f6}!\)

(2 points)

But not 1...\(\text{t7}?!\) 2.\(\text{c4} \text{c8}^+\) 3.\(\text{b5} \text{d8}^+\) 4.\(\text{c5} \text{c8}^+\) 5.\(\text{b6} \text{d8}^+\) 6.\(\text{e4} (6.\text{d1}??\text{c6}^+\) 6...\(\text{f6} (6...\text{a8}^+\) 7.\(\text{c7} \text{b4}^+\) 8.\(\text{c6} \text{c6}^+\) 9.\(\text{c5} \text{a4} 10.\(\text{b5} \text{a1} 11.\text{d5}^+-\)). 7.\(\text{c7} \text{d5} 8.\text{c6} \text{a5} 9.\text{d5}^+-\).

2.\(\text{c4} \text{c8}^+\) 3.\(\text{b5} \text{d8}^+\)

3...\(\text{b8}^+\) 4.\(\text{c6}^+\)

4.\(\text{c5} \text{c8}^+\) 5.\(\text{b6} \text{d8}^+\) 6.\(\text{e4}^+\)

6.\(\text{d1} \text{e}6 7.\text{c7} \text{d7}^+\)

6...\(\text{f5} 7.\text{e5}^+\) \(\text{f6}^+=\)

Frontal attack – see Example 1.

Ex. 12-2

White’s threat is \(\text{b8}^+\) followed by \(\text{b7}^+\). To hold the draw, Black just needs to get his rook off the b-file.

1...\(\text{e}2=\)

Any of 1...\(\text{e}2=\), 1...\(\text{f}2=\), 1...\(\text{g}2=\) or 1...\(\text{h}2=\) would be just as good.

But 1...\(\text{d}7??\) would lose after 2.\(\text{b8} \text{a2} 3.\(\text{h}7 \text{b}2^+\) 4.\(\text{a}6 \text{a}2^+\) 5.\(\text{b}6 \text{b}2^+\) 6.\(\text{c}5^+\) – see Example 6.

2.\(\text{c}4\)

Or 2.\(\text{b}7 \text{b}2^+\) 3.\(\text{a}6 \text{a}2^+\) 4.\(\text{b}6 \text{b}2^+=\). The white rook prevents the king from escaping via the c8-square.

2...\(\text{b}2^+=\)

(2 points)

Ex. 12-3

Chjutt – Alalin

Rostov on Don 1952

In the game White played 1.\(\text{h}8?? \text{a}7 2.\(\text{h}7^+ \text{f}6^+\) 3.\(\text{a}7^+\) stalemate.

White should have preferred:

1...\(\text{f}6!\)

Many other moves also win easily. All you have to do is spot the opponent’s traps!

1...\(\text{a}1 2.\(\text{h}8^+=\)

(2 points)

Ex. 12-4

Vancura defence!

1...\(\text{c}5!\)

(2 points)

2.\(\text{d}4 \text{g}5 3.\text{e}4 \text{c}5 4.\text{f}4 \text{e}4^+\)

5.\(\text{g}5 \text{c}5^+\) 6.\(\text{f}4 \text{c}4^+\) 7.\(\text{e}5 \text{c}5^+\) 8.\(\text{d}4 \text{g}5 9.\text{h}8 \text{f}5\)

9...\(\text{f}a6^+\) also leads to a draw, but the a-pawn makes no difference!

10.\(\text{h}6 \text{f}6^+ 11.\text{e}5 \text{c}6 12.\text{h}7 \text{h}6=\)

Ex. 12-5

A typical position.

1.\(\text{d}4 \text{f}6 2.\text{c}4 \text{e}6 3.\text{b}4 \text{a}1 4.\text{c}5^+\)

(1 point)

Ex. 12-6

A. Kochiev – V. Smyslov

Lvov 1978

In the game White played:

1.\(\text{e}2??\)

The correct move is 1.\(\text{e}4=\).

(1 point)

The safe squares for the white king during a frontal attack are \(\text{e}4\) and \(\text{e}3\). Almost all waiting moves with the rook on the first rank are not bad either (except 1.\(\text{d}1??\) or 1.\(\text{e}1??\) of course) and also get 1 point. See Example 1.

1...\(\text{b}5 2.\text{b}1^+ \text{a}4 3.\text{c}1 \text{b}4 4.\text{b}1^+ \text{a}3^+ 5.\text{c}1 \text{d}5^+ 6.\text{e}3 \text{b}2 7.\text{c}4 \text{b}3\)

0–1

Ex. 12-7

1.\(\text{h}5!\)

(2 points)

Only cutting off the king horizontally can save White here.

If 1...\(\text{h}2??\) then 1...\(\text{f}5 2.\text{e}2 \text{d}8^+\).

1...\(\text{g}6 2.\text{c}5 \text{f}3 3.\text{d}2 \text{f}2 4.\text{c}1 \text{g}5 5.\text{f}1 \text{f}8 6.\text{e}3^=\)
Solutions

Ex. 12-8

The position is drawn – see Example 3.

1. $\text{d4}!=$ (2 points)

Of course not 1. $\text{d2?}$ $\text{f5}$ 2. $\text{f1}\dagger$ $\text{g4}$

3. $\text{g1}\dagger$ $\text{f3}!+$.

1 $\ldots$ $\text{f6}$ 2 $\text{f1}\dagger$

Since Black is protecting his pawn with the rook, you have to defend actively.

2. $\text{d3?}$ would be bad: 2 $\ldots$ $\text{f5}$ 3. $\text{f1}\dagger$ $\text{g4}$

4. $\text{g1}\dagger$ $\text{f3}!+$.

2 $\ldots$ $\text{f5}$

2 $\ldots$ $\text{e6}$ 3 $\text{g1}=$

3. $\text{g1}!$

But not 3 $\text{b1?} g4!$.

3 $\ldots$ $\text{f3}$ 4. $\text{e4!} \text{a3}$

Or 4 $\ldots$ $\text{h3}$ 5 $\text{f1}\dagger$ $\text{g6}$ 6. $\text{f3}!+$.

5. $\text{f1}\dagger$

5 $\text{g2} g6$ 6. $\text{h2}!=$

5 $\ldots$ $\text{g6} 6. \text{f3}=$

6. $\text{h1}!$

6 $\ldots$ $\text{a1}$

6 $\ldots$ $\text{a2} 7. \text{f8}=$

7. $\text{e3} \text{h5} 8. \text{f2}!$

Ex. 12-9

1. $\text{a6}!$ (3 points)

Only cutting off the king horizontally wins.

If 1 $\text{d1}\dagger$ then 1 $\ldots$ $\text{e6}=$.

1 $\ldots$ $\text{d5}$ 2. $\text{a4} \text{c4}$ 3. $\text{c6}\dagger \text{d5}$ 4. $\text{b5} \text{a8}!$

5. $\text{b4} \text{b8} 6. \text{h6} \text{a8} 7. \text{b6}!$

Ex. 12-10

1 $\ldots$ $\text{f7}!$ (2 points)

Here all that is left is the transition to a pawn ending.

2. $\text{c4} \text{d8} 3. \text{xd8} \text{xd8}=$

Ex. 12-11

1. $\text{h6}! \text{f8} 2. \text{e4}!$ (1 point)

The combined method. Here 2 $\text{f1}\dagger$ $\text{e6}=$ would be wrong.

2 $\ldots$ $\text{d6} 3. \text{g7} \text{f5}$

3 $\ldots$ $\text{d5} 4. \text{e5}\dagger$

4. $\text{g6} \text{c5} 5. \text{f5}!$

Ex. 12-12

1. $\text{f6}\dagger!$ (1 point)

See Example 6.

1 $\ldots$ $\text{e5}$

Or 1 $\ldots$ $\text{g5} 2. \text{f8} \text{a8}! 3. \text{f7} \text{a7}\dagger$

4. $\text{g8}!$.

2. $\text{h6} \text{a8}\dagger 3. \text{f7} \text{a7}! 4. \text{g6} \text{a6}\dagger$

5. $\text{g5}!$
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 21

18 points and above → Excellent
14 points and above → Good
10 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 10 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Blocking combinations

The idea behind blocking combinations is to decoy one or more of the opposing pieces onto unfavourable squares, where they block the way for their own king (or sometimes also a pawn or another piece).

We have already seen this important tactical motif in earlier books in this series. Smothered mate (Chapter 23 of Build Up Your Chess 1) is, for example, also a blocking combination.

Frequently, a blocking combination also makes use of the motif of decoying. So in Chapter 21 of Build Up Your Chess 2 we in fact saw some blocking combinations, e.g. the study by Stamma and the games N.N. – Pillsbury and Karlson – Kopylov. So a strict separation between blocking and decoying combinations seems to me to be neither practical nor even possible.

A blocked escape route
In the following typical examples, the king’s escape is prevented by its own pieces.

1...\texttt{We2} 
Black attacks the f2-pawn and thus forces his opponent to block the f1-square.
2.\texttt{Wf1} 
Or 2.h3 \texttt{xf2}+ 3.\texttt{h2} \texttt{g2}+ 4.\texttt{xg3} \texttt{g6}+ 5.\texttt{f4} (5.\texttt{h4} \texttt{f2}+ 6.\texttt{h5} \texttt{g5}+! 7.\texttt{xg5} g6+ 8.\texttt{hxh6} \texttt{h4#}) 5...\texttt{bb6}+-.
2...\texttt{xf3}!+ 
Black wins at least a piece.
3.gxf3 
White prefers a quick death.
3...\texttt{g6#}
Diagram 13-2
Variation from the game

**R.Spielmann – G.Lisitsin**
Moscow 1935

1. \( \text{d}f5 +! \text{g}8 \\
1... \text{gx}f5 2. \text{g}g5# \\
2. \text{h}h6 \text{h}5 3. \text{g}g7 +!

The knight is forced to block the king's escape route.

3... \( \text{d}xg7 4. \text{h}h6# \\

Diagram 13-3

**J.Blackburne – N.N.**
Simultaneous game 1912

Two black men are decoyed to the b4- and b6-squares, blocking in the king.

1. b4 +! \( dxb4 2. \text{b}b6 +! \text{axb6} 3. \text{xa}8 #

Diagram 13-4

**R.Schlappa – M.Reichelt**
West Germany 1967

1... f5 +!

A typical idea. The escape route via f5 is shut off.

2. exf5 \( \text{g}2 + 3. \text{g}g3 \text{e}4 +

0–1
Diagram 13-5

Springer – Ebersbach
Berlin 1958

1.f7†!
A typical combination, to block the f7-square. The immediate 1.№h8† is met by 1...№f7.
1...№xf7
1...№xf7 2.№h8#
2.№h8#

A blocked pawn
Often the idea of blocking forms part of a combination involving promotion.

Diagram 13-6

W.Pavett
1862

1.№f4†!
But not 1.h7? d3= nor 1.№c3†?? №xc3 2.№c2 №c4 3.h7 d3†=–.
1...№e4 2.№d3! №xd3 3.h7+–
The king blocks its own pawn, which in turn closes the long diagonal.

Fischer’s mate
The following combination is also typical and very instructive.

Diagram 13-7

R.Fischer – P.Benko
USA Ch, New York 1963

1.№xd4! exd4 2.№f6!!
This move blocks the f-pawn and prepares the deadly attack on the h7-pawn.
If 2.e5, then 2...f5†=–.
2...№g8
2...№xf6 is met by 3.e5––.
3.e5 h6 4.№e2+–
Black resigned, in view of 4...№xf6 (after 4...№b5 comes 5.№f5––) 5.№xh6 followed by mate on h7.
And to finish, two more beautiful examples of blocking combinations.

**Diagram 13-8**

The end of a study by

A. Kazantsev

1953

Two black pieces are decoyed onto unfavourable squares.

1. a8

2. b6

3. b5

3 ... c6

4. d8

3 ... c6

4. b7

5. h7+

4 a6

5 b6#

**Diagram 13-9**

Variation from the game

D. Kontic - M. Vukic

Niksic 1992

1. g5!!

Preparing the move g2-g3.

1 ... h5

Forced, but here the rook will shut in its own king.

1 ... h5 is followed by 2. xe2 xg5 3. e3 xg4

4. xg5#.

2. g3

2 ... e4 3. e3#

2 ... xg3 3. xg3 xg4 4. e3#

3. f3 h3 4. g4 h3

4 ... h2 5. g2#

5. g3#
Exercises
Solutions

Ex. 13-1

O. Rodriguez Vargas – E. Olafsson
Las Palmas 1978

1...\textbf{W}g2\textdagger!!

White resigned, since 2.\textbf{W}xg2 \textbf{B}f3\textdagger 3.\textbf{B}h1
\textbf{W}d1\textdagger leads to mate.

Ex. 13-2

P. Stamma
1737

1.\textbf{c}8\textbf{W}t!

1.\textbf{c}8\textbf{W}t! also wins.

But not 1.\textbf{b}b8? which allows the c-pawn to be blocked: 1...\textbf{c}8!
2.\textbf{W}xc8 (2.\textbf{b}7 \textbf{a}2++)
2...\textbf{a}2++
1...\textbf{W}xc8 2.\textbf{W}c7\textdagger \textbf{W}xc7 3.\textbf{b}xc7 \textbf{a}2 4.\textbf{c}8\textbf{W}t++ (another 1 point)

Ex. 13-3

G. Stoltz – H. Pilnik
Saltsjobaden 1952

1...\textbf{h}3\textdagger 2.\textbf{f}4 \textbf{f}3\textdagger!! 3.\textbf{W}xf3 \textbf{W}e5#

Ex. 13-4

P. De Rooi – H. Kramer
Beverwijk 1962

1...g5\textdagger! 2.\textbf{W}xh5 \textbf{e}2\textdagger 3.g4

Or 3.\textbf{W}f3 \textbf{W}xf3\textdagger 4.g4 \textbf{W}xh3#.

3...\textbf{e}8# (2 points)

Ex. 13-5

Efimov – Kim
Krasnoyarsk 1982

1...\textbf{a}1\textdagger! 2.\textbf{g}2

Now the king blocks the diagonal retreat for the queen.

2...\textbf{h}6 3.\textbf{a}d7\textdagger \textbf{g}6

0–1 (2 points)

Ex. 13-6

Poliansky – Gerchikov
Archangelsk 1949

1.\textbf{h}7\textdagger \textbf{f}8 2.e7!

A typical idea, as seen in Diagram 13-5.

2...\textbf{W}xe7 3.\textbf{W}h8#

(1 point)

Ex. 13-7

J. Dorfman – O. Romanishin
Cienfuegos 1977

1...\textbf{x}f3\textdagger!

(1 point)

White resigned, in view of 2.\textbf{x}f3 \textbf{e}5 – Fischer’s mate.

Ex. 13-8

Goldstein – Tomilin
USSR 1965

1.\textbf{f}6\textdagger! \textbf{xf}6 2.\textbf{d}3

Fischer’s mate. Black resigned, on account of 2...\textbf{e}8 3.\textbf{h}7\textdagger \textbf{h}8 4.\textbf{g}6\textdagger \textbf{g}8 5.\textbf{h}7\textdagger
\textbf{f}8 6.\textbf{xf}7#.

(1 point)

Ex. 13-9

E. Epstein – Z. Veroci Petronic
Lipetsk 1968

The game finished 1...\textbf{h}5\textdagger! 2.\textbf{g}1 \textbf{xf}4
3.\textbf{xf}4 \textbf{g}4\textdagger 4.\textbf{f}2 \textbf{xf}4\textdagger 5.\textbf{e}2 \textbf{xe}5\textdagger
6.\textbf{d}3 \textbf{e}4\textdagger 6.\textbf{d}4 \textbf{a}f3\textdagger 0–1.
But Black had a much quicker route to victory:

1...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{f2}}\texttt{t}} \)!!

(1 point)

This blocks the \( f2 \)-square, allowing the \( d5-h1 \) diagonal to be used for a rapid mating attack.

2.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{xf2}}} \)

Or 2.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{xf2}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{h5t}}} \) 3.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{g1}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{h1}}} \#.

2.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{g1}}} \) is met by 2...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{g2t}}} \) 3.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h1}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{h3}}} \#.

2...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h5t}}} \) 3.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{g1}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{h1}}} \#

**Ex. 13-11**

\textbf{E. Bogoljubow – M. Monticelli}

San Remo 1930

1...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{de2t}}} \)!!

(1 point)

Black forces mate.

2.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{xe2}}} \)

2.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h2}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{g2}}} \#

2...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{f1}}} \)!

3.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{xf1}}} \)

3.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h2}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{h1}}} \#

3...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h1}}} \)!

4.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{f2}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{g4}}} \#

(another 1 point)

**Ex. 13-12**

\textbf{A. Pytlakowski – J. Szukszta}

Katowice 1952

1.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{wh4t}}} \)!

(2 points)

Only 1 point for the less effective 1...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{g7t}}} \)

\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h5}}} \) 2.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h8}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{g5}}} \) 3.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{f5}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{d6t}}} \) 4.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{h1+}}} \).

1...\( \text{\textbf{\textit{hx4}}} \) 2.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{g7t}}} \) \( \text{\textbf{\textit{h5}}} \) 3.\( \text{\textbf{\textit{g4}}} \##

**Scoring**

Maximum number of points is 18

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16 points and above</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 points and above</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 points</td>
<td>Pass mark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
The bishop pair

In most cases two bishops are stronger than two knights and very often stronger than a bishop and a knight. Why is that so, and what is the correct way to evaluate positions with the bishop pair?

In order to better understand this, we must first of all explain the difference in the ways the bishop and the knight are employed. In contrast to the long-legged bishop which can be effective at a distance, the short-range piece that is the knight must be close to the opposing forces in order to be active. The only way to do so, if it does not want to be driven off quickly, is to find protected squares close to the opposing position. — Reti ‘Masters of the Chessboard’

We looked at these differences in Chapter 6 of Build Up Your Chess 2 – ‘Good and bad bishops’. The potential activity of the knight is often the most important element in the evaluation of such positions.

The bishop pair is better:
1) in open positions;
2) in semi-open positions, if the knight does not have good and secure squares protected by its own pawns.

Diagram 14-1

S.Flohr – M.Botvinnik
Moscow/Leningrad(6) 1933

White is better, since here the knights are passively placed and do not have secure squares for the future.
1.\#f2+ \#e7 2.\#e3 \#d8 3.\#e1 \#c7 4.\#d2 \#c5 5.b4
The immediate 5.\#d1 would be more prudent.
5...\#cd7

Diagram 14-2

Black should try everything he can to close the position on the queenside. So 5...\#a4?? followed by ...b5 was worth considering, although Black still has problems. With 6.\#d1! b5 7.\#xa4 bx\#4 8.\#c3 \#e8 9.\#c4 (9.b5 would be somewhat more complicated
The bishop pair

after 9...axb5 10.\f6 11.exf5 \f6 12.xb5 \xd5 13.d2±) 9...\b7 10.b5+- White wins a pawn on the queenside. This advantage should suffice for victory.

6.g3?! 6.a4 would be more accurate.

6...\b6 7.c2 \bd7??

Here Black could have plugged the gap on the queenside by 7...\a4! 8.b3 \b5\pm, with clearly better chances for a draw than he obtained in the game.

Diagram 14-3

8.a4± \b6 9.a5 \bd7

Black has no counterplay and simply has to wait. Flohr, on the other hand, prepares to open the game on the kingside.

10.c1 \d8 11.b2 \e8 12.d2 \c7 13.e3

Almost everything is ready for f3-f4.

13...\c7 14.f1!

Flohr first brings his bishop onto the more active post on h3. From there the bishop can exert unpleasant pressure on the d7-knight.

14...\b5 15.h4 \c7 16.h3 \e8

Diagram 14-4

The knight on d7 is effectively pinned. 16...\f8?? is met by 17.c8+-.

17.f4!

Now comes the attack on the kingside. Flohr cleverly provokes weaknesses there.

17...\f6 18.f5! g6

18...h6 is followed by 19.f3, intending \g4-h5-g6.

19.h3

The threat is f5 followed by fxg6, g4 and h5.

19...h6

With the hope of being able to close the kingside with 20.f5 g5. But now the h6-pawn becomes weak.

Diagram 14-5

20.c1!

Taking aim at the h6 weakness.

21...\g7?!

21...\c7 would be slightly better.

22.fxe5! dxe5

Black is forced to break the symmetry of the pawn structure. Here, as in most cases, it is to the advantage of the bishop pair.
22...\texttt{Qxe5} is bad, due to 23.\texttt{c8+-}.

The variation 22...\texttt{fxe5} 23.\texttt{Qf3} \texttt{h5} 24.\texttt{Qg5}+ \texttt{e8} 25.\texttt{Qh6}+- underlines the unfortunate position of the knight on g7.

23.\texttt{Qf3}

But not 23.\texttt{Qd3}? unnecessarily allowing Black counterplay with 23...\texttt{Qh5}!.

23...\texttt{h5}

23...\texttt{g5} is met by 24.\texttt{hxg5} \texttt{hxg5} 25.\texttt{Qe3}, when White's plan is \texttt{Qg4} followed by \texttt{Qf1-c4-b3-a4}.

24.\texttt{Qe3} \texttt{Qd6} 25.\texttt{Qh6} \texttt{Qe8} 26.\texttt{g4}

Opening the game on the kingside even more.

26...\texttt{hxg4}+ 27.\texttt{Qxg4} \texttt{Qc7} 28.\texttt{Qe3} \texttt{Qb5}

Diagram 14-6

29.\texttt{Qe2}!

Preventing the activation of the knight.

29...\texttt{Qc7}

29...\texttt{Qc3}+ is followed by 30.\texttt{Qd3} \texttt{Qxe4} 31.\texttt{Qxd7}+-.

Black could get some practical defensive chances here with the active move 29...\texttt{f5}?! After 30.\texttt{exf5} \texttt{Qf6} 31.\texttt{Qh3} \texttt{gxh3} 32.\texttt{Qxf5} \texttt{Qxd5}+ (32...\texttt{Qd4}+? 33.\texttt{Qc4} \texttt{exd4} 34.\texttt{Qf3} \texttt{Qxd5} 35.\texttt{Qe6} \texttt{Qc6} 36.\texttt{Qxe4}+-) 33.\texttt{Qxe6} \texttt{Qc4} 34.\texttt{Qg5} there comes 34...\texttt{Qc3} and then ...\texttt{Qd5}.

However, White has a stronger continuation: 31.\texttt{hxg6}! (instead of 31.\texttt{Qh3}) 31...\texttt{Qg4} 32.\texttt{Qg7} \texttt{Qf6} 33.\texttt{h5} \texttt{Qc7} (or 33...\texttt{Qc3} 34.\texttt{Qd3} \texttt{Qxd5} 35.\texttt{h6} \texttt{e4}+ 36.\texttt{Qe2} \texttt{Qxe3} 37.\texttt{h7}+--) 34.\texttt{Qg5}+-

In the game, Botvinnik delays and plays ...\texttt{f5} at a slightly less favourable point. But passive defence would be hopeless.

30.\texttt{Qd3} \texttt{f5}?!?

Black is practically in zugzwang already. 30...\texttt{Qb5} is met by 31.\texttt{Qe6} and then \texttt{Qf7}. And if 30...\texttt{Qe7}, then 31.\texttt{Qc5}.

31.\texttt{exf5} \texttt{gxh5}

31...\texttt{Qf6}?! is followed by 32.\texttt{Qh3} \texttt{gxh5} 33.\texttt{Qc5}±.

32.\texttt{Qxf5} \texttt{Qxd5} 33.\texttt{Qd2}

White has achieved his aim. The position has become more open and, in addition, on the kingside White has a strong passed pawn.

33...\texttt{Qf6} 34.\texttt{Qc4} \texttt{Qc6} 35.\texttt{Qg6} \texttt{b5}+

Also worth considering was 35...\texttt{b6}±, in order to exchange more pawns.
The bishop pair

Diagram 14-7

36.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}3!}

The pawns a6 and b5 are weak. Of course White does not want to exchange them.

36...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{e}7}

36...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}6} would be more resilient: 37.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{f}5} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{e}7}
38.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{h}3+}
37.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{e}4}!

This is even stronger than 37.h5 or 37.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{f}7}.

37...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{ed}5}

If 37...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}6}, then 38.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{b}7+}. Or 37...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{c}7}
38.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{g}5+--}

38.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{g}5} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{h}5}

If 38...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}6}, then 39.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{xf}6} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{xf}6} 40.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{b}7} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}5}
41.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{xd}5} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{xd}5} 42.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{h}5+--}
38...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{xe}4} 39.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{xe}4} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}6} loses to 40.h5.

39.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{f}3} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{g}3}

Diagram 14-8

40.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}2!}

This is simpler than 41.h5 \texttt{\textcolor{red}{xh}5} 42.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{xh}5} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{xb}4}.

40...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}6} 41.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{g}4}!

But not 41.h5? on account of 41...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{e}4}!.

41...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{f}6} 42.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{c}8+}-- \texttt{\textcolor{red}{c}6} 43.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{e}1} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{e}4}+ 44.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}4} \texttt{\textcolor{red}{gh}5}
45.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{f}5}
45.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{xa}6+--} would also be good.

45...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}6} 46.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{d}2}

Black resigned. He is losing the e4-pawn and has no prospects of a draw.

In closed positions and in situations where the side with the knight controls some strong points, the knight can be more valuable than the bishop.

Diagram 14-9

O.Renet - A.Yusupov
Dubai Olympiad 1986

The position is closed. Neither bishop can find anything to do here, as all the diagonals are blocked.

1...\texttt{\textcolor{red}{g}5}

Black is playing for a win and prepares an attack on the kingside.

2.\texttt{\textcolor{red}{f}d2}?

The exchange of queens leads to a practically lost ending. White should keep the queens and try
to open the position. So 2...c2, with the idea of continuing \(g_4\), would have been better.

2...\(\text{fxd}_2\) 3.\(\text{exd}_2\) \(\text{h}_6\)

Provoking a pawn move, which will restrict the light-squared bishop even more.

4.\(e_3?!\) \(e_8\)

4...f4+ would have been even better. But Black waits a little longer, trying to improve his position and looking for a decision only after the time control.

5.\(e_1\)

5.\(f_3?!\) was necessary, in order to open up the position.

5...\(h_5\)

Now White can no longer play \(f_3\).

6.\(c_3\) \(g_7\) 7.\(b_2\) \(g_8\) 8.\(d_2\) \(e_7\) 9.\(c_3\) \(f_3\)

10.\(f_1\)

These passive tactics lead to the loss of the game. Better was 10.\(\text{xf}_3\) \(\text{ex}_3\) 11.\(e_4\) \(\text{fx}_4\) 12.\(e_3\) \(f_5+\) 13.\(e_4\) \(xg_3+\).

10...\(g_6\) 11.\(b_2\) \(h_5\) 12.\(c_3\) \(c_6\) 13.\(b_2\) \(e_7\)

14.\(c_3\) \(f_4+\)

Having reached the time control, Black executed the pawn break and went on to win the game. You can find the remaining moves in Chapter 6 (Ex. 6-2) of Build Up Your Chess 2.

The side with the bishops profits not only from the advantage of the bishop compared to the knight, but also from the superior cooperation of the two bishops, which complement each other and, in contrast to a single bishop, can control squares of both colours.

The most important methods of play with the bishop pair

1) Playing against a knight

Diagram 14-10

S.Rosenthal - W.Steinitz
Vienna 1873

The position is open and the black pawn structure is very sound. For that reason, the side with the bishop pair has a clear advantage here. The white knight does
have a good post on d4, but it won't be able to stay there for long. The threat is already 1...\textdaggerdbl}xd4.

1.\textdaggerdbl}f2

'The method created by Steinitz for the exploitation of the advantage of the two bishops ... now consists of advancing the black pawns in such a way as to deprive the knight of all possible support points. By doing so, he condemns it to passivity and renders it almost completely worthless.' — Reti

1...c5! 2.\textdaggerdbl}f3 b6 3.\textdaggerdbl}e5 \textdaggerdbl}e6 4.\textdaggerdbl}f3 \textdaggerdbl}a6 5.\textdaggerdbl}fe1

Diagram 14-11

5...f6!

The continuation of the strategy. Black can only permit himself such moves because he can control the light squares with his queen's bishop. Black shuts in his own bishop on g7, but in return both white minor pieces become badly placed.

5...\textdaggerdbl}xe5? would be wrong; after 6.fxe5 the weakness of the dark squares provides White with counterplay.

6.\textdaggerdbl}g4 h5! 7.\textdaggerdbl}f2 \textdaggerdbl}f7

Preparing ...\textdaggerdbl}b7.

8.f5!!

White unnecessarily weakens his f-pawn. The correct course was 8.b3 \textdaggerdbl}b7 9.\textdaggerdbl}g3+ and White can at least continue to offer some resistance.

8...g5 9.\textdaggerdbl}d1

9.\textdaggerdbl}e4 is followed by 9...\textdaggerdbl}b7 10.\textdaggerdbl}f2 \textdaggerdbl}d2+ and White cannot do much against the pinning of the knight by the strong light-squared bishop.

But 9.h4 would have been more stubborn: 9...g4 10.\textdaggerdbl}f4+

9...\textdaggerdbl}b7 10.\textdaggerdbl}g3 \textdaggerdbl}d5

Now the f5-pawn is under attack.

11.\textdaggerdbl}xd5 \textdaggerdbl}xd5 12.\textdaggerdbl}d1

12.\textdaggerdbl}h3 is met by 12...g4+.

12...\textdaggerdbl}xf5+ 13.\textdaggerdbl}c7 \textdaggerdbl}d5 14.b3 \textdaggerdbl}e8 15.c4 \textdaggerdbl}f7

The two bishops protect their king, whilst the major pieces carry on with the attack. 15...\textdaggerdbl}xg2 16.\textdaggerdbl}d7 \textdaggerdbl}f8+ is also good.

16.\textdaggerdbl}c1 \textdaggerdbl}e2++

White loses another pawn.

17.\textdaggerdbl}f1 \textdaggerdbl}c2

Threatening ...\textdaggerdbl}xf2.

18.\textdaggerdbl}g3 \textdaggerdbl}xa2 19.\textdaggerdbl}b8+ \textdaggerdbl}h7 20.\textdaggerdbl}g3 \textdaggerdbl}g6 21.h4 \textdaggerdbl}g4 22.\textdaggerdbl}d3
Strategy 2

At last the knight spots a chance to get onto the good f4-square, but Black simply pins it!
22...\(\text{\textit{W}}\)xb3 23.\(\text{\textit{W}}\)c7 \(\text{\textit{W}}\)xd3
0–1

2) Exchanging a bishop at a favourable moment

The advantage of having the two bishops sometimes consists of being able to choose the correct moment to exchange one of them! Here Rubinstein exchanges his strong e3-bishop for the more passive bishop on c2, since he saw that after the capture of the a4-pawn the ending would be a very easy win!
1...\(\text{\textit{B}}\)c3! 2.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)xe3 \(d\)4†!
An important intermediate check.
3.\(\text{\textit{D}}\)e2
Or 3.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)e4 \(\text{\textit{B}}\)c6†→.
3...\(\text{\textit{D}}\)xc2++
The a4-pawn is lost.
4.\(\text{\textit{F}}\)f4 \(\text{\textit{D}}\)xa4 5.\(\text{\textit{F}}\)e6 \(\text{\textit{D}}\)b3 6.\(\text{\textit{D}}\)xd4† \(\text{\textit{B}}\)b2 7.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)b5 \(a\)4
8.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)e3 \(a\)3 9.\(\text{\textit{D}}\)xa3 \(\text{\textit{D}}\)xa3 10.\(\text{\textit{D}}\)d4 \(\text{\textit{B}}\)b4
0–1

3) Opening the position

Alekhine finds a tactical solution and opens up the position.
1.\(\text{\textit{H}}\)h6!
If 1.a4 is played immediately, then 1...\(\text{\textit{B}}\)xa4 2.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)b8 \(\text{\textit{B}}\)h7±.
1...\(\text{\textit{D}}\)xh6
1...\(\text{\textit{D}}\)xh6 is followed by 2.a4! \(\text{\textit{B}}\)a7 (2...\(\text{\textit{B}}\)xa4 3.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)b8++) 3.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)xb5 \(\text{\textit{D}}\)xb5 4.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)a1 \(\text{\textit{B}}\)b7 5.\(c\)4±.
2.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)e5 \(\text{\textit{D}}\)g7 3.\(a\)4 \(\text{\textit{B}}\)xa4 4.\(c\)4! \(\text{\textit{B}}\)e7
4...\(\text{\textit{D}}\)xc4? loses to 5.\(\text{\textit{D}}\)xf6†.
5.cxd5 \(\text{\textit{D}}\)exd5 6.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)h1 \(\text{\textit{B}}\)c8 7.\(\text{\textit{B}}\)h7† \(\text{\textit{B}}\)h7 8.\(\text{\textit{D}}\)a3
The black position collapses.

8...\( \text{\texttt{\texttt{5}g8}} \)

Or 8..\( \text{\texttt{5}c3} \) 9.\( \text{\texttt{5}f8+} \).

9.e4+- \( \text{\texttt{xg}}1 \dagger \) 10.\( \text{\texttt{5}xg}}1 \) \( \text{\texttt{5}b5} \) 11.exd5 \( \text{\texttt{5}b1} \dagger \)
12.\( \text{\texttt{5}g2} \) \( \text{\texttt{5}g6} \dagger \) 13.\( \text{\texttt{5}g3} \) \( \text{\texttt{5}xd5} \) 14.\( \text{\texttt{5}xd5} \) exd5
15.\( \text{\texttt{5}xa4} \) h5 16.h4
1–0

If you have to defend against the bishop pair, try:

1) to keep the game as closed as possible;
2) to exchange off one of the bishops;
3) to obtain secure squares for the knight.
Exercises

Ex. 14-1

Ex. 14-2

Ex. 14-3

Ex. 14-4

Ex. 14-5

Ex. 14-6
### Solutions

#### Ex. 14-1

**J. Klavins – V. Ragozin**  
USSR Ch semifinal, Riga 1952

1...\( \text{c}4! \)  

(1 point)

Intending ...\( \text{Of}4 \), shutting in both white bishops. The immediate 1...\( \text{Of}4 \) is not so good, in view of 2.\( \text{Of}1 \) and White threatens to free his dark-squared bishop with 3.\( \text{Ed}2 \).

2.\( \text{Ed}1 \text{Of}4 \)

The black king now marches to h3.

3.\( \text{Ec}2 \text{f}6 \) 4.\( \text{Ef}1 \text{f}7 \) 5.\( \text{Ed}1 \) \( \text{Ag}6 \) 6.\( \text{Ec}2 \) \( \text{Gg}5 \)

7.\( \text{Eb}1 \) \( \text{Ah}4 \) 8.\( \text{Ec}2 \) h3+ 9.\( \text{Gg}1 \) h6 10.\( \text{Ab}1 \) h5 11.\( \text{Ec}2 \text{d}3 \) 12.\( \text{Ef}1 \) \( \text{Xh}2 \) 13.\( \text{Ee}2 \) \( \text{Gg}2 \)

14.\( \text{Xxd}3 \text{cxd}3\+)

0-1

#### Ex. 14-2

**B. Englisch – W. Steinitz**  
London 1883

1...\( \text{b}6! \)  

(1 point)

A typical move to restrict the opposing minor pieces.

2.\( \text{h}3 \) \( \text{Ee}6 \) 3.\( \text{Ed}f1 \) c5 4.\( \text{Ef}5 \) \( \text{f}6! \) 5.\( \text{Ef}4 \) \( \text{Ef}7! \)

6.f3 \( \text{Gg}5 \) 7.\( \text{Exd}8 \)

7.\( \text{Ec}3?? \) is bad, due to 7...\( \text{Xxd}1\+) 8.\( \text{Xxd}1 \) \( \text{Xxb}3\+ \).  

7...\( \text{Xxd}8 \) 8.\( \text{Ec}3 \) h6! 9.\( \text{Ee}1 \) \( \text{f}5 \) 10.f4 \( \text{Ee}6 \)

11.g3\+

See Ex. 14-3.

#### Ex. 14-3

**B. Englisch – W. Steinitz**  
London 1883

1...a5!  

(2 points)

Black forces the knight further back.

2.\( \text{Ec}1 \) a4

Intending ...a3.

3.a3 \( \text{Ec}4 \) 4.\( \text{Ee}2\+)

See Ex. 14-4.

#### Ex. 14-4

**B. Englisch – W. Steinitz**  
London 1883

1...\( \text{gxf}4! \)  

(2 points)

2 points also for 1...\( \text{Ed}5 \), intending ...\( \text{b}5\text{-b}4 \) and the opening of the game on the queenside. Steinitz's plan is even stronger. He exchanges the dark-squared bishops in order to obtain the d2-square for his rook.

2.\( \text{xf}4 \) \( \text{Gg}5! \)

(another 1 point)

3.\( \text{Xxg}5 \)

3.\( \text{Ec}3 \) is followed by 3...\( \text{f}6 \) 4.\( \text{h}4 \) \( \text{xf}4\+) 5.\( \text{xf}4 \) (5.\( \text{xf}4 \) \( \text{Ed}2\+) 5...\( \text{Gg}6 \) 6.\( \text{Ed}3 \) \( \text{h}5 \)

(L.Abramov) 7.\( \text{Gg}5 \) \( \text{Ed}1 \) 8.\( \text{Ed}2 \) \( \text{Ed}3\+) 9.\( \text{h}2 \)

\( \text{Ed}2\+ \).  

If 3.\( \text{Ee}2 \), then 3...\( \text{xf}4 \) 4.\( \text{xf}4 \) \( \text{Ed}2\+) 5.\( \text{Ec}3 \)

\( \text{Exb}2\+) .

3...\( \text{hxg}5 \) 4.\( \text{Ec}3 \) \( \text{f}6 \) 5.\( \text{h}4 \)

5.\( \text{Ee}1 \) is met with 5...\( \text{Gg}5 \) followed by ...\( \text{f}4\+ \).

Now Steinitz forces the transition to a winning pawn ending.

5...\( \text{gxf}4 \) 6.\( \text{gxf}4 \) \( \text{Ee}8\+) 7.\( \text{Gg}2 \) \( \text{Exe}1 \) 8.\( \text{Exe}1 \) \( \text{Gg}5 \) 9.\( \text{Ed}2 \) \( \text{Exe}2 \) 10.\( \text{Exe}2 \) \( \text{Gf}4 \) 11.\( \text{Cc}4 \) \( \text{Gg}4 \)

12.\( \text{Ed}3 \) \( \text{f}4\+)

Just not 12...\( \text{Xh}4?? \) 13.\( \text{g}4\-) .

13.\( \text{Ef}4 \) \( \text{f}3 \) 14.\( \text{Ef}3 \) \( \text{Gg}3 \)

0-1

#### Ex. 14-5

**S. Tarrasch – A. Rubinstein**  
San Sebastian 1912

1...\( f6! \)  

(2 points)

Black forces the white knight back.

1...\( \text{Ec}3 \) (1 consolation point) would not be so strong, on account of 2.\( \text{g}3 \).

2.\( \text{Gg}4 \)

If 2.\( \text{Ed}7 \), then 2...\( \text{Ed}6 \).

Nor would 2.\( \text{Ef}3 \) \( \text{Ec}3 \) 3.\( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{Ed}6 \) 4.\( \text{f}5 \) \( \text{Ee}8\+) be much better.
Solutions

2...h5! 3.\textasteriskcentered f2 \textasteriskcentered e3 4.\textasteriskcentered d1?! h4 5.g3 a5?! 5...c5 6.a3 f3 gives White counterplay.
6.\textasteriskcentered b5! 7.\textasteriskcentered g2 bxc5 8.bxc5 \textasteriskcentered a6 9.c4! \textasteriskcentered ad8
Of course not 9...dxc4? 10.a3xc6.
10.cx\textasteriskcentered d5 \textasteriskcentered xe5
Aiming to continue with ...\textasteriskcentered c7-c2.
12.\textasteriskcentered g4 hxg3 13.hxg3 \textasteriskcentered d4 14.\textasteriskcentered acl \textasteriskcentered b7
15.\textasteriskcentered e2 \textasteriskcentered f7?! 16.\textasteriskcentered f2 \textasteriskcentered b2!
Black wants to exchange rooks. 16...a4 followed by 17...a3 would also be very strong.
17.\textasteriskcentered xb2 \textasteriskcentered xb2 18.\textasteriskcentered d2
18.f5! would be more resilient, aiming to activate the knight quickly via h3-f4.
18...\textasteriskcentered d4 19.\textasteriskcentered h3
Better is 19.\textasteriskcentered c2.
19...\textasteriskcentered e6! 20.\textasteriskcentered e2 \textasteriskcentered d6+!
But not 20...\textasteriskcentered xd3?? 21.\textasteriskcentered a4d2.
21.f5 \textasteriskcentered e8! 22.\textasteriskcentered d1 \textasteriskcentered xc2† 23.\textasteriskcentered xc2 \textasteriskcentered c5
24.\textasteriskcentered g4 \textasteriskcentered d4† 25.\textasteriskcentered f3 \textasteriskcentered d6 26.\textasteriskcentered b3 \textasteriskcentered b7
Black could win even more quickly with 26...\textasteriskcentered xd3 27.\textasteriskcentered xd5 \textasteriskcentered f5 28.\textasteriskcentered f2 \textasteriskcentered xf2 29.\textasteriskcentered xf2
\textasteriskcentered xd5 30.\textasteriskcentered e4f1 31.\textasteriskcentered e5f2 \textasteriskcentered c3++.
27.\textasteriskcentered e2 \textasteriskcentered a6 28.\textasteriskcentered a2 \textasteriskcentered b5 29.a4
Or 29.\textasteriskcentered b1 \textasteriskcentered a4 30.\textasteriskcentered f2 \textasteriskcentered xf2 31.\textasteriskcentered xf2
\textasteriskcentered c3++.
29...\textasteriskcentered d7 30.\textasteriskcentered d3!
If 30.\textasteriskcentered b3, then 30...g6!++.
See Diagram 14-13.

Ex. 14-6

\textbf{R.Fischer – M.Taimanov}
Candidates Match(2), Vancouver 1971

1.b4!
(3 points)
An important idea – White deprives the knight of some squares. 1.\textasteriskcentered a6 (2 points)
would not be bad either, although Black can struggle on with 1...\textasteriskcentered b8. Fischer wants an
even more active post for his bishop, namely on d5.
1...a5
After 1...\textasteriskcentered c3? White had prepared 2.\textasteriskcentered e7† \textasteriskcentered b8 3.\textasteriskcentered d5++.}

Ex. 14-7

\textbf{G.Marco – C.Schlechter}
Monte Carlo 1904

1...\textasteriskcentered g4!
(1 point)
After this the black bishops will be able to attack the white position without let or hindrance.
2.\textasteriskcentered d5 \textasteriskcentered e3 3.\textasteriskcentered xe3 \textasteriskcentered h6 4.\textasteriskcentered d2 \textasteriskcentered g4
5.\textasteriskcentered ee1
Or 5.\textasteriskcentered eg2 \textasteriskcentered f3 6.\textasteriskcentered f2 \textasteriskcentered e3++.
6...\textasteriskcentered f2 7.\textasteriskcentered gf1 \textasteriskcentered e2 8.\textasteriskcentered g3 \textasteriskcentered f3
0-1

Ex. 14-8

\textbf{A.Alekhine – R.Fine}
Hastings 1936

1.\textasteriskcentered a2!++
(2 points)
White attacks the f7-pawn. For the positional solution 1.\textasteriskcentered d5 you get 1 point.
1...\textasteriskcentered xe4
If 1...\textasteriskcentered e6, then 2.\textasteriskcentered xe6++. 1...d5 is met by 2.\textasteriskcentered xd5 \textasteriskcentered d6 3.\textasteriskcentered a1++. The move in the game also loses quickly.
2.\textasteriskcentered xf7 \textasteriskcentered xf7 3.\textasteriskcentered f7† \textasteriskcentered xf7 4.\textasteriskcentered e6
1-0

Ex. 14-9

\textbf{M.Botvinnik – S.Furman}
Moscow 1961

1.\textasteriskcentered xd6!
(1 point)
Otherwise Black's knight could prevent the penetration by the white king.
1...\textasteriskcentered xd6 2.\textasteriskcentered g5 \textasteriskcentered e6 3.h3
Solutions

Or first 3.\textit{h}6.

3...\textit{f}6 4.\textit{h}6

(another 1 point)

4...\textit{h}5 5.\textit{b}3!

5.\textit{x}x\textit{h}7 \textit{g}4! 6.exf4? would lose to 6...e3.

6...\textit{g}3 7.\textit{x}x\textit{h}7 \textit{f}5?

This loses without putting up any resistance.

7...\textit{f}1 is more stubborn, although after
8.\textit{x}xg6 \textit{xe}3 9.g4 \textit{g}2 10.\textit{g}5!? \textit{g}11
11.\textit{d}1 \textit{f}3+ 12.\textit{f}4 \textit{xd}4 13.g5 White is
clearly better. In such unbalanced situations
the bishop is at an advantage compared to the
short-range knight.

8.\textit{xd}5 g5 9.\textit{g}7 g4

9...\textit{f}1? 10.g4#

10.hxg4 \textit{xf}4 11.\textit{e}6+ 1-0

Ex. 14-10

\textbf{Em.Lasker – M.Chigorin}

\textit{Hastings 1895}

1...c4!

(2 points)

1...\textit{f}5 is equally good. The important thing
is that Black must close the position. Only
1 consolation point for 1...\textit{xd}4 followed by
\textit{f}5.

2.\textit{c}2 \textit{f}5!

(another 1 point)

3.\textit{c}1

White had a strong option available in
3.h4 \textit{g}7 4.h5 \textit{e}7 5.f3, preparing e3-\textit{e}4. But Lasker waits for too long and loses the
initiative.

3...\textit{g}7 4.\textit{a}3 \textit{c}6 5.\textit{c}5 \textit{a}6!

5...a6 is not so good, because of 6.\textit{b}1.

6.a4 \textit{c}6 7.\textit{b}1 \textit{d}7 8.\textit{g}1 \textit{g}7 9.\textit{b}2
\textit{d}5 10.\textit{d}2 \textit{a}5= 11.\textit{g}1 \textit{b}6 12.\textit{a}3
\textit{g}6 13.\textit{b}5 \textit{a}6 14.\textit{c}1 \textit{d}8 15.\textit{a}1 \textit{f}7
16.\textit{bb}1 \textit{d}6?!

Black also hesitates. 16...g5! would have
been more energetic: 17.fxg5 \textit{dg}5 18.\textit{b}2
\textit{g}7 19.\textit{e}e2 \textit{f}4 20.\textit{x}xe4 \textit{fxe}4
17.f3 \textit{f}7 18.\textit{a}3 g5?

Now it is too late. White has made
preparations to meet this thrust.

19.\textit{f}e2!

19.fxg5 is not so strong: 19...\textit{dg}5 20.\textit{e}2
\textit{g}7

19...\textit{xf}4 20.e4 \textit{d}6 21.\textit{xf}4!

21.exf5 would be less clear: 21...e5 22.dxe5
\textit{xe}5 23.\textit{xf}4 \textit{d}3

21...\textit{h}5 22.\textit{e}3 \textit{f}4! 23.\textit{f}2 \textit{a}5 24.\textit{g}1\textit{f}8

See Ex.14-11.

Ex. 14-11

\textbf{Em.Lasker – M.Chigorin}

\textit{Hastings 1895}

White failed to find the correct:

1.e5!

(2 points)

1...\textit{b}5

1...\textit{d}xe5 2.dxe5 \textit{xe}5+ 3.\textit{e}4+-
1...\textit{h}6 2.\textit{g}4+- and the black \textit{f}-pawn will
drop.

2.\textit{xf}xh7

2.\textit{g}4?±

2...\textit{d}xe5 3.\textit{g}8+ \textit{f}7 4.\textit{g}5

4.dxe5 \textit{b}4 5.\textit{x}b4 \textit{xe}5 6.\textit{f}1 \textit{f}6 gives
Black counterplay.

4...\textit{f}6 5.\textit{xe}5 \textit{xd}4 6.\textit{xb}5±

In the game White played the passive:

1.\textit{e}a1?

This guards against ...\textit{b}6-\textit{b}5, but loses the
initiative.

1...\textit{e}5! 2.\textit{a}1 \textit{g}7 3.\textit{b}4 \textit{c}7 4.\textit{b}1??
4.\textit{b}5?!

4...\textit{e}6 5.\textit{d}1 \textit{e}8! 6.\textit{e}2?

6.\textit{a}2?! \textit{c}6?; 6.\textit{c}2! \textit{c}6 7.\textit{b}5.

6...\textit{c}6! 7.\textit{b}5

7.\textit{xc}4 \textit{d}6+!

7...\textit{ax}a4+ 8.dxe5 \textit{xe}5 9.\textit{h}4 \textit{g}7 10.\textit{f}2
\textit{g}6 11.\textit{dd}5 \textit{a}1 12.\textit{d}8 \textit{d}3+ 13.\textit{dd}3
13.\textit{f}1 \textit{cb}4-

13...\textit{xd}3 14.\textit{xd}3 \textit{ag}1+ 15.\textit{e}5+ \textit{e}8
16.\textit{g}5
16.\text{xf4} \text{g6g2} \text{\#} 17.\text{e3} \text{e1}\# \\
16...\text{e6xg5} \\
0-1

\textbf{Ex. 14-12} \\
\textbf{A. Miles – R. Hübner} \\
\text{Wijk aan Zee 1984}

1.g4+-- \\
\text{(2 points)}

1...\text{c8} \\
1...\text{xd4?} 2.\text{xd4} \text{xd4} 3.\text{xd4} \text{xd4} \\
4.\text{c5++--} \\
2.g5 \text{hxg5} 3.\text{xg5} \text{g6} 4.\text{h7} \\
1-0

\textbf{Scoring} \\
Maximum number of points is 24 \\

\begin{align*}
20 \text{ points and above} & \rightarrow \text{Excellent} \\
16 \text{ points and above} & \rightarrow \text{Good} \\
12 \text{ points} & \rightarrow \text{Pass mark}
\end{align*}

\text{If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.}
Typical mistakes in calculating variations

In Chapter 8 we mentioned some typical mistakes made in the calculation of variations. Here we shall discuss these errors in more detail. It is always better to learn from the mistakes of other players rather than making the same ones yourself! Of course, errors cannot always be avoided, but hopefully you will make a few less of them in the future after this lesson!

Candidate moves are missed

It often happens that you consider only one move and calculate only one continuation. When that happens, you can miss the best move.

Diagram 15-1

A.Yusupov – B.Gelfand
Munich 1993

1. \texttt{b7}?

A losing move, just after the time control! White did not stop playing at lightning speed, although he saw that he had already made 40 moves. In such situations it is often better to make a slight pause and then calmly take another look at the position on the board.

As the following variations show, White could in many lines have obtained a strong attack after the better move 1. \texttt{e4}:

\begin{enumerate}
  \item \texttt{d8?! 2.\texttt{fxf4} \texttt{xf4 3.\texttt{xf4} \texttt{d6 4.e6±}}}
  \item \texttt{d8?! 2.\texttt{b7} \texttt{b5} 3.\texttt{f4} \texttt{xf4} (3.\texttt{xf4} 4.\texttt{e7}+ 5.\texttt{xf6+}--) 4.\texttt{xf4} 5.\texttt{e7+--})}
  \item \texttt{a2?! 2.\texttt{f4} \texttt{xf4} (2.\texttt{c2} 3.\texttt{xg6+--}) 3.\texttt{xf4±}}
  \item \texttt{a5?! 2.\texttt{xf4} \texttt{xf4} 3.\texttt{xf4±}}
  \item \texttt{a7?! 2.\texttt{h4} \texttt{xf4} 3.\texttt{xf4} \texttt{d5} 4.\texttt{g3} \texttt{d4} 5.\texttt{e4} \texttt{c6} 6.\texttt{f2±}}
  \item The strongest continuation for Black is very hard to find:1...\texttt{c5! 2.xb4 \texttt{c5! 3.xc5 \texttt{xc5 4.e7} \texttt{b8 5.b5 a5=}}}
  \item \texttt{a5}
\end{enumerate}
Typical mistakes in calculating variations

Only at this point did White discover the central square e4!

2. \( \text{\textit{We4 \textit{Ee3--}} \)\n
This tempo allows Black to consolidate his position.

The technical phase is no problem at all for such a strong player as Gelfand.

3. \( \text{\textit{Wb1 b3 \textit{Ezd3 Ezd3 \textit{Ezd3 d5 \textit{Wg3 g5 \)\n
7. \( \text{\textit{Wxg5 Wxg5 \textit{Ezd3 Egd6 \textit{Egf6 \textit{Ee4 b2 \textit{g3 Edd8 \)\n
11. \( \text{\textit{Wf3 d5 \textit{Efe4 dxe4 13.gxf4 Efg8 \textit{Ef8 14.Edd2 Ec4 \)\n
0-1

The opponent’s strongest reply is not taken into account

Often we simply don’t look for the best moves for our opponent! It is very important to consider all active moves for the opponent!

Diagram 15-2

A.Alekhine – J.Blackburne

St. Petersburg 1914

After the game Alekhine said that he had simply forgotten about his bishop on b5!

1. \( \text{\textit{Edd2?? \)\n
1. \( \text{\textit{Ea4 was better. \)\n
1... \( \text{\textit{We5! 2.a4 a6-- \)\n
And Black won the bishop. Despite that, from this lost position the tough-minded Alekhine managed to save half a point!

Diagram 15-3

A.Ilyin Zhenevsky – M.Kliatskin

Russia 1922

In a winning position, White unfortunately came up with an incorrect combination.

1. \( \text{\textit{We5 b5? \)\n
Better was 1. \( \text{\textit{Eae1 Bxh3 2.Wh5! Bxg2 3.Bxf7 Ec4 \)\n
4. \( \text{\textit{Ec6++ \)\n
Basically, in a position with a material advantage you should look for simple ways and not go in for too many combinations. White would ideally
like to play something simpler than the above-mentioned variation. But sometimes you have to calculate variations in order to avoid allowing any counterplay.

1...\( \text{\textit{dxe5}} \) 2.\( \text{\textit{xd5}} \)??

Ilyin Zhenevsky here makes another typical mistake — \textit{he does not check through his previous calculations}! He could still spot his mistake and correct it, but he put too much trust in his first analysis. He had to play 2.dxe5±.

2...\( \text{\textit{g6}} \)†

White had overlooked this simple check. Now he even loses the game.

3.\( \text{\textit{h1}} \)!

There was the slightly more stubborn 3.\( \text{\textit{g2}} \) d7! 4.\( \text{\textit{c4}} \) xh3--;.

3...\( \text{\textit{e4}} \)† 4.\( \text{\textit{xe4}} \) \( \text{\textit{xe4}} \)† 5.\( \text{\textit{g1}} \) \( \text{\textit{e3}} \)†

0-1

\textbf{Diagram 15-4}

A.Yusupov - V.Salov

Barcelona 1989

1.\( \text{\textit{f3}} \)

White should guard against the positional threat of ...\( \text{\textit{f5}} \). The correct move is 1.\( \text{\textit{f2}} \), intending 1...\( \text{\textit{f5}} \) 2.\( \text{\textit{d3}} \)=.

1...\( \text{\textit{f5}} \) 2.\( \text{\textit{f2}} \)??

The losing move. White sets a trap, only taking into account the weak move 2...\( \text{\textit{b1}} \). But he is overlooking an active move for his opponent.

Better was 2.\( \text{\textit{e3}} \)†.

2...\( \text{\textit{c2}} \)!

And because of the threat of ...\( \text{\textit{xb3}} \), White loses the game!

Of course not 2...\( \text{\textit{b1}} \) 3.\( \text{\textit{d3}} \) \( \text{\textit{xa2}} \)!! on account of 4.\( \text{\textit{c2}} \)+.

3.\( \text{\textit{d3}} \)

Or 3.\( \text{\textit{a4}} \) \( \text{\textit{b1}} \)--.

3...\( \text{\textit{xb3}} \)–+
Alternatives in the early moves are missed
The first moves in a variation are the most important ones. Mistakes made there can no longer be corrected! (See Chapter 8 - 'Calculating short variations')

Diagram 15-5

B.Blumenfeld – Zhivzov
Moscow

1...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{e4}}}??

An astonishing mistake, since Black had very correctly calculated a lot of variations here. However, he was concentrating simply on \textit{3.h7}\texttt{t} and not looking for alternatives for his opponent!

If 1...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{h3}}}, then \textit{2.xh3 exe5 3.xh6 e1t 4.exe1 gxh6\texttt{t}.}

1...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{b7}}} is met by \textit{2.g4\texttt{t}}.

2.xe4

And Black resigned. Only now did he notice that 2...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{exe5}}} is simply answered by \textit{3.xa8\texttt{t+}} (but not \textit{3.h7\texttt{t}? \texttt{xhxh7 4.exe5}, due to 4.d3\texttt{t+-}}).

A variation is ended too soon
Although our opponent (or we ourselves) still has some active moves, we often stop calculating a variation too soon.

It sometimes has to do with our emotions, and we evaluate the position too soon or even resign prematurely!

Diagram 15-6

L.Rudenko – S.Rootare
Lugansk 1956

Black played:

1.b2??

1...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{\textbf{\texttt{exd5}}}}} 2.exd5 b2?? would also have been bad, in view of \textit{3.d6+-}.

The correct route to victory was 1...\textit{\textbf{\textcolor{red}{f8}}} (threatening \textit{2.xd5 3.exd5 b2+-}) \textit{2.d2 e7 3.f1 exd5 4.exd5 \texttt{h1} 5.b2 \texttt{c2-+}.}

In response to 1...b2?? White actually resigned!
After 2.xa2 \texttt{c1}, both players had stopped calculating and evaluated the position as won
for Black. But after the simple 3.\( f1! \) followed by \( h1, f3, f2, e2, d1 \) and \( d2 \), it is White that is winning! Of course both of them had totally overlooked 3.\( f1! \).

In the test you should try to avoid or to punish the mistakes which were made in these games!
Exercises

Ex. 15-1

Ex. 15-4

Ex. 15-2

Ex. 15-5

Ex. 15-3

Ex. 15-6
Exercises
Solutions

Ex. 15-1

A. Kotov – V. Smyslov
Budapest Candidates 1950

1...\[\text{
Solutions

Ex. 15-7

Golubev – A.Kotov

Black played:
1...\( \text{x} \text{xf7}?? \)

There is an easy win after 1...\( \text{xf6} \) or 1...\( \text{xf5} \).

(1 point for either move)

But no point for the tentative 1...\( \text{xe5?} \) 2.dxe5 \( \text{xf7} \). It is not necessary to give up so much material. The resulting endgame is not all that easy to win!

2.\( \text{d8} \)\( \text{xf7} \) 3.\( \text{xf7} \)
1-0

(another 1 point for spotting this trap)

Ex. 15-8

D.Sahovic – M.Matulovic

In the game, White played 1...\( \text{xe5?} \) \( \text{a1} \)!

2.\( \text{xe1} \)\#.

(1 point for this variation)

The correct move is:
1.\( \text{xe6} \)!

(1 point)

1...\( \text{f7} \)

1...\( \text{xe6} \) is followed by 2.\( \text{d8} \)\( \text{g7} \) (2...\( \text{xd8} \) 3.\( \text{xf6} \)++) 3.e8\#++.

2.e8\#++

If 2...\( \text{xe8} \), then 3.\( \text{xd7} \)++.

3.\( \text{h8} \)\( \text{h8} \) 4.\( \text{f6} \)++

(another 1 point)

Ex. 15-9

F.Vallejo Pons – V.Epishin

Dos Hermanas 2003

White simply played 1.\( \text{xf8} \)\( \text{xf8} \) 2.\( \text{g6} \)\( \text{e7} \) 3.\( \text{h5} ! \)\( \text{b4} \) 4.\( \text{d3} \)\( \text{h4} \) 5.\( \text{c1} \)\( \text{h6} \) 6.\( \text{c4} \)\( \text{d5} \) 7.\( \text{c7} \)\( \text{xh6} \) 8.\( \text{a7} \)\( \text{h2} \) and the players agreed on a draw.

Much stronger was:
1.\( \text{d7} \)\( \text{xf7} \) 2.\( \text{xf8} \)\( \text{xf8} \) 3.\( \text{xd7} \)++

(2 points)

Ex. 15-10

R.Hasangatim – P.Harikrishna

Abu Dhabi 2003

White played:
1.\( \text{e2} ? \)

White should settle for a draw with 1.\( \text{xe7} \) (or 1.\( \text{f8} \)!) 1...\( \text{a7} \) 2.\( \text{xf8} \)\( \text{a8} \)!

(1 point)

1...\( \text{a1} \)!

White now realized that his rook would be trapped after 2.\( \text{g2} \)\( \text{c4} \), so he resigned.

(another 1 point for seeing this trap)

Ex. 15-11

A.Huzman – G.Kasparov

Rethymnon 2003

1.\( \text{xd5} \)!

(1 point)

1...\( \text{e8} \)

1...\( \text{xd5} \) 2.\( \text{e7} \)++; 1...\( \text{xd5} \) 2.\( \text{g7} \)\#

2.\( \text{xc4} \)

1-0

Even a great player can have an off day.

Ex. 15-12

E.Williams – D.Harrwitz

London(8) 1852

In the game there followed 1.\( \text{a7} ? \)\( \text{d6} != \)

(1 point for seeing this defence)

Black's idea is of course 2.\( \text{xd6} \)\( \text{e7} \), while 2.\( \text{a8} \)\( \text{e7} \) is well met by 2...\( \text{b8} \)\( \text{e7} \).

1.\( \text{h7} ? \) also allows Black to defend after 1...\( \text{xe3} \) 2.\( \text{xd7} \)\( \text{d7} \) 3.fxe3.

The correct move is:
1.\( \text{h8} ! \)

(2 points)

Now the white king gets an escape square and Black's defensive idea ...\( \text{d6} \) is thwarted.

1...\( \text{h8} \)

1...\( \text{h8} \) 2.\( \text{a7} + \)

2.\( \text{a7} \)\( \text{d8} \) 3.\( \text{a5} ! \) b6 4.\( \text{xb6} \)\( \text{c8} \)

5.\( \text{a6} \)\( \text{d8} \) 6.\( \text{a5} ++ \)
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 24

20 points and above  ➔ Excellent
16 points and above  ➔ Good
12 points  ➔ Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Removing the defence

Removing the defence is one of the most important resources in an attack. A piece which is protecting other pieces or squares near the king is removed by a tactical operation. Of course this does not necessarily involve a sacrifice. We can attack an important defensive piece, exchange it, deflect it or simply take it.

Removing a defender is often a preparatory step for other tactical operations, such as double attacks, decoying, etc.

Diagram 16-1

A.Tolush – E.Geller
USSR Ch, Moscow 1950

1...\texttt{xc3}!
The motif behind this combination is to achieve control over the e2-square.
2.\texttt{xe6}
2.bxc3 is followed by the fork 2...\texttt{e2+}.
2.\texttt{xe5} is slightly more stubborn: 2...\texttt{e2} (or 2...\texttt{xe5 3.bxc3 \texttt{xc3}+) 3.\texttt{xc1 fxe5 4.bxc3 \texttt{xc2}+}
2...\texttt{e7+ 3.b8 \texttt{xc4} 4.\texttt{f1 \texttt{xc2}+ 5.a1 \texttt{e2}
6.f4 \texttt{d3 7.g8+ g6}}
0-1

Diagram 16-2

A.Tolush – P.Keres
USSR Ch, Leningrad 1947

White wants to attack the knight on b4, which is protecting its colleague on d3, in order to win one of the knights. But Black has a strong reply.

1.a3? \texttt{xb2}!
Removing the defender of the c3-knight. Here Black is exploiting in instructive fashion the weakness of White's back rank.
2.axb4
If 2.\texttt{xb2}, then 2...\texttt{xc3+} mate after ...\texttt{xc1+}.
2...\texttt{xc3 3.bxa5 bxa5 4.h3 b3?}
Either 4...\texttt{d3} or 4...\texttt{c4} would be simpler.
5.\text{\textbullet}d2? 
White does not seize his chance. The correct move is 5.\text{\textbullet}e5! and if 5...a4, then 6.\text{\textbullet}xa4! \text{\textbullet}xe3 7.\text{\textbullet}d7! \text{\textbullet}xa4 8.\text{\textbullet}xf8 \text{\textbullet}c3 9.\text{\textbullet}b8=. 
5...\text{\textbullet}fb8 6.\text{\textbullet}d4 \text{\textbullet}b6+

Black has an extra pawn and went on to win the game.

\textbf{Diagram 16-3}

\textit{R. Fuchs – A. Hennings}
East Germany 1972

Black finds a little combination which exploits the unfavourable positioning of his opponent’s pieces.

1...\text{\textbullet}xc2! 
This directly removes one defender of the d3-square and in addition deflects the rook away from its defence.

2.\text{\textbullet}xc2 \text{\textbullet}xd3\# 3.\text{\textbullet}f2 \text{\textbullet}d4!

This attack gives Black a decisive advantage. The white rook can no longer do the double job of controlling the d2-square and defending the knight on c3.

4.\text{\textbullet}c1 \text{\textbullet}d2\#
0-1

Removing the defence during an attack on the king is one of the most frequently used tactics. You can also interpret the destruction of the castled position (Chapter 16 of \textit{Build Up Your Chess 2}) as being the removal of the defence. But in this chapter we are mainly considering combinations which are directed against a specific piece.

\textbf{Diagram 16-4}

\textit{H. Ahues – Steneberg}
Berlin 1930

1.\text{\textbullet}xf6!
The knight on f6 is protecting the h7-square and so has to be removed.

1...\text{\textbullet}xd1\# 
1...\text{\textbullet}xf6 is answered by 2.\text{\textbullet}d7! which threatens \text{\textbullet}h7\# followed by \text{\textbullet}h8#. If 2...\text{\textbullet}xd7, then simply 3.\text{\textbullet}e8#.
Tactics 6

2. $\text{g}2 $f8
   2...$\text{xf}6$ 3. $\text{e}8#$

3. $\text{gxg}7!$
   White opens up the king’s position further.

3...$\text{xe}6!$ $\text{f}8$
   Or 4...$h8$ 5. $\text{e}8#$ $\text{f}8$ 6.$\text{xf}8#$.

5. $\text{g}6$
   And Black cannot simultaneously protect both the f7- and e8-squares.

5...$\text{d}8$ 6.$\text{f}7#$

---

Diagram 16-5

L. Stein – M. Filip
Moscow 1967

1.$\text{xf}6!+$
   Removing the important defender.

1...$\text{xb}1+$
   1...$\text{xf}6$ would be bad: 2.$\text{e}6+$ (or simply 2.$\text{d}4+$
   followed by $\text{xa}1$) 2...$\text{g}5$ (2...$\text{g}7$ 3.$\text{xe}7+-$)
   3.$f4+$ $\text{h}5$ 4.$\text{h}3#$

2.$\text{xb}1$ $\text{xf}6$ 3.$\text{e}4!$
   Threatening $\text{e}6+$.

3...$\text{f}7$ 4.$\text{d}4+$
   Black resigned, on account of 4...$\text{g}5$ 5.$\text{e}3+$ $\text{h}5$
   6.$g4+$.

---

Diagram 16-6

E. Vasiukov – B. Djurasevic
Belgrade 1961

White finds an elegant solution and removes both
defenders of the $g_7$-pawn.
1.$\text{xe}6!$ $\text{xe}6$ 2.$\text{xf}8!$ $\text{xf}8$ 3.$\text{g}7+$ $\text{h}8$ 4.$\text{g}6+$
   Black resigned, because he also loses his queen after
   4...$\text{f}6$ 5.$\text{xf}6$. 

168
And to finish, two more typical combinations aimed against the knight on f6.

**Diagram 16-7**

**B. Spassky – E. Geller**
Candidates Match (6), Sukhumi 1968

1. **£xf6!**
   
The knight was protecting the h7-square. The combination by White, however, destroys the defence and opens up the king's position.

1... **£xf6** 2. **£h7† £f8 3. £xf7!**
   
   An important continuation. The g6-point is now weakened too.

3... **£xc2**

3... £xf7 is followed by 4. £h6 £g8 5. £f4 £xc2 (or 5... d5 6. £xg6† £f8 7. exd5) 6. £f1 £xg2† 7. £xg2 £c2 8. £xg6† £e7 8. £xg7 £e3† 10. £f2 £xf1

11. £xf6† £d7 12. £xg8+-.

4. **£h6**
   
   Removing another important defensive piece – the bishop on g7.

4. £xc2 £xf7 5. £h6 £g8 is not so clear.

4... **£xc1†**

4... £xh6 is met by 5. £xh6 £e8 6. £g8 £xc1† 7. £xcl £f8 8. £e7+-.

If 4... £xd3, then 5. £xg7† £e8 6. £xc2 £xc2 7. £f4 with a decisive attack. For example: 7... £d4† 8. £h2 £f5 9. £e5 £xg2 10. £xd6†+-

5. **£xcl £xf7**

Or 5... £xh6 6. £xh6 £e8 7. £g8+-.

6. £xg7† £e8 7. £g5!

7. £e5! would also be good: 7... £xg2 8. £e6+-

7... £f5 8. £xg6† £d7 9. £f7† £c6 10. £xf5†

1–0

**Diagram 16-8**

**A. Bisguier – B. Larsen**
Zagreb 1965

1. **£xf6! £h8**

Other moves lose even more quickly:

a) 1... **£xf6** 2. £g7! £xg7 (2... £xg5 3. £h8#)

3. £h7#

b) 1... **exf6** 2. £xg7+-
2. \textit{\textbf{\underline{\textbf{f1+}}}}

The simplest solution. The threat is now \textit{\textbf{h7 or }}\textit{\textbf{xf8}}.

2... \textit{\textbf{e8}} 3. \textit{\textbf{f8!}}

Threatening \textit{\textbf{h7t}} followed by \textit{\textbf{h8#}}.

3... \textit{\textbf{f6}}

3... \textit{\textbf{e6}} can be met by 4. \textit{\textbf{e7! xe7}} 5. \textit{\textbf{h7t}} \textit{\textbf{xf8}}

6. \textit{\textbf{h8#}} or simply 4. \textit{\textbf{h7t}} \textit{\textbf{xf8}} 5. \textit{\textbf{xf7t}} and mate next move.

\textbf{Diagram 16-9}

4. \textit{\textbf{xf6!}}

Not again! The same motif carried out twice is something special.

4... \textit{\textbf{xf6}} 5. \textit{\textbf{h6!}}

But not 5. \textit{\textbf{h7t}}? \textit{\textbf{xf8--+}}.

5... \textit{\textbf{xf8}} 6. \textit{\textbf{h7#}}
Exercises

Ex. 16-7

Ex. 16-8

Ex. 16-9

Ex. 16-10

Ex. 16-11

Ex. 16-12
Ex. 16-1

F. Dus Chotimirsky – A. Bannik
USSR Ch semifinal, Vilnius 1949

1...Exd4!

(1 point)

1...cxd4

If 1...Exd5, then 2.Exd5 Exd5 3.Qh6#!–.
1...Qh8?! is followed by 2.Qf6! gxf6 3.Qh6
Qg8 4.Ed7 Qf8 5.Qd6 Qg7 6.Qb7! Qd8
7.Ed1+–.
2.Qf6t!

(1 point)

2...Qf8

Or 2...gxf6 3.Qh6#–.
3.Qxh7 gxf6 4.Qe1

1–0

Ex. 16-2

G. Sax – J. Van der Wiel
Biel 1985

1...Exe4!!

(1 point)

Removing the defender of the c3- and f2-
squares.
2.Qxe4 Qxc3!

Now White will be mated after 3.b3 Qf2!.
(1 point)

And 3.Qd2 Qxd2 4.hxg6 Qxg6– is also
hopeless.

0–1

Ex. 16-3

M. Carlson – R. Eberlein
Biel 1979

1.Qxf8!

Black resigned, on account of 1...Qxf8
(1...Qxe5 2.Qxh7#) 2.Qg7t! hxg6 3.Qh4t
Qh7 4.Qxh7#.

(1 point)

Ex. 16-4

I. Efimov – R. Andreoli
Varallo 1989

1...Qxe3!

(1 point)

Removing the defence of the d2-square.

1...Qd2t would not be so forcing, due to
2.Qg3.

2.Qxe3 Qd2t 3.Qf3

3.Qe2 Qxf4t 4.Qg3 Qxe2–+

3...Qe2t! 4.Qxe2 Qxf4#

(1 point)

Ex. 16-5

P. Hohler – G. Tcherniak
Munchenstein 1959

1.Qxa6!

Or first 1.Qxf6.

1...Qxa6 2.Qxf6! Qxf6 3.Qd5

(1 point)

Black resigned, as he is losing a piece after
3...Qd8 (or 3...Qd6) 4.Qxf6t Qxf6 5.Qxh7#.

Ex. 16-6

Parence – Tilson
Great Britain 1964

1.Qxd4t! cxd4 2.Qg7t!

(1 point)

2...Qxg7

2...Qxg7 3.Exe8t Qg8 4.Exg8#

3.Exe7t Qxe7

3...Qf6 also offers no hope: 4.Exe8 Qc2t
(4...Qg5t 5.Qf2 Qd2t 6.Qe2–) 5.Qg3–

4.h8Qt Qf7 5.Qh7t Qe6 6.Qc8t Qf6

6...Qd5 7.Qxf5t gxf5 8.Qxe7–+

7.Qf8t

1–0

(1 point)
Solutions

Ex. 16-7
R.Nezhmetdinov – Romanov
Arkhangelsk 1950

1.\texttt{g5} g6 2.\texttt{Qe7}†
First 2.\texttt{Qxd7}! and then 3.\texttt{Qe7}† is equally good.
2...\texttt{Qg7} 3.\texttt{Qxd7}!

(1 point)

3...\texttt{Qxd7}
3...\texttt{Qxd7} 4.\texttt{Qf6}† \texttt{Qh6} 5.\texttt{Qf5}†+
4.\texttt{Qf6}† \texttt{Qh6} 5.\texttt{Qf5}!
Threatening \texttt{gh5}. Also winning is 5.\texttt{Qf5}†.
5...\texttt{Qa7}† 6.\texttt{Qf1}
1–0

Ex. 16-8
V.Zheliandinov – A.Mikhalschishin
Lvov 1995

1...\texttt{Qxd2}! 2.\texttt{Qxd2} \texttt{Qxe3}!
(1 point)
White resigned. 3.\texttt{Qd3} is met by 3...\texttt{Qxf2}
(or 3...\texttt{Qh6}→) 4.\texttt{Qxg6} \texttt{Qe3}→.

Ex. 16-9
W.Uhlmann – H.Liebert
Groeditz 1976

1...\texttt{Qxd2}!!
(1 point)
1...\texttt{Qg5}?! would not be so accurate, because of 2.h4!.
White resigned, on account of 2.\texttt{Qxd2}
(or 2.\texttt{Wxd2} \texttt{Wf3}→) 2...\texttt{Qg5}! (threatening
...\texttt{Qh3}#) 3.\texttt{Qxg5} (or 3.h4 \texttt{Qf3}† 4.\texttt{Qg2}
\texttt{Qxd2}†--) 3...\texttt{Wf3}→.
(another 1 point for these variations)

Ex. 16-10
T.Petrosian – B.Ivkov
Teslic 1979

1.\texttt{Qxd4}!
(1 point)
Black resigned, in view of 1...\texttt{exd4} 2.\texttt{Qe5}†
\texttt{Qxg4} 3.h3#.

Ex. 16-11
Zavernaev – Paromov
Arkhangelsk 1963

1.\texttt{Qxe5}!
1–0
1...\texttt{Qxf4} is met by 2.\texttt{Qe8}† \texttt{Qf7} 3.\texttt{Qxc8}—.
If 1...\texttt{dxe5}, then 2.\texttt{Qc4}† \texttt{Qh8} 3.\texttt{Qg6}† \texttt{hxg6}
4.\texttt{Qh1}† \texttt{Qh3} 5.\texttt{Qxh3}#.
(1 point for this variation)

Ex. 16-12
A.Bisguier – R.Fischer
New York 1965

1...\texttt{Qg7}
This threatens 2...\texttt{hxg3}† 3.\texttt{Qxg3} \texttt{Qh8}#.
Black had a second way to win: 1...\texttt{Qxh1}†
2.\texttt{Qxhl} \texttt{Qc1}† (2...\texttt{hxg3} 3.\texttt{Qe1}† 3.\texttt{Qh2}
\texttt{hxg3}† 4.\texttt{Qxg3} \texttt{Qd1}! (4...\texttt{Qc6} 5.\texttt{g5}† 5.\texttt{Qf2}
\texttt{Qd3} 6.\texttt{Qf3} \texttt{Qxf3} 7.\texttt{gxfg3} d3--) (also 2 points)
2.\texttt{Qf5} \texttt{Qxh1}†!
(2 points)
White resigned, on account of 3.\texttt{Qxh1} \texttt{Qc1}†
4.\texttt{Qh2} \texttt{Qxg3}† 5.\texttt{Qh3} \texttt{Qh1}#.
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 18

15 points and above \(\rightarrow\) Excellent
12 points and above \(\rightarrow\) Good
9 points \(\rightarrow\) Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Good and bad bishops

This subject has already been treated in Chapter 6 of Build Up Your Chess 2.

In this chapter, we shall consider only those positions in which one side has a bishop and the other side has a knight. These pieces are of nominally the same strength (= 3 pawns). But they have very different abilities. For example, the bishop is a long-range piece which plays only on squares of one colour, whereas all the squares are open to the short-range knight. The result of these differences is that in some situations the bishop is stronger and in others the knight has the advantage.

The bishop is stronger, whenever...
1) the position is open;
2) play is taking place on both sides of the board;
3) the pawn structure is unbalanced – the bishop can, for example, support a passed pawn better than a knight while at the same time fighting against opposing passed pawns.

In its struggle against the knight, more often than not the bishop is at an advantage. For that reason, you have to think very carefully in the opening before exchanging a bishop for a knight.

To maximize the activity of the bishop, your pawns should be correctly positioned. Capablanca's rule – put the pawns on squares of the opposite colour to that of your bishop – is very important. It means that you can protect those squares which cannot be controlled by the bishop. Though, like almost all rules in chess, this is not an absolute rule, it does apply in the majority of cases.

However, in order to be able to defend the pawns with the bishop, we must sometimes place some pawns on the 'wrong' squares.
In most cases the rook, which works in straight lines, forms a better team with the bishop than with the knight.

**Diagram 17-1**

A.Yusupov – V.Anand  
Linares 1992

In order to play for a win, White must retain his bishop! The position is open and the bishop is slightly more effective than the knight, which does not have a protected outpost.

1.\(\text{h5}\)! \(\text{e6}\) 2.\(\text{xc8}\) \(\text{xc8}\) 3.\(\text{c1}\) \(\text{d7}\)

It is advantageous for White to exchange the queens and keep the rooks!

4.\(\text{d1}\) \(\text{xd1}\) \(\text{t}\)

Or 4...\(\text{b7}\) 5.\(\text{c2}\)\(\text{t}\).

5.\(\text{xd1}\) \(\text{d8}\)

**Diagram 17-2**

If Black now manages to exchange the rooks, then he can put his knight on \(\text{c6}\) and his king on \(\text{e6}\), which should keep things level without any difficulty.

6.\(\text{c1}\)!

The rook is actively posted on the c-file and can penetrate via \(\text{c6}\).

6...\(\text{h5}\) 7.\(\text{c6}\) \(\text{a5}\) 8.\(\text{b6}\) \(\text{d5}\) 9.\(\text{f1}\)

9.\(\text{b3}\)\(\text{d1}\)\(\text{t}\) 10.\(\text{h2}\) \(\text{a1}\) 11.\(\text{xb5}\) \(\text{xa3}\) 12.\(\text{hx5}\) \(\text{xb3}\) 13.\(\text{a5}\) would lead to an endgame with all the pawns on one wing, in which White has only minimal chances of a win. White hopes to achieve more from this game.

9...\(\text{g5}\) 10.\(\text{e2}\)

**Diagram 17-3**

10...\(\text{g4}\)?

Here Black would do better to quickly put his queenside pawns on light squares. The correct approach is 10...\(\text{a4}\)\(\text{t}\) and if 11.\(\text{f3}\), then simply 11...\(\text{e5}\)!

11.\(\text{hxg4}\) \(\text{hxg4}\)
You may recognize this position, which was already treated in *Build Up Your Chess 2*, Ex. 2-2. White should fix at least one of the black queenside pawns on a dark square, so that he is then able to attack it with the bishop.

12.b3!± e5 13.d3 f5 14.g3

White restricts himself to defensive measures on the kingside and limits further advances of the black pawns.

14...f7 15.a6 b4 16.axb4!!

Shortly before the time control White chooses a safe plan, but in doing so lessens his advantage. The only one to gain from an exchange of pawns here is the defender! 16.a4 would have been better, and if 16...c5†, then 17.d4 xe3 18.ea7†+- (Anand).

16...axb4 17.ab6

The b4-pawn is fixed on a dark square and can be attacked by all the white pieces.

17...e4 18.e6 e5 19.c4 e4†

19...f4 20.gxf4 dxf4 would be bad, on account of 21.d4! g6 22.xg6 xe3 23.xe3 xg6 24.f4 h5 25.f3+- (Anand).

20.d5 d6 21.c4 xc4 22.xc4 e5

22...f4? 23.gxf4 d5

23.xb4

23...d2??

23...f4!!

As expected, White has won the b4-pawn. Black tries to exchange some pawns on the kingside.

24.gxf4†?

After 24.a7 fxg3 25.fxg3 d6 there is the danger that Black can construct a typical fortress by placing his king on b7 and then playing his knight between f3 and h2.

24...xf4 25.c4

With such reduced material, White has great difficulties winning the game.

25...h5?

25...e4! would have been correct: 26.b4 d3 27.b5 g3! and if 28.fxg3 xe3 29.d5† b4† 30.e5 f3 31.d4, then not 31...xg3? 32.c4 c2 33.b6 e3† 34.c5++, but 34...c2†! 35.c5 e1!! 36.b6 d3† 37.d6 b4=.

Diagram 17-5

As expected, White has won the b4-pawn. Black tries to exchange some pawns on the kingside.
After missing this fantastic opportunity, Black can no longer save the game. White plays very cautiously, preventing the final pawn swap and switching play between the kingside and the queenside – the g4-pawn can also be attacked!

26.\texttt{d}a7! \texttt{e}6 27.\texttt{b}b8 \texttt{f}f6 28.\texttt{d}d4 \texttt{d}d5 29.\texttt{g}g3 \texttt{b}b4 30.\texttt{c}c5 \texttt{d}d3\textsuperscript{+} 31.\texttt{c}c4

White tries (successfully!) to force the knight to less favourable positions.

31.\texttt{e}e1 32.\texttt{b}4 \texttt{c}c2 33.\texttt{b}5 \texttt{d}d7 34.\texttt{e}e5 \texttt{e}e1 35.\texttt{d}d5 \texttt{d}d3

\textbf{Diagram 17-6}

36.\texttt{d}d4?!  
36.\texttt{d}d6\textsuperscript{+} is stronger. This typical situation, in which the bishop deprives the knight of a lot of squares, would have led to a win at once.

36...\texttt{f}f4\textsuperscript{+} 37.\texttt{e}e4 \texttt{e}e2 38.\texttt{e}e5 \texttt{c}c8 39.\texttt{e}e3 \texttt{c}c1 40.\texttt{b}b2 \texttt{b}b3 41.\texttt{d}d4?!  
Overhasty play with 41.\texttt{f}f4 \texttt{b}b7 42.\texttt{x}xg4 \texttt{g}g6 43.\texttt{f}f4 \texttt{d}d2! 44.\texttt{f}f4 \texttt{e}e4 45.\texttt{f}f4? would give Black drawing chances: 45...\texttt{d}d6 46.\texttt{f}f6 \texttt{x}x\texttt{b}5 47.\texttt{e}e5 \texttt{c}c6 48.\texttt{a}a3 \texttt{f}f7\textsuperscript{+} 49.\texttt{e}e6 \texttt{g}g5\textsuperscript{+} 50.\texttt{e}e7 \texttt{h}h7 51.\texttt{f}f7 \texttt{d}d5=

Instead of 45.\texttt{f}f4? there is a win after the more complicated 45.\texttt{e}e5! \texttt{x}x\texttt{b}5 46.\texttt{f}f4 \texttt{c}c5 47.\texttt{f}f6 \texttt{d}d7 48.\texttt{f}f7 \texttt{c}c6 49.\texttt{f}f5 \texttt{d}d5 50.\texttt{b}b2 \texttt{d}d6 51.\texttt{a}a3\textsuperscript{+} \texttt{d}d5 52.\texttt{b}b4 \texttt{c}c6 53.\texttt{e}e6 \texttt{c}c7 54.\texttt{e}e7 \texttt{c}c6 55.\texttt{d}d6\textsuperscript{+} and Black is in zugzwang.

41...\texttt{c}c1 42.\texttt{d}d2  
White pushes the knight away.

42...\texttt{b}b3\textsuperscript{+} 43.\texttt{c}c3 \texttt{a}a5  
43...\texttt{c}c1 is followed by 44.\texttt{e}e3 g3 45.\texttt{f}f4 g2 46.\texttt{f}f5 \texttt{e}e2\textsuperscript{+} 41.\texttt{b}b4+-.

44.\texttt{e}e5 \texttt{d}d7 45.\texttt{f}f4? \texttt{c}c8 46.\texttt{d}d4 \texttt{b}b7 47.\texttt{c}c5 \texttt{a}7  
47...\texttt{b}b3\textsuperscript{+} 48.\texttt{c}c4! \texttt{a}a5\textsuperscript{+} 49.\texttt{b}b4+-

\textbf{Diagram 17-7}

48.\texttt{b}b4! \texttt{b}b7 49.\texttt{c}c7  
The knight is trapped. 49...\texttt{a}a8 is met by 50.\texttt{b}b6 with zugzwang.

1-0
Positional play 3

The knight is stronger, whenever...
1) the position is closed;
2) play is on one side of the board;
3) the opposing side has some pawn weaknesses.

The knight is a close-quarter fighter, and it must get close to its opponents. For that, it needs outposts. The knight is very good at constructing a fortress, or a barrier against the opposing king.
A safe pawn set-up in the struggle against the bishop is, of course, one in which the pawns are positioned on squares of a different colour from that of the bishop. However, sometimes 'wrongly' posted pawns can limit the activity of the bishop.

The knight and the queen work very well together and are often stronger than queen and bishop.

Diagram 17-8

A.Yusupov – V.Cmilyte
Mainz (rapid) 2004

1...a6?
Black unnecessarily places her pawn on a square of the same colour as the bishop.
2.g2
White prepares the breakthrough in the centre by means of e2-e4 and as a precaution protects the h3-pawn.
2...d5?!
Passive play would have been better for Black. This just further weakens the dark squares. The probable intention of constructing a fortress is impossible, because Black has too many weaknesses.
3.c5 dxe4!!

Diagram 17-9

4.\( \text{xe4} \)
In a closed position the knight is superior to the bishop.
4...dxe4 5.\( \text{xd7+} \) \( \text{xd7} \) 6.\( \text{xd7+} \) \( \text{xd7} \) 7.\( \text{f2} \) \( \text{f6} \)
8.\( \text{e3} \) \( \text{e6} \) 9.\( \text{d4+} \)
Black is preventing further penetration by the opposing king, but White can still take effective action with his knight.
9...h6!
Positioning the first pawn correctly! Black needs
this chance for counterplay on the kingside (...g6-g5 and then possibly a king march).

10.h4

Diagram 17-10

10...h5?

After this move, which once more sets up all the pawns wrongly, Black's position can no longer be saved.

11.Qa4 Qd5 12.Qb6 Qe6 13.c3

The only way to lay siege to a fortress! Black is in zugzwang and must allow the knight onto d6.

13...Qg8

If 13...a5, then 14.Qc3! followed by Qb2-a3-a4 will pick off the a-pawn.

14.Qc8 Qe6 15.Qd6 b5

15...b6 loses after 16.Qc4 b5 17.Qe5.

16.Qb7 Qf6

Diagram 17-11

17.Qc3!!

Since the black king cannot find a way into the white camp, its counterpart can casually wander over to the queenside.

17...Qe6 18.Qb4 Qd5 19.Qa5

Just look at the position of the white pawns on the queenside! The important c4-square is under control, and although the a2- and b3-pawns are on light squares, there is no way for the black bishop to attack them properly.

19...Qe6 20.Qb6

This is even simpler than 20.Qxa6 Qd8+.

20...Qc8 21.Qa5 Qd7 22.Qb4!

Black cannot simultaneously protect the pawns on c6 and a6.

22...Qc8 23.Qxa6 Qd7 24.Qb6 Qe8 25.Qc7

1-0

V.Savon – B.Spassky

USSR Ch, Baku 1961

1.f3 d5 2.g3 c5 3.Qg2 Qc6 4.0-0 e5 5.d3 f6 6.e4
d4 7.Qh4 Qe6 8.f4 Qd7 9.Qd2 0-0-0 10.a4 Qd6

Diagram 17-12

This allows his opponent to carry out an exchange operation that suits him.
13.\textit{\text{f}}^3\text{f}3 \text{would be better, or 13.\textit{\text{b}}}3.

13...\textit{\text{exc}}4 14.dxc4 \textit{\text{a}}5!

Black exchanges both his bishops. The exchange of the dark-squared bishops is particularly important, since it leaves his opponent with a bad bishop.

15.\textit{\text{f}}2

15.\textit{\text{c}}c1 is bad, due to 15...d3\text{f}.

15...\textit{\text{xd}}2 16.\textit{\text{xd}}2\text{f}3 \textit{\text{b}}8

Black intends \textit{\text{c}}8-d6 followed by preparing ...g6.

17.\textit{\text{f}}3 \textit{\text{c}}7 18.\textit{\text{f}}1 \textit{\text{d}}8 19.g4?!

First 19.\textit{\text{d}}3 and then \textit{\text{g}}2, \textit{\text{h}}1, \textit{\text{g}}1 and only then g4-g5 would be a better plan.

19...\textit{\text{d}}6 20.\textit{\text{g}}2 \textit{\text{f}}7 21.\textit{\text{e}}2

\text{Diagram 17-13}

21...g6

Why is Black opening the game on the kingside? The side with the knight also needs some open files for the major pieces. White is not particularly well coordinated at the moment.

22.f\text{gx}g6?! h\text{gx}g6 23.\textit{\text{f}}3

\text{Diagram 17-14}

23...g5!

Black makes any counterplay by means of g4-g5 more difficult and obtains full control over the f4-square.

24.\textit{\text{f}}2 \textit{\text{e}}6 25.\textit{\text{e}}1 \textit{\text{h}}6 26.b3 \textit{\text{e}}7

After having provoked the move b2-b3, he takes the precaution of protecting the c5-pawn.

27.\textit{\text{d}}3 \textit{\text{e}}8!

Setting off on the route \textit{\text{e}}8-c7-e6-f4.

28.\textit{\text{g}}2 \textit{\text{c}}7 29.\textit{\text{e}}1 \textit{\text{e}}6 30.\textit{\text{f}}5 \textit{\text{d}}8h8 31.e3

\text{Diagram 17-15}

31...\textit{\text{b}}4!

Black wants to transfer his knight to f4, so he first exchanges the knight on d3.

32.\textit{\text{e}}1f1 \textit{\text{xd}}3 33.\textit{\text{xd}}3 \textit{\text{f}}4

A strategic triumph for Black. The knight is much better than the g2-bishop. In addition, White faces some specific problems, for example the h3-pawn is too weak. White tries for relief with an exchange sacrifice, but Spassky has no problems storming the white fortress.

34.\textit{\text{f}}1x\text{f}4 \textit{\text{xf}}4 35.\textit{\text{f}}2 \textit{\text{c}}7 36.\textit{\text{d}}2 \textit{\text{g}}8 37.\textit{\text{e}}2 \textit{\text{g}}5 38.\textit{\text{e}}xg5 \textit{\text{fxg}}5 39.\textit{\text{f}}3 \textit{\text{b}}6 40.\textit{\text{f}}1 \textit{\text{b}}4!

41.\textit{\text{xb}}4 \textit{\text{xb}}4 42.\textit{\text{g}}2
Intending $d3$.

42...$d3$! $\rightarrow$

Black opens the way for his king.

43.$\textit{xd3}$ $\textit{c7}$ 44.$\textit{f1}$ $\textit{d6}$

After $\textit{c5}$-$d4$ the black king will decisively penetrate the opposing camp.

0–1
Exercises

Ex. 17-1 ★★ △

Ex. 17-4 ★★ △

Ex. 17-2 ★ △

Ex. 17-5 ★★ ▼

Ex. 17-3 ★★★ △

Ex. 17-6 ★★★★ ▼
Exercises

Ex. 17-7

Ex. 17-8

Ex. 17-9

Ex. 17-10

Ex. 17-11

Ex. 17-12
Solutions

Ex. 17-1

I. Zaitsev – B. Spassky
Rostov on Don 1960

1. h5!? (2 points)

White wants to attack. But his strong c3-bishop needs the support of the other pieces.

1. e5+! would not be so good: 1... b4! 2. e6 f6

1 consolation point for the solid 1. f5 e5 2. dxe5 c4, when White has good compensation for the pawn. However, the move in the game sets Black greater problems.

1... b4?

Black does not have time for this!

After 1... c4?! 2. a3 e5 3. dxe5 f6 4. dxfs c4, when White has good compensation for the pawn. However, the move in the game sets Black greater problems.

1... bxc3

Or 2... bxc3 3. dxfs+ h8 4. g6+ exg6 5. fxg6+.

3. d6+ h7

If 3... bxc3, then 4. dxe5+ h8 5. g7+ h6 (5... h8 6. dxfs+–) 6. d7+.

4. c4!!

Black resigned, on account of 4... exf7 5. h1+ g8 6. h8#.

Ex. 17-2

S. Gligoric – W. Lombardy
Munich Olympiad 1958

1. d3! (1 point)

The best solution. The threat is h3–h8#.

1... e6 2. g5 e5 3. h3+ e6 4. gxf6 c4 5. bxc4 bxc4 6. e2 e5 7. e7 a4 8. e5

1–0

Ex. 17-3

U. Andersson – W. Browne
Wijk aan Zee 1983

1. b2! (3 points)

Aimed against ... f6.

White's advantage is not so clear if he chooses one of the following moves:

a) 1. e4 f6 2. e5 e5 3. dxe5 f6

b) 1. e5 f6 2. b4 d7 3. c4 g6 4. exd5 e6 5. bxc4 d5 6. e6 fxe6

c) 1. e3 f6 2. c4 d6 3. dxs e5 4. dxe5 f6 5. dxs e5

You only get 1 consolation point suggesting any of these.

1... a4 2. c4 f6 3. b4 e5 4. f3 fxe5 5. fxe5 f6 6. dxc f7 7. dxfs+ e6 8. e5

See Ex. 17-4.

Ex. 17-4

U. Andersson – W. Browne
Wijk aan Zee 1983

1. e1! (2 points)

The exchange of rooks removes any last dream of counterplay for Black.

1. e2 would not be so good: 1... d4 2. d4 c4 3. dxe6 a6 4. e5 fxe5 5. e6 f6 6. e5

If 1. b1 (1 point) 1... g7 2. f3+! (to prevent ... f6), then 2... g5 3. e6 g4+.

1... fxe1+ 2. e1 1 3. f7+ c2 4. d4 f4 h5!!

5. f3 e6 6. h3 b2 7. f4 c1 8. g4 hgx4

9. hxg4 b2 10. a4 a1 11. b6 b2 12. f5+ gxf5 13. gxfs+ 14. c8 d5+

15. d5 f5 16. d6+ e6 17. f4+ c7 18. xc5 a5 19. c6 e3 20. c7

1–0
1...gxf5!

(2 points)

Control of the c4-square is important, to prevent the white knight reaching the ideal square on e5, as would happen after 1...exf5?!

2.exf5 gxf5 3.c4

Better is 6.dxe1 followed by d3.

6...gxf5 7edx2 ed7 8.dxe1 a6 9.a4++

See Ex. 17-6.

17-6

V.Smyslov – M.Tal
Moscow 1964

1...a5!

(3 points)

Fixing the weakness on a4.

The obvious 1...e8 is not so good, on account of 2.a5! and if 2...bxa5, then 3.d5! followed by d5=. Black cannot breach this fortress!

(1 another point for this variation)

2.dxc2 e8 3.dxc3 c6! 4.dxe3 dxe6 5.d3

In this minor piece ending, the long-legged black bishop is more useful than the white knight.

5...g6 6.a3 h5 7.h3 g4 8.b3 g7 9.a3 f6 10.b3 e8!

The bishop wants to get to d1.

11.dg2

11.df3 h5 12.e5 d1!-- (the bishop reaches d1 with tempo) 13.a3 e6 14.c6

In zugzwang (Tal): 17.gxf5+ gxf5 18.d7 gxf4 19.gxb6 e3+–

11...h5 12.dxc2 e2 13.dxe1 f1 14.d3

After 14.h4 the bishop would return to c6, after which the black king could penetrate the kingside via h5-g4: 14...e2 15.d2 h5

16.c2 e8 17.b3 c6++

14...d3++

but not 14...h6? because of 15.h4=.

The remaining moves of this exciting game follow without comments.

15.g5 g2 16.xh7+ g7 17.g5 g6

18.d2 c6 19.c1 g2 20.d2 h5

21.d6 g4 22.d7 c6 23.d5 xg3

24.d7 d7 25.d5 cxa4 26.dxb6

18...f2 27.xf3 d8 28.c7 c6 29.d6

30.dxc5 a3 31.d3 a2 32.c1 cxf4

33.b2 d3 34.a5 c8 35.c5 f4 36.c6

17-7

M.Botvinnik – V.Smyslov
World Ch(12), Moscow 1954

1.f5!

(2 points)

White plays very energetically. Neither 1..ecl? nor 1.g1 would be so strong, on account of 1...e4.

1..d5 2.g5

(1 another point)

2..d7

If 2...f6, then 3.g2 fxe5 4.b4! d3

5.f6+-.

3.g1 f6 4.exf6 d4++

See Ex. 17-8.

17-8

M.Botvinnik – V.Smyslov
World Ch(12), Moscow 1954

1.f7!

(l point)

Nothing is achieved by 1.fxg4 dxf6 2.g8+ g7=

1...dxf7

1...xf7 clearly loses after 2.xg7+ e8

3.h8+ e7 4.g7+ d6 5.g6+.}

2.d8+ h7 3.exd5 f2+ 4.g2

(1 another point)
Solutions

4...e6
4...c6 5...h4+--
5.e6f6 e6f6 6.e6f2 e6f5+ 7.e6f3 e6f4
8.g4
1-0

Ex. 17-9
A.Alekhine – S.Tartakower
Folkestone Olympiad 1933

1.e3!
(1 point)
1...exc4? would be bad: 2.bxc4 e3 3.d4
Nor would 1...b5 be logical; White can
reply 2.e6.
2.exc5 dxc1 3.b3 dxc3 4.c2 e2+ 5.b2
d4
(another 1 point)
6.e4 exd6--

Ex. 17-10
M.Euwe – S.Reshevsky
World Ch, The Hague/Moscow 1948

1.d4!
(1 point)
This is clearly stronger than 1...e4. Black is
fighting for an advantage. The white bishop
will be restricted by the black pawns.
2.b2 f6+
(1 point)
Protecting the e5-pawn.
3.b5 d7 4.d1 d6 5.f1 c8 6.dcl
c5 7.c3
Or 7.bxc6 xc6+.
7...xc3
Transforming the advantage. Black now has
an advantage in space and controls the only
open file.
8.xc3 c4 9.d1 b6 10.xe2 f5 11.e1
d8+ 

Ex. 17-11
G.Pfeiffer – C.Guimard
Dubrovnik Olympiad 1950

1.b3!
(2 points)
Extending the operational field of the king.
1...axb3 2.xb3
White now plans d4 followed by a4-a5.
2.d7
If 2...h5, then 3.h4+--.
3.d7 d7 4.b6 d7 5.b4 d8 6.b5
c7 7.a4 b7 8.a5 bxa5 9.bxa5 c6
10.a6 h5
10...g6 11.g8+--
11.d7 c8 12.a5 b7
12...f7 13.g5 g8 14.a6+
13.f8 f7 14.b5 c7 15.c5 g8
16.h3 f7 17.d7 e8 18.h4! f7
18...g6 19.g5+-
19.c6 g6+-
See Ex. 17-12.

Ex. 17-12
G.Pfeiffer – C.Guimard
Dubrovnik Olympiad 1950

1.xd5!
(1 point)
This obvious sacrifice quickly decides the
game.
1...exd5 2.xd5 e8
2...d3 3.e6+ c7 4.e5+-
3.e6 a4 4.e5 b3 5.d5 d8 6.d6 c2
7.f6 d3 8.e7+ e8 9.d7+! xxd7 10.f7
1-0
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 26

21 points and above → Excellent
17 points and above → Good
13 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 13 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Closed openings

It is important for club players to build up a suitable opening repertoire. This repertoire should emphasize the strengths of the player and, if possible, disguise his weaknesses.

However, a club player generally does not have a lot of time to deal with numerous specific variations. So he should choose his openings cleverly and perhaps avoid some modern variations for which too much theory has to be learned.

The following examples are only suggestions. You can experiment with these openings, but you do not have to play them if you do not like the type of game they produce.

One of the advantages of this repertoire for White with 1.d4 is the fact that the position is not opened up too soon and that you have the time to mobilize your main forces. In addition, we also have the opportunity to choose some openings which are based less on specific variations and more on strategic ideas.

Torre Attack (1.d4, 2.¥f3, 3.¥g5)
The Torre Attack is a good example of an opening system. White employs this set-up against a lot of different defences. In my experience, the Torre Attack is best against the Nimzo-Indian and Queen’s Indian defences. The system is solid and playable against the King’s Indian Defence, but not particularly aggressive. In that case I recommend systems with e2-e4.

Usually in the Torre Attack, White tries to support his central d4-pawn.

He later plays e3, c3 and develops his queen’s knight to d2. Unlike the Colle-Zukertort Opening (3.e3), the dark-squared bishop is positioned outside the pawn chain, which practically eliminates the danger of being left with a bad bishop.

In the following sample games and in the test you will find some of the important ideas behind this opening.

The Torre Attack is of course also related to the Trompovsky Opening (2.¥g5). So you can play both systems turn about or even combine them.
This old game illustrates the typical attacking ideas for White.

1.d4 dı6 2.dıf3 dı6 3.dıg5 dıc6 4.e3 ćxd4

4...b6? is a known mistake, but one which we will not treat until Ex. 18-8.

5.ćxd4 dı5?

Diagram 18-1

The combination of 4...ćxd4 and 5...dı5 is wrong! If Black wants to play ...dı5 he should not exchange on d4 first. White is the only one to get any advantage, since he can more quickly make use of the semi-open e-file.

5...b6 would be a better move.

5...ćb6 is also interesting. However, White has at his disposal a typical pawn sacrifice: 6.ćbd2 ćxb2 7.đd3 and White has an initiative, Spassky – Osnos, USSR Ch, Leningrad 1963.

6.ćbd2 će7

6...b6 is met by 7.c3 (7.đd3 ća6), and now 7...ća6? would lose to 8.ćxa6 ćxa6 9.ća4†.

7.đd3 ćd7

Black should prefer either 7...ćc6 or 7...0–0.

8.0–0 0–0

If 8...ćb6, intending ...ćb5, then simply 9.će2.

9.ćc3

9.će2?!?

9...ćc6

Better is 9...ćb6 10.će2 ćxb2 11.ćab1 ćxc3

12.ćxb7.

10.će2

Diagram 18-2

White's strategy is simple: control the centre, occupy e5 with the knight, protect the e4-square securely and then attack on the kingside.

10...ćc8?!?

Better is 10...će8.

11.će5 će8

11...ćxe5 is followed by 12.dxe5 će8 13.će3 ćc5

14.ćb3 ćxe3 15.ćxe3†.

12.ćxe7

Nor would 12.ćf4?! be bad, to keep more pieces on the board.
Opening 3

12...\(\text{w}xe7\)
Recapturing with the knight was better.
13.\(f4\)±
If Black now takes on e5, the f-file will be opened.
13...\(\text{sd}f6\)!
Black is playing without a plan himself and he is not trying to hinder his opponent's plans either. Now the white attack on the kingside develops almost without let or hindrance. Black had to play 13...\(\text{sd}d6\), intending ...f5.
14.\(\text{sf}3\)
White commences the typical transfer of the rook to h3.
14...\(\text{g}6\) 15.\(\text{sa}f1\)  \(\text{sg}7\) 16.\(\text{sh}3\)!
16.\(\text{sg}3\)? with the idea of playing f5, is also possible.
16...\(\text{wd}6\)
17.\(\text{g}4\)
Another typical attacking idea, which is justified by the numerous white forces assembled on the kingside. The pieces support the attack and at the same time protect their own king.
17...\(\text{se}7\) 18.\(\text{sd}f3\) \(\text{sh}8\)
After 18...\(\text{sd}g8\) White would have a nice way to win: 19.\(\text{se}xd7\)  \(\text{sd}x7\) 20.\(\text{se}e5\)  f6 21.\(\text{sg}5\)!  fxe5? 22.\(\text{se}xh7\)!  \(\text{se}f6\) 23.dxe5#
19.\(\text{g}5\) \(\text{sh}5\)?
Now White achieves what he wanted and opens lines on the kingside.
19...\(\text{se}8\) 20.\(\text{sg}4\)± would have been slightly better.
20.\(\text{sxh}5\)!  \(\text{sxh}5\) 21.\(\text{sh}4\) \(\text{sg}6\)
Or 21...\(\text{se}8\) 22.\(\text{sxh}5\)  h6 23.f5  exf5 24.\(\text{sxf}5\) with a strong attack.
22.\(\text{sxh}5\) \(\text{sx}e5\) 23.\(\text{fxe}5\) \(\text{sd}f8\)
If 23...\(\text{se}7\), then 24.\(\text{sf}6\)+ threatens \(\text{sh}6\).
24.\(\text{sg}4\)!
White prepares another breakthrough by g5-g6.
24...\(\text{sg}8\)
24...\(\text{sg}8\) is met by 25.\(\text{sxh}7\)±.
After 24...\(\text{se}8\) 25.\(\text{g}xh6\)  hxg6 26.\(\text{dxg}6\)  f6 27.\(\text{xf}8\) \(\text{xf}8\) 28.\(\text{we}6\) Black loses too many pawns to be able to resist.
25.g6! hxg6 26.\&xg6 \&h6
26...fxg6 27.\&xf8\*+-
27.\&xf7\* \&h8 28.\&g6\* \&xg6 29.\&xg6 \&h6
30.\&f3
Two pawns down and with his king exposed, Black has no chance and he resigned. 30...\&g8 is simply answered by 31.\&h3\*+-.

G.Kasparov – F.De la Fuente
Galicia simultaneous 1991

1.d4 \&f6 2.\&f3 e6 3.\&g5 d5 4.\&bd2 \&e7 5.e3 c5
6.c3 \&bd7 7.\&f3

Diagram 18-6
As you can see, even the strongest player in the world plays this variation. White develops the pieces according to the standard pattern and is ready to occupy e5.

7...b6
Black chooses a very popular and harmonious set-up.

7...\&c7 is met either by 8.\&f4 or by 8.\&c1, intending c3-c4.

8.\&e5?!
Kasparov improves on known theory. Normally here White first castles: 8.0-0 \&b7 9.\&f4 \&e7 10.dxe5 \&d7 11.\&xe7 \&xe7 12.f4 f6 13.exf6 \&xe7 14.e4 with very interesting play.

8...\&xe5 9.dxe5 \&d7 10.\&xe7 \&xe7 11.f4 \&b7
12.\&e2
White wants to prepare the move e3-e4.

12...f6 13.exf6 gxf6
13...\&xf6 14.\&b5\* \&d7 15.\&f3 is good for White, since he possesses the excellent e5-square.

14.e4 0-0 15.exd5 \&xd5

Diagram 18-7
16.\&e4!
After the exchange of light-squared bishops Black is left without effective counterplay. White can make use of the weakening of the light squares around the black castled position in order to penetrate with the queen.

16...\&d6 17.0-0 \&c6
17...\&b8 would be better.

18.b4! \&hg8 19.b5 \&b7 20.c4 \&xe4 21.\&xe4 \&xe4
Diagram 18-8

In only a few moves White has strengthened his position on the queenside. Black gets no time to counter on the g-file.

21...\textit{\textit{b}}b8 22.b\textit{\textit{d}}d1 \textit{g}g6 23.g\textit{\textit{3}}

23.\textit{\textit{d}}d6 would be even stronger, but in simultaneous play Kasparov proceeds more cautiously than usual.

23...\textit{\textit{e}}dg8 24.\textit{\textit{e}}d3 \textit{f}5 25.\textit{\textit{d}}d6 \textit{c}7 26.\textit{\textit{f}}d1

Amongst other things, White is threatening simply to play a4-a5 on the queenside.

26...\textit{\textit{f}}f6 27.\textit{\textit{h}}xe6 \textit{g}g4

Or 27...\textit{\textit{e}}e4 28.\textit{\textit{e}}e5+–.

28.\textit{\textit{h}}xf5 \textit{g}g6 29.\textit{\textit{e}}e4 \textit{d}d7 30.\textit{\textit{c}}c6

30.\textit{\textit{f}}f7 \textit{\textit{h}}xf7 31.\textit{\textit{d}}d8+ \textit{g}g7 32.\textit{\textit{a}}a8 leads directly to mate.

30...\textit{\textit{\textit{w}}}xc6 31.bxc6 a6 32.\textit{\textit{e}}e1 \textit{\textit{d}}d8 33.c7+! \textit{\textit{\textit{w}}}xc7

34.\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{d}}}d}e8+ \textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{e}}}exe8} 35.\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{d}}}exe8} b5 36.\textit{\textit{d}}d5 \textit{\textit{e}}c6 37.\textit{\textit{\textit{d}}}xb5 \textit{axb5} 38.\textit{\textit{\textit{d}}}dd8 \textit{\textit{\textit{b}}}b6 39.\textit{\textit{\textit{d}}}b8+ \textit{\textit{\textit{a}}}a5 40.\textit{\textit{\textit{d}}}ec8

1–0

Naturally Kasparov’s opponent did not play very strongly in this game, but it is very difficult to find a suitable antidote to the white plan.

For those players who prefer slightly more aggressive and less well known systems, I suggest the Barry Attack (1.d4 \textit{\textit{\textit{d}}}f6 2.\textit{\textit{d}}}f3 g6 3.\textit{\textit{c}}c3 d5 4.\textit{\textit{f}}f4). This opening can be played against the King’s Indian Defence, or against the Grünfeld Defence. In combination with the Veresov Opening (1.d4 d5 2.\textit{\textit{c}}c3) you then have an almost complete repertoire with 1.d4.

The strategic ideas of the Barry Attack and the Torre Attack are similar. White often takes advantage of the control of the centre and obtains an outpost on e5 for his knight. Unfortunately in one chapter we cannot discuss all the ideas of this opening, but in the test you will find some examples of the Barry Attack.
Exercises

Ex. 18-7

Ex. 18-10

Ex. 18-8

Ex. 18-11

Ex. 18-9

Ex. 18-12
Solutions

Ex. 18-1
G. Kasparov – S. Martinovic
Baku 1980
1.d4 achine 6. 2. a f3 g6 3. a g5 5.g7 4. a bd2 d6 5.e4 0–0 6. c3 a bd7 7. a c2 e5 8. dxe5 dxe5 9.0–0 b6 10. a c1 a b7 11. a c2 h6 12. a h4 a c7 13. a f1 a ef8 14.b4± a6 15. a c4 a ac8?!
Diagram Ex. 18-1
16.a4!±
(2 points)
A typical move, which gains even more space on the queenside.
16.a d1 (1 point) is not so strong. Black can reply 16...b5 17. a a5 a a8, intending to play ...c5 with counterplay.
16...a e6
If 16...c5, then 17.b5±.
17. a f2 h5 18.f3 a f6?!
Better is 18...a f8.
19. a f2! a g5 20. a e3 a d6?! 21.c4!± c6
22. a b3 a d7 23.c5 b5 24. a ed1 a e7
See Ex. 18-2.

Ex. 18-3
M. Hebden – L. Williams
British Ch, Swansea 1995
1.d4 achine 6. 2. a f3 g6 3. a c3 d5 4. a f4 a g7 5.e3 0–0 6. a c2 a g4 7. a e5 a xe2 8. a xe2 c6 9.h4 a bd7 10.0–0–0 h5 11.g4 a xf4 12. a f3 e6 13.h5 f6?
Diagram Ex. 18-3
14. a xg6!
14...a e8
14...h xg6 loses after 15.a xe6 a h7
16.h xg6 a a g7 17.f5!± a g5 18.a e3± a xg4
19. a d g1 a x f5 20. a h5 #.
15.h 6
Or 15. a h4+-.
15...a xg6 16.h xg7 a x g7 17.a e3 f5 18.g5 a e7 19. a h3 a h8 20. a dh1 a ag8 21. a e2 a e8 22. a a3! a x h3 23.a x h3 a6 24. a d6 a f7 25.a c7 a e7 26. a g1!± a e8 27. a f3 a g8 28. a x b7 a b8 29. a x c6
1–0

Ex. 18-2
G. Kasparov – S. Martinovic
Baku 1980
25. a c4!
(2 points)
The knight is heading for d6.
Other good moves such as 25. a a5? a c7± or 25. a f5?± earn 1 point.
25...a c7 26.a d6+– a b8 27.a x b5 c x b5
28. a x b7 a x b7 29.a a2 a b8 30. a a5 a x a2
31. a x a2 a a7
31...a d7 is met by 32. a d5+–.
32. a c6 a a8 33.a c2 a x b4 34.a d8+ a g7
35. a b6 a x a5 36.a x a5 a x c6 37.a x b8! a x b8
38.a x c6 b 4 39.a c 7
1–0

Ex. 18-4
D. Pira – M. Hebden
Seville 1987
1.d4 achine 6. 2. a f3 g6 3. a c3 d5 4. a f4 a g7 5.e3 0–0 6. a c2 a g4 7. a e5 a xe2 8. a xe2 c6 9.h4 a bd7 10.0–0–0 h5 11.g4 a xf4 12. a f3 e6 13.h5 f6?
Diagram Ex. 18-4
14. a x g6!
14...a e8
14...h x g6 loses after 15.a xe6 a h7
16.h x g6 a a g7 17.f5!± a g5 18.a e3± a x g4
19. a d g1 a x f5 20. a h5 #.
15.h 6
Or 15. a h4+–.
15...a x g6 16.h x g7 a x g7 17.a e3 f5 18.g5 a e7 19. a h3 a h8 20. a dh1 a ag8 21. a e2 a e8 22. a a3! a x h3 23.a x h3 a6 24. a d6 a f7 25.a c7 a e7 26. a g1!± a e8 27. a f3 a g8 28. a x b7 a b8 29. a x c6
1–0
Solutions

Ex. 18-5

T.Petrosian – V.Liublinsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1949

1. d4  df6 2. d3  e6 3. g5  c5 4. e3  e7 5. bd2  d5 6. c3  bd7 7. d3  0-0?! 8. e5! de5 (8... ec8 9. h4) 9. dxe5  d7 10. e4?! (10. xe7 xe7 11. f4 f6 12. exf6 xf6 13. f3?! e5 14. b5+?) 10... f5! (10... f6?! 11. h5 g6!! [11... f5+!] 12. xg6 hxg6 13. xg6 f8 14. h4 fxe5 15. h3+ f8 16. h6 f6! 17. h3+?)

Diagram Ex. 18-5

11. h4!

A natural attacking move.

11... c4 12. c2 b5

For 12... c5, see Petrosian – Bannik below.

13. f3

13. g3?

13... c5?

13... b4 is followed by 14. g5! xg5 (14... c5? 15. h5 h6 16. g6+-) 15. hxg5 and if 15... e7? then 16. xh7! xh7 17. h4+! g8 18. g6 f6 19. exf6 gxf6 20. d6! g7 21. h7+!++

14. g4?! 14. d4? would be a solid alternative.

14... b4 15. gxf5

15. xb4 does not promise much: 15... d3+ 16. xd3 xb4 17. f1 cxd3 18. xd3 fxe4 (or 18... a5!?) 15. d4? was again worth considering.

15. exf5 16. g5 g6?

White has been taking risks. The principled continuation would now have been 16... h6! 17. xh5 g6! (or 17... e8?!). Instead of that, Black just weakens his position. See Ex. 18-6.

Ex. 18-7

T.Petrosian – A.Bannik

USSR 1951

1. d4  df6 2. d3  e6 3. g5  c5 4. e3  e7 5. bd2 d5 6. c3  bd7 7. d3  0-0?! 8. e5! de5 9. dxe5  d7 10. f4?! f5 11. h4! c4 12. c2 c5?! 13. f3! (13. g4 c4=) 13... d7 14. d4 (14. g5?! 14... b6 15. g5?! (15. b1!?=) 15... e7? (15... xg5! is correct: 16. hxg5 bxb2 17. e7 h8 18. h5+! g8 19. g6 wxa1 20. e2 f7?? and the white attack has been thwarted) 16. xe7 xe7 17. xh1! a4 18. b3 cxb3 19. axb3 d7 20. f4= c8 (20... h5??) 21. d2! a6

Diagram Ex. 18-7

22. g4!

A powerful attacking move, which forces the opponent to exchange off his strong knight.

22... d4+ 23. e4 fxe4

The white knight is stronger than the opposing bishop.

24. a2 c7 25. h1! c8 26. a5 d7?

26... c5 had to be played: 27. c5 d3= 27. b4 d3 28. g1!

Of course not 28... f5? exf5 29. e6 c7 with counterplay.

28... b3 29. e4! c8 30. h5 d7 31. b3 c5 b5 32. b2 cxe6 33. g2 e7 34. c6! wxd6 35. cxf6 cxd6 36. e7 e5 37. cxe5 cxe5 38. xh6 gxh6 39. g6 g5 40. g3 d4 41. f3 e6=−
Solutions

Ex. 18-8

T. Petrosian – J. Kozma
Munich Olympiad 1958

1. d4 ♘f6 2. ♘f3 e6 3. ♘g5 c5 4. e3 b6?! (3 points)

Diagram Ex. 18-8

5. d5!

White takes the chance to strengthen his position in the centre.

5... exd5 6. ♘c3 ♘b7 7. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 8. ♘xf6 ♘xf6 9. ♘xd5±

(3 points)

13. ♘e7 11.0-0-0

11.0-0-0±

11... ♘d8 12. ♘d2 0-0 13. ♘c3

13. ♘hd1 b5 would not be so clear.

13... ♘a5 14. ♘e2 ♘e6 15. ♘hd1 ♘xd5

16. ♘xd5 d6 17. ♘d2

After 17. ♘g5?! ♘xg5 18. ♘xg5 f5 the white rook on g5 is misplaced.

17... ♘f5 18. ♘f4 g6 19. ♘g3 ♘f6 20. e4 fxe4

21. ♘xe4 ♘xe6 22. ♘f3 ♘g7

22... ♘c4? 23. ♘d5 d5 24. ♘xd5 ♘xd5

25. ♘xd5 ♘d6±

23. b3 ♘c6 24. ♘d5 ♘b8 25. ♘f2

Intending 26. ♘g4 ♘f6 27. ♘e4+-.

25... ♘h5

25... ♘f8? 26. ♘d5 ♘e2 27. ♘d3 ♘de8±

26. ♘d2! ♘f8 27. ♘d5 ♘e7 28. ♘e4 ♘a6

29. ♘c3! ♘c7? (1 point)

29... ♘c4! would be more resilient: 30. bxc4 ♘c5 31. ♘d4+ (Petrosian)

30. ♘f3 ♘xd5!! 31. ♘xd5+! ♘de8 32. ♘e1

33. ♘e2 b5 34. h3 a5 35. g4 hxg4±

36. hxg4 ♘e7 37. f5 ♘e5 38. ♘xe5 dxe5

39. ♘d2 ♘f8?

39... gxfs5±

40. ♘d7 ♘f7 41. ♘xe7!

1-0

Ex. 18-9

B. Spassky – V. Osnos
USSR Ch. Leningrad 1963

1. d4 ♘f6 2. ♘f3 e6 3. ♘g5 c5 4. e3 ♘b6 5. ♘bd2 ♘xb2 6. ♘d3 cxd4 (after 6... ♘c6 7.0-0 cxd4 8. ♘b1 ♘xa2 9. exd4 White has compensation for the pawns) 7. exd4 ♘c3 8.0-0 d5 9. ♘e1 ♘e7 (9... ♘c6 10. ♘b1 [intending 11. ♘b3 and 12. c4] 10... ♘xd4 11. ♘xd4 ♘xd4 12. ♘e4! with a dangerous attack) 10. ♘e3 ♘c7 11. ♘e5 ♘c6 12. ♘c3 ♘xe5 (12...0-0? runs into 13. ♘xf6 ♘xf6 14... ♘xh7!!; Black could try 12... ♘d7? followed by ... ♘f8 and ...0-0-0) 13. dxe5 ♘g8 (13... ♘d7 14. ♘xe7 ♘xe7 15. ♘g4 gives White an attack – Bondarevsky) 14. ♘f3 h6 (14... ♘d7??) 15. ♘f4 ♘d7 16. ♘d4 ♘g5 (16...0-0-0? 17. a4) 17. ♘xg5 hxg5 18. ♘g4

♘xc3 19. ♘b3 ♘h6 20. ♘xg5 ♘xb4 21. ♘g3

♘f8 (21... ♘e7 22. ♘e3, followed by ♘c1; 21...g6 22. ♘h3 ♘f8 23. ♘c1) 22. ♘c1 f6

22... ♘c8 23. ♘xc8 ♘xc8 24. ♘b5 ♘d7 25. ♘c3!+–) 23. ♘f3 f5

24. ♘c5!

Diagram Ex. 18-9

(1 point)

White attacks very energetically.

24...f4 25. ♘g6+ ♘e7 26. ♘a3!

(another 1 point)

Black resigned, since he has no satisfactory defence against ♘xb7#.

Ex. 18-10

A. Yusupov – K. Bischoff
Munich 1990

1. d4 ♘f6 2. ♘f3 e6 3. ♘g5 h6 4. ♘xf6 ♘xf6 5. e4 d6 6. ♘c3 ♘d7? 7. ♘d2?! a6 8.0-0-0

♘e7 (8...c5? 9.e5) 9. ♘d3 g6 (9...c5 10. dxc5 gives White some pressure down the d-file)

10. ♘he1 ♘g7 11. h4 0-0 (11...c5?? 12. e5 d5 13. dxc5 ♘xc5±) 12. e5 d5 13. ♘e2 c5 14. c3

cxd4 15. ♘exd4? (after 15. cxd4 ♘b6?; Black can seek counterplay with ... ♘d7-b5) 15... ♘c5

16. ♘b1 ♘d7
Diagram Ex. 18-10

17.h5!!

(1 point)

White weakens his opponent's castled position with this move.

White has an extra pawn and the better position.

Ex. 18-11

A. Yusupov – S. Hmadi

Tunis izr 1985

1.d4 ♞f6 2.♘f3 c6 3.♗g5 c5 4.e3 ♙e7 5.c3 b6 6.♗d3 ♘b7 7.0-0 ♞c6 8.♗bd2 0-0 9.e4
(Other possibilities are 9.♗e1, 9.♗f2 or 9.a3)
9...cxd4 10.♗xd4 (Black can meet 10.cxd4 with 10...♗b4= Petrosian, or 10...h6! 11.♗h4 ♞h5= Adorjan) 10...d5 (after 10...♗e5 there follows 11.♖c2 d5 12.f4± when Black must avoid 12...♗eg4 13.e5 ♗e3 14.exf6!–+)
11.♗xc6 ♘xc6 12.e5 ♘e4 13.♗xe7 ♘xe7 14.♗f3 ♘f6 15.♗e2 ♘b7 16.exf6 ♗xf6 17.♗ae1 ♞ad8 18.♖c2 ♘h6

Diagram Ex. 18-11

19.♖c3!? (2 points)

White strengthens the position of the knight on f3 and prepares for operations down the e-file.

19...♗xf4 20.♗xe2 ♘h5

20...♗df8 is met by 21.♗xe4±.

21.♗d4 ♗xe2 22.♗xe2 ♘f6 23.♗e1 e5? 24.♗b3 a5 25.f3 a4 26.♗c1 ♗d6 27.♗xe5+-

White has an extra pawn and the better position.

Ex. 18-12

J. Timman – E. Geller

Linares 1983

1.♗f3 ♗f6 2.d4 d5 3.♗g5 e6 4.♗bd2 ♕c7 5.e3 0-0?! (5...♗bd7) 6.♗d3 b6 7.♗e5 ♗b7

Diagram Ex. 18-12

8.♗xf6!? (2 points)

An interesting idea, which also belongs in our positional arsenal. Before playing f4, White swaps off the f6-knight, so that it can't occupy the e4-square.

8.f4 (1 point) is not so accurate, due to 8...♗e4=. Also 1 point for the moves 8.♗f3 and 8.0-0.

8...♗xf6 9.f4 ♖xe5! 10.fxe5 ♘h4+ 11.g3 ♘h6 12.♗e2 ♗c6 13.0-0 ♗b4 14.♗f4! ♗xd3 15.♗xd3 a5 16.♗f3 ♗a6 17.♗c3 ♗c2

17...c5 18.♗xc5 ♙f8 19.c6±

18.♗c6 ♘h5 19.♗g2 ♗a8 20.♗e1 ♗a6

21.g4 ♗g6 22.♗h1

22...♗f6

22...♗e7 23.g5 ♘h5 24.♗g2 ♗b8 25.♗f2 ♗g6 26.♗f6 ♗e4 27.♗f4 ♗g6 28.♗c1 ♗c8?

29.♗f6 ♗e4 30.g6+- ♗f8

30...♗xg6 31.♗f4+- or 30...♗xf6 31.♗xf6 ♗xe8 32.♗xf7+ ♗xf7 33.♗g5+– (Timman).

31.♗f4 ♗xg6

31...♗xg6 32.♗gl ♘h5 33.♗h4 ♘f5 34.♗g5+– (Timman)

32.♗xe4 ♗xe4 33.♗xe4 c5

33...♗c4 34.♗g4 h5 35.♗xg6 ♘f6 36.♗xf7+! ♗xf7 37.♗g3+– (Timman)

34.♗c4 1-0
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 23

19 points and above → Excellent
15 points and above → Good
11 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Contents
✓ Reasons for clearing
✓ Clearing a square
✓ Clearing a file
✓ Clearing a diagonal

Line clearing

It is not only our opponent's pieces which can cause us problems during a game – sometimes our own pieces get in our way. Then the only thing which will help is a clearing operation. We try to get the offending piece out of the way, if possible with tempo, in order to make use of an important square, rank, file or diagonal with our other forces. You have already come across some examples of clearing combinations. Of course, clearing is employed in conjunction with other tactical ideas. For example, we have already seen a lot of ideas involving clearing when discussing such subjects as the discovered attack or combinations along a rank or file.

Here are some more typical examples.

Diagram 19-1
N.N. – Mason
USA 1848

1...\(\text{b}5\)!
Black clears the 8th rank for the queen, in order to execute a well-known mating combination (Damiano's mate).
2.axb5 \(\text{Q}h\text{g}3\)†! 3.\(\text{Q}xg3\) \(\text{Q}xg3\)† 4.\(h\text{xg3}\) \(h\text{xg3}\)† 5.\(g\text{g1}\) \(c5\)† 6.\(b\text{xc5}\) \(h\text{h1}\)†!
Of course, this combination is not just a clearing one, but also a combination involving decoying.
7.\(\text{b}x\text{b1}\) \(\text{h}8\)† 8.\(\text{g}1\) \(\text{h}1\)†! 9.\(\text{b}x\text{h1}\) \(\text{h}8\)† 10.\(\text{h}7\) \(\text{b}x\text{h7}\)† 11.\(\text{h}5\) \(\text{b}x\text{h5}\)† 12.\(\text{g}1\) \(\text{h}2\)#

Diagram 19-2
G.Lisitsin – E.Zagoriansky
Moscow 1936

White needs the \(g7\)-square for the queen. So there follows:
1.\(\text{h}7\)†!
With mate next move.
1–0
Capablanca prepares a clearing combination.

1...e5!

The simplest route to victory. Now when Black moves the e4-knight, he will be threatening mate by means of ...e5-e4.

2.\(\text{Exa1}\)

2.dxe5 loses to 2...\(\text{Ea6c4}\) followed by ...\(\text{Ec5}\#\).

2...\(\text{Ea6c4}\)

This is even stronger than 2...\(\text{Ea2f2}!!\) 3.\(\text{Exxf2}\) e4?! 4.\(\text{Ea4}\) dxe4\#-+

3.\(\text{Exa5}\) \(\text{Ec5}\#\)

And the black e-pawn will deliver mate.

0-1

Clearing a square

White clears the e4-square and at the same time attacks the f7-pawn. Thus the white queen gets the chance to reach the kingside quickly.

1.\(\text{Eg6}!!\) \(\text{We5}\)

Now White wins material.

But 1...fxg6 loses after 2.\(\text{Wf4}\). For example,

2...\(\text{Exxb4}\) 3.\(\text{Wh4}\) 4.\(\text{Wh7}\) 5.\(\text{Wh8}\) 6.\(\text{Exg7}\) 7.\(\text{Wh8}\) 8.\(\text{Exg6}\) 9.\(\text{Exxe6}\).

1...\(\text{Exb7}\) can be met by either 2.\(\text{Exc4}++\) or 2.\(\text{Exf7}\) \(\text{Exf7}\) 3.\(\text{Exxe6}\).

2.\(\text{Exf7}\) \(\text{Exf7}\) 3.\(\text{Exf7}\) \(\text{Exf5}\) 4.\(\text{Efd1}\)++ \(\text{Exd1}\) 5.\(\text{Exd1}\) \(\text{Exf7}\) 6.\(\text{Exc8}\) \(\text{Exh7}\) 7.\(\text{Exxa6}\) \(\text{Exf3}\) 8.\(\text{Efd3}\)

1-0
White clears the h5-square for the rook to create a mating threat.

1. \( \text{g6}! \)

Black resigned, since the only way to prevent mate (1...\( \text{f8} \)) involves a great loss of material.

White clears the c7-square for the bishop and delivers mate in three moves.

1. \( \text{c6}^\dagger! \)

Black resigned, in view of 1...\( \text{xc6} \) 2.\( \text{c5}^\dagger \text{a5} \) 3.\( \text{c7}^\# \).

The clearing of a square is often achieved by a pawn move.

Opening the d-file and clearing the e4-square for the knight.

1.e5!

1...\( \text{dxe5} \) 2.\( \text{xd7} \) \( \text{xd7} \) 3.\( \text{e4}! \) \( \text{xe4} \)

3...\( \text{g7} \) 4.\( \text{fxg6} \) \( \text{fg6} \) 5.\( \text{h6}^\dagger \) leaves Black with no hope.

4.\( \text{xe7} \) \( \text{g5} \)

Nor does this trick help Black.

5.\( \text{xd8}^+ \) \( \text{gxh4} \) 6.\( \text{hxh4} \) \( \text{dd2} \)

Or 6...\( \text{d6} \) 7.\( \text{d1}^+ \).

7.\( \text{d1} \) \( \text{xc4} \) 8.\( \text{xd7} \) \( \text{xb2} \) 9.\( \text{f6} \) \( \text{c4} \) 10.\( \text{xc6} \)

1-0
1. c6!
   The double threat of a fork with $\text{Qc5}\#$ as well as the advance $c6-c7$ is, of course, too much for Black.
   1. ... exf4
   2. $\text{Qxc6}$
   2. ... $\text{Qe7}$ is simply met by 3. $\text{Qc5}+$.
   3. $\text{Qc5}+$ $\text{Qd6}$ 4. $\text{Qxb3}$ $\text{cxb5}$ 5. $\text{h4}$ $\text{Qc6}$ 6. $\text{Qxc6}$ $\text{Qxc6}$
   7. $\text{Qg4}!+$ - b4 8. $\text{Qxb4}$ $\text{Qb5}$ 9. $\text{Qd4}$
   Black resigned. 9. ... $\text{Qxb4}$ is followed by 10. $\text{Qc6}\#$ and then $\text{Qxa7}$.

**Clearing a file**

Diagram 19-9

**P.Ostermeier – S.Hamann**

Reykjavik 1975

White sacrifices his pawns, in order to open files against the black king.

1. h4 $\text{Qxh4}$
   Otherwise White will play g4-g5.
   2. f6! $\text{Qxf6}$ 3. g5! $\text{Qxg5}$
   3. ... $\text{hxg5}$ 4. $\text{Qh8}#$
   4. $\text{Qxg5}$ $\text{Qxg5}$
   4. ... $\text{hxg5}$ 5. $\text{Qh8}#$
   5. $\text{Qxf7}#$

Diagram 19-10

**H.Westerinen – B.Larsen**

Havana 1967

1. ... $\text{Qf3}\!+$
   Black decisively clears the d-file for the rook.
   2. $\text{gxf3}$ $\text{Qd5}+$ 3. $\text{Qcl}$ $\text{Qxe1}#$
Clearing a diagonal

Diagram 19-11

F.Sideif-Sade – Z.Sturua
Borzhomi 1984

1... $a6$

Black opens the long diagonal a8-h1 for his strongest piece and prepares the further blow ... $d2\#$. There is no sensible defence, so White resigned. A possible continuation would be 2. $xa6$ $d2\#$ 3. $xd2$ $h1\#$.

Diagram 19-12

P.Romanovsky – I.Rabinovich
Moscow 1935

Black has just taken the white knight on d5. Instead of recapturing the knight, White plays a clever intermediate move which clears the d1-h5 diagonal for his queen.

1. $b5!!$ $h6$

It is not possible to meet the threat of $xh7\#$ without loss of material. 1... $xb5$ loses after 2. $xh7\#$ 3. $h5\#$ 4. $xh6\#$.

2. $xd7$

2. $xh6$ would also be good.

2... $xg5$ 3. $exd5$ $d8$

3... $xh4$ 4. $xe8++$

4. $xh7\#$ $xh7$ 5. $h5\#$ 6. $h4$ $g4$ 7. $xg4$ $xg4$ 8. $xg4$ $xd7$ 9. $f6$

1-0
Exercises

Ex. 19-1

Ex. 19-2

Ex. 19-3

Ex. 19-4

Ex. 19-5

Ex. 19-6
Exercises
Solutions

Ex. 19-1

Meemsoth – Heisenbuettel
Bremen 1958

1. Ec5!+-
File clearing.
1... $xc5 2. Exh7† $xh7 3. $g7#  (1 point)

Ex. 19-2

Popov – Atanasov
Bulgaria 1954

1. Qe6!! fxe6 2. $g5† $f7 3. Exh5† $g8
If 3... $f6, then 4. $f3† (4. $g5† also wins)
4... $g6 5. $g4† $xh6 6. $g2+-.
4. $g4† $f7 5. dxe6†  (1 point)

Black resigned, on account of 5... $e8 (or
5... $f6 6. $g5† $g7 7. Exe7† $h6 8. $g5#)
6. $g8† $f8 7. $xf8#.

Ex. 19-3

D. Bronstein – A. Medina Garcia
Gothenburg 1955

1. d6!  (1 point)
This clears the d5-square for the knight.
Black resigned, because after 1... $xd6 2. $d5
the black queen is trapped.

Ex. 19-4

J. Kliavinsh – V. Zhuravliov
Riga 1968

1. $d5†!  (1 point)
White clears the third rank for the queen.
1... $xc5 2. $a3† $d8 3. $d6† $c8 4. $c1†
1-0

Ex. 19-5

V. Zilberstein – Tulin
USSR 1982

1. e5!
White brings the queen to h4 with gain of
 tempo.
1... dxe5 2. $h4  (1 point)
Black resigned, since 2... $e7 is met by
3. $e4+-.

Ex. 19-6

R. Hübner – J. Penrose
Cheltenham 1971

1. $g6!  (1 point)
Black resigned. White has cleared the c6-
 square for the knight, and if 1... hxg6, then of
course 2. $c6†+-.
No better is 1... $e5 2. fxe5 hxg6 3. e6+-
and the white passed pawn cannot be
stopped.
(another 1 point for this variation)

Ex. 19-7

Prokhorovich – G. Ravinsky
Moscow 1958

1. b3!  (1 point)
Clearing the b4-square. Now after 2.axb3
there is simply 2... $b4+-.
Instead 1... $e7? would be bad, due to
2. $e4. But first 1... $b6†, and only then
2... b3! would be just as good.
0-1

Ex. 19-8

A. Hennings – V. Savon
Orebro 1966

The white attack looks very strong. But there
is an unexpected defensive resource.
Solutions

1...\textit{f2}!  
\hspace{3cm} (1 point)

1...\textit{f6} loses after 2.gxf6++.  
2.\textit{xf2} \textit{d8}!!  
\hspace{3cm} (another 1 point)

3.\textit{wc3} \textit{f8}! 4.\textit{xf8}t \textit{xf8} 5.\textit{xf8}t \textit{xf8}+  
6.\textit{b2} \textit{e7} 7.\textit{b3} \textit{d6} 8.\textit{c4} \textit{c5} 9.\textit{f5} \textit{g6}  
10.\textit{h5} \textit{gxf5} 11.\textit{xf5} \textit{d6} 12.\textit{g6} \textit{e7} 13.\textit{h4} \textit{b4}  
e4 14.\textit{c3} \textit{c6} 15.\textit{d4} \textit{xf5}
0–1

Ex. 19-9

L.Zinn – E.Sveshnikov  
Decin 1974

1...\textit{f7}!  
\hspace{3cm} (1 point)

Clearing the long diagonal. White resigned,  
in view of 2.\textit{xf7} \textit{d4}t 3.\textit{xd4} \textit{xcg2}#.

Ex. 19-10

A.Shashin – Kolevit  
Moscow 1974

1.\textit{f4}!!  
\hspace{3cm} (2 points)

Preparing \textit{c1}+.  
Of course 1.\textit{e2} is bad, due to 1...\textit{xe4}+.  

1.\textit{c5}  
Clearing the d8-square for the king.  
After 1...\textit{xcg4} Black gets mated: 2.\textit{c1}+  
\textit{c5} 3.\textit{xc5}#

2.\textit{xc1}+ \textit{d8} 3.\textit{g5}+ \textit{c7} 4.\textit{d6}!!  
\hspace{3cm} (another 1 point)

Black is threatened with \textit{c8}# and after 4...\textit{xd6} White simply plays 5.\textit{xf5}.

1–0

Ex. 19-11

M.Matulovic – G.Trinov  
Belgrade 1965

1.\textit{xf7}+ \textit{xf7} 2.\textit{c7}+–  
\hspace{3cm} (1 point)

2...\textit{ab8} 3.\textit{xd7}+ \textit{g6}  
Or 3...\textit{g8} 4.\textit{c4}+ \textit{h8} 5.\textit{f7} \textit{f8}  
6.\textit{bxb7}+–.

4.\textit{h4}+! \textit{h7}  
4...\textit{ehxh4} loses after 5.\textit{g4} \textit{g5} 6.\textit{f5}+  
\textit{h5} 7.\textit{f3}.

5.\textit{g4} \textit{ed8} 6.\textit{c7} \textit{xd4} 7.\textit{f5}  
Black resigned, on account of 7...\textit{xd2}  
8.\textit{xg7}+ \textit{h8} 9.\textit{g6}.

Ex. 19-12

K.Kling – R.Erler  
Correspondence game 1976

1.\textit{g5}!  
\hspace{3cm} (2 points)

Clearing the g1-a7 diagonal for the white  
queen.

1...\textit{b6}  
1...\textit{xg5} is met by 2.\textit{a7}+–.

2.\textit{xd8} \textit{xd8} 3.\textit{f4}+
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 17

- 15 points and above → Excellent
- 12 points and above → Good
- 9 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 9 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Endgame technique

We have already discussed the peculiarities of the endgame and the general principles of endgame play in Chapter 2 of *Build Up Your Chess 2*. Here we shall take a more in-depth look at endgame situations in which one side has a stable positional or slight material advantage.

In order to be certain of winning a superior endgame, we need knowledge about the best way to proceed and how to play in such situations. We shall deal further with this *chess technique* or the *technique of converting an advantage* in many other chapters (see also Chapter 13 of *Build Up Your Chess 1*).

The examples which we considered in the aforementioned chapter, 'General endgame principles', also illustrate, of course, many important points of endgame technique. The principles which we shall discuss here can also be very useful in many middlegame situations. But in the endgame this technique can be seen more explicitly and clearly.

The correct way to proceed in superior positions
Whenever you have an advantage, you must display *even more concentration than usual* in your play! Some players commit a major error as soon as they achieve an advantage. They think that they have already won the game! As Dr. Tarrasch once said: 'It is very hard to win a game, but very easy to lose one!'

The four golden principles of technique
The whole art of the endgame is based on these principles:

1) **do not allow any counterplay**: pay attention and spot threats by your opponent in good time;

2) **do not be too hasty**: if your opponent has no counterplay, then first improve your position as much as possible and only then look for a concrete solution;

3) **create a second weakness**: this makes defence even more difficult for your opponent;

4) **aim for the correct sort of exchanges**: the side with a material advantage should try to exchange
Endgame technique

pieces, whereas the defending side normally aims to exchange pawns.

The three endgames which we shall now examine are very important for the theory of rook endings. But at the same time they illustrate some of the golden principles of technique mentioned above.

**Diagram 20-1**

1. **a5!**

White first of all advances the rook’s pawn, so that the knight’s pawn can shelter his king from checks along the ranks. Here we can see how important it is to take into account the possibilities open to your opponent.

1. b5? is wrong, on account of 1... ♞a5 and Black blockades the pawns, making White's task considerably more difficult.

1. ... **g6**

If 1... ♞h1, then 2. ♞d6+ ♞a7 (2... ♞b5? 3. ♞b6#) 3. ♞c4 ♞h7 4. b5. Just look at the optimal position adopted by the rook! On the d-file it is ready to protect the king from attacks from the side. 4... ♞h4 5. ♞d4+-

2. ♞a4 ♞g7

2... ♞g4 is followed by 3. ♞d6+ ♞a7 (3... ♞b7 4. a6+ ♞a7 5. ♞a5 ♞g5+ 6. b5+-) 4. a6 ♞g5 (4... ♞g1 5. ♞a5!) 5. b5 ♞g1 6. ♞d7+ ♞a8 (6... ♞b6 7. ♞b7+-) 7. ♞a5+-.

3. b5+ ♞a7 4. a6!

Since White cannot yet force the exchange of rooks, ‘all’ that is left for him to do is to strengthen his position further (principle 2).

4. ♞b6 5. ♞d6+ ♞a7 6. ♞a5 ♞g5

Or 6... ♞g8 7. b6+ ♞a8 8. a7! ♞b7 (8... ♞g5+ 9. ♞a6+-) 9. ♞d7+ ♞a8 10. ♞a6+-.

7. ♞d7+ ♞a8 8. ♞b6

You should always play with great care and attention (principle 1). After 8. a7?? there would follow 8... ♞xb5!=.

8. ♞g6+

8... ♞g8 9. ♞d5 ♞b8+ 10. ♞a5 ♞a7 (10... ♞g8 11. b6+-) 11. b6+-

9. ♞c5 ♞g1

Or 9... ♞g5+ 10. ♞d5 ♞g6 11. b6+-.
(A...g1) 22.f6+ g8 23.h4 g1 and now 24.b4?? would even lose after 24...h5!.

21.a1

21...g8 transpose to the game after 22.g3 g7 23.g4.

22.g3 h1 23.g4!

Diagram 20-6

This is the desired zugzwang position. Any black move just makes his position worse and lets White win the pawn.

23...g8

23...h2 loses the pawn to 24.g3 followed by g2.

24.h6 h2

24...g1+ 25.xh3! h1+ 26.g4+-

25.g1+ 26.xh2 g4 27.h6

White has won the pawn, but the ending is still hard to win. Look at the patience White demonstrates in converting his advantage!

27...g7 28.h3 g1 29.h4 h1+

Or 29...g2 30.h5 g1 31.e6 g2 32.e7 g8 33.f5+-.

30.g4 g1+ 31.f5 f1

Even if Black attacks from the side with his rook, White can advance his f-pawn and create new attacking possibilities: 31...a1 32.c6 a4 33.c7 a8 34.g4 a1 (34...a5 35.f3 a3+ 36.e4 a4 37.e3 a3+ 38.d4 a4 39.c4 a1 40.f5! g1 41.xg5 42.xe8 43.xd6 d8 44.a4+--) 35.f5! g1+ 36.f4 f1+ 37.e4 c1 38.d5 d1+ 39.c6 c1+ 40.d7 d1+ 41.c8 d5 (41...g1 42.f6! xg5 43.d7+--) 42.f6 xe5 43.d7 d5+ (43...e8 44.e8!++) 44.c6 d8 45.d7! c8+ 46.h7 e8 47.c7 and d8 will win.

32.e6 f8 33.c8+ g7

Diagram 20-7

34.d8!!

In order to win the game, White must extract the maximum from the position (principle 2). The only way to achieve that is to play for zugzwanz.

34.f2

Now the black rook is too close to the white king. But the alternatives are no better:

a) 34...h6 35.xh6+ xh6 36.g8+-
b) 34...\texttt{a}a1 35.\texttt{d}d7! \texttt{c}f8 (35...\texttt{a}a6? 36.\texttt{g}g4 followed by \texttt{f}4-\texttt{f}5) 36.\texttt{h}f6 \texttt{a}a6† 37.\texttt{d}d6+-

35.\texttt{d}d1! \texttt{d}f3

35...\texttt{g}g8 36.\texttt{g}g4 \texttt{g}g2† 37.\texttt{f}f3+- and White gets in \texttt{f}4-\texttt{f}5.

36.\texttt{e}e4 \texttt{f}f2

36...\texttt{g}g3 is met by 37.\texttt{d}d7 \texttt{f}f8 38.e6+-.

37.\texttt{e}e3 \texttt{a}a2 38.f5

Diagram 20-8

At last White achieves his intermediate aim. The pawns are now very far advanced.

38...\texttt{g}g2

Passive defence promises nothing either: 38...\texttt{a}a7 39.\texttt{e}e4 \texttt{b}b7 40.e6 (or 40.\texttt{d}d8? Smyslov) 40...\texttt{x}xe6 41.\texttt{x}xe6 \texttt{g}g6 42.\texttt{e}e5 \texttt{x}xg5 43.\texttt{g}g1† \texttt{h}h4 44.\texttt{f}f6 h5 (44...\texttt{b}b2 45.\texttt{h}h1†--) 45.e7 \texttt{b}b8 46.\texttt{e}e1 \texttt{g}g3 47.e8\texttt{g} \texttt{x}xe8 48.\texttt{x}xe8 h4 49.\texttt{g}g5 h3 50.e3† \texttt{g}g2 51.\texttt{g}g4 h2 52.e2† \texttt{g}g1 53.\texttt{g}g3 h1\texttt{g} 54.\texttt{f}f3+-

40.\texttt{d}d7

Or 40.g6 hxg6 41.f6† \texttt{g}g8 42.\texttt{d}d8† \texttt{h}h7 43.\texttt{f}f8+-.

40...\texttt{x}xg5

If 40...\texttt{f}f8, then 41.f6 \texttt{e}e8 42.\texttt{e}e7† \texttt{f}f8 43.\texttt{a}a7
\texttt{e}e8 44.\texttt{a}a8† \texttt{d}d7 45.\texttt{f}f8 \texttt{e}e6 46.\texttt{e}e8† \texttt{f}f5 47.e6!+-.

41.\texttt{f}f4 \texttt{g}g1 42.e6 \texttt{f}f1† 43.\texttt{e}e5 \texttt{e}e1† 44.\texttt{d}d6 h5

45.\texttt{f}f7† \texttt{g}g8 46.\texttt{e}e7

Black resigned, in view of the following variation:

47...h4 48.\texttt{f}f6 h3 49.\texttt{g}g7† \texttt{h}h8 50.\texttt{g}g3--

The annotations are based on analysis by Gligoric.
Exercises

Ex. 20-1

Ex. 20-2

Ex. 20-3

Ex. 20-4

Ex. 20-5

Ex. 20-6
Solutions

Ex. 20-1

T.Petrosian – P.Keres
USSR Ch, Moscow 1951

1...h5!

(1 point for this important move)

Principle 4 – the correct exchanges. Black holds the draw.

2...e2 g7 3...g2 b5 4...f3 f6 5.h4

Or 5.h3 a5 6.g4 hxg4±.

5...f5† 6...g2 a5 7...h3 a4 8...d2 e5 9...b2 f6 10...b5 a2 11...g2 a4

12...f3 a3 13...f4 e2 14...e2 15...e4 e1 16...d6† g7 17...a6 b1 18...c6 g1 19...e2 f6 20...e2 g7 21...f6

22...e3 g7 23...e5 f8 24...gxg4 hxg4 25...fxg4 g7 26...g5 f1 27...e4 f3 28...h5

Of course not 28.e6?? f6#.

28...gxh5 29...gxh5 f6† 30...g4 f1 31...h6† g6!

½–½

Ex. 20-2

W.Browne – Y.Seirawan
Santa Monica 1987

1...g5!

(2 points)

Principle 3 – create a second weakness. Now the white kingside is weakened.

2.f3 gxh4 3...hxh4 g6 4...f2 f5 5...d1 f4 6...d2 f5! 7...d1 d2 8...e2 g3

9...g1† h2! 10...d1 f4† 11...xd2...dxd2† 11...xd2 g3 13.a4 bxa3 14...c3 e5 15.b4 e4 16.b5 a2

0–1

Ex. 20-3

A.Yusupov – M.Tal
USSR Ch, Minsk 1979

1.g4!

(2 points)

Principle 3 – create a second weakness. The black e4-pawn now becomes weak.

1...g5 2...g2 g6 3...h4! gxh4 4...h3±

Black has two weaknesses, on a5 and e4.

Ex. 20-4

V.Kramnik – A.Morozевич
Dortmund 2001

1.g4!

(3 points)

Fixing the weakness on f6 and preparing f3.

1...g6

Only 1 consolation point for 1...f1 or 1...g3† g6 2.f4 e8±.

1...f5 is less good, since the tactical operation 2.xf6† xf6 3.g4 fails to 3...g8+.

1...g6

If 1...h5, then 2...f3 hxg4 3...f4± (Kramnik).

1...g6 is followed by 2...f3 f5 3...f4! fxg4 4...xg4† h6 5...d8!!...xd8 (or 5...xd4 6...e3 e2 7...h1 f4 8...xf4--) 6...e3

7...h5 7...h4 8.gxg2±.

2...g3 a5

If 2...h5, then 3...gxh5 xe7 4...f4±.

After 2...e7?! comes 3...f3 a5 4...h4 g8 5...e3 e3± followed by f4 and f3 (Kramnik).

3...d6! h5

3...b4 4.h4 f5 5...fx5 exf5 6...e4 f6-- (Kramnik)

4...hxh5...h4 5...g3!...h6 6...e7 g5 7...xf6...xg3 8.fxg3...e8!

8...hxh5?! would be more stubborn: 9...g2 g6 10...f1 e5 11...xe5...d6 12...d6...e8+ (Kramnik)

9...g2!

9...g5 achieves nothing, due to 9...g4.

9...hxh5

9...g4 10.h3...e4 11...xe4 dxe4 12.g4--

10...h3...g6 11...f1...h7?

Passive defence is hopeless. 11...a6 would have been better: 12...e5?! (12.g4 e5 13...xe5...e6) 12...f5 13.g4± (Kramnik)

12.g4 b4 13...g3 b3 14.a3...ac8 15...h4...g6 16.h5

1–0
Solutions

Ex. 20-5

A. Lilienthal - I. Bondarevsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1940

1. h4!

(2 points)

White activates his rook and wants to create a second weakness on the kingside. (We are counting the doubled pawns on the queenside as the first weakness.)

1... h6

2. hxg5 hxg5 3. hxh1 Be8 4. d2 d7 5. h6

Now White attacks the f6-pawn.

5... f6

6. a6

White redeployes his knight to e3. The more direct 6. f4? is also strong.

6... c7 7. d2 f7

There would be better prospects of a successful defence after 7... f5! 8. e3 fxe4 9. dxe5 (9. fxe4 dxe2 10. c1 dxe6 11. g6 dxe4 12. g7 f6 13. fxe5 dxe5 14. fxe5 fxe5 15. gxf6+ dxf6 10. fxe5 dxe5 (Dvoretsky)).

Now White can comfortably improve his position without allowing counterplay (principle 2 - do not be too hasty).

8. e3 e6 9. c3 d6 10. b4 d7 11. f5 c7

The rook ending is also hard to hold, but it would be the lesser evil. 11... xf5 is followed by 12. gxf5 c6 13. a4! f6 14. h7 and here Black should try to activate his rook:

a) 14... d8 15. f7 d6 16. b3+ b5 17. a5 b6 18. a6+ (Lilienthal)

b) 14... e8 15. f7 e2! (15... e3 16. e6+ c7#) 16. e6+ b5 17. e5+ (Dvoretsky)

12. a4 d6?

The transition to a rook ending is still the best solution: 12... e5 13. gxf5 c6 14. h8 e7+! (Dvoretsky)

13. g3 d7+

See Ex. 20-6.

Ex. 20-6

A. Lilienthal - I. Bondarevsky

USSR Ch, Moscow 1940

1. h5!

1. g6 is not so strong: 1... f5 2. xg5 fxg4 3. fxg4 f4=+

1... f5 2. h6!

(1 point)

2. is f6 would have been weaker: 2... e7 3. gxf5 h7 4. g3 h3 and Black has counterplay.

2. f6 4. dxe5 d8 5. f4 e8 6. e5 d8 7. e6

8. a5 d2 9. h7+ b8 10. d6!+- Or 10. c5+--.

10... d4+

If 10... d6, then 11. h8+ c7 12. c8=.

11. c5 h4 12. d7 c7 13. d8 c7 14. d7 c7 1-0

Ex. 20-7

R. Kholmov - E. Geller

Vilnius 1957

1. g5!

(3 points)

Principle 1 - do not allow any counterplay!

1. x a7 (1 consolation point) is followed by 1... a8 2. x c5 e4 3. cxd5 x g4 4. f3 (4... b3 x g3 5. h3 x d5 6. x d5 x a5) 4... e5.

1... e5 2. x a7 c7??

After 2... x d7 there follows 2. b6+.

If 2... a8?? then 3. b6 d c4 4. e8 e8 5. e8 x c4+ (Dvoretsky).

3. cxd5 e d7 4. h4= h6

4... x d5 5. x d5 x d5 6. x d5 c x d5 7. c5= White cuts off the opposing king. In such positions, the outside passed pawn is often a decisive advantage.

5. c3 cxd5
Solutions

Black is losing after 5...hxg5 6.\(\text{hxg5}\) or 5...\(\text{exd5}\) 6.\(\text{exd5}\) \(\text{exd5}\) 7.\(\text{exd5}\) cxd5 8.gxh6.
See Ex. 20-8.

Ex. 20-8

R.Kholmov – E.Geller
Vilnius 1957

1.\(\text{d4!}\)

(2 points)
The threat of \(\text{f6}\) means that White wins the d-pawn. That is even better than 1.gxh6
(1 consolation point) 1...f6.

1...\(\text{d6}\)

1...\(\text{a8}\) is met by 2.\(\text{c3}\).

2.\(\text{f6} \text{e7}\) 3.\(\text{xe7} \text{e7}\) 4.\(\text{xd5} \text{xd5}\)

5.\(\text{exd5} \text{g7}\)

Black wants to exchange more pawns by playing ...f6.

6.\(\text{d6!}+ \text{hxd5} 7.\text{hxg5} \text{ec7}\)

7...\(\text{e5}\) 8.\(\text{b6!} \text{exg5}+ 9.\text{f1}+–

8.\(\text{b6!} \text{f8} 9.\text{f3} \text{f6} 10.\text{e4} \text{e7} \pm\)

11.\(\text{d5} \text{d8} 12.\text{f4} \text{e7} 13.\text{a5} \text{f6} 14.\text{f6}\)

15.\(\text{b4} \text{d7} \pm 16.\text{c5} \text{e7} 17.\text{b5} \text{d7} \pm\)

18.\(\text{b6} \text{d1} 19.\text{f6} \text{e7} 20.\text{a6} \text{bxa6} 21.\text{bxa6}\)

\(\text{b8} 22.\text{d6!} \text{e7} 23.\text{b6}+ \text{a8}\)

See Ex. 20-9.

Ex. 20-9

R.Kholmov – E.Geller
Vilnius 1957

1.\(\text{b7!}\)

(1 point)
The simplest solution.

1...\(\text{e6}\)

1...\(\text{xb7} 2.\text{axb7}+ \text{xb7} 3.\text{d6}+–

2.\(\text{xf7} \text{xa6} 3.\text{f6} \text{a4} 4.\text{d6}\)

1–0

Ex. 20-10

L.Psakhis – J.Speelman
Hastings 1987

1...\(\text{g5}!!\)

(2 points)
Black meets the threat of \(\text{a6-d3}\) by preparing to advance his f-pawn.
If 1...\(\text{g2} 2.\text{xd2} \text{exd2} 3.\text{c1}+\).

2.\(\text{a6} \text{f4} 3.\text{d3}?!\)

Either 3.\(\text{b5}?!\) or 3.\(\text{c4}?!\) would be simpler, with good drawing chances.

3...\(\text{xd3} 4.\text{exd3} \text{xd3} 5.\text{e2} \text{d5}!\)

But not 5...\(\text{e4} 6.\text{gxf4} \text{gxf4} 7.\text{d2} \text{xf2} 8.\text{c3} \text{d3} 9.\text{e1}+\).

6.\(\text{gxf4}\)

If 6.\(\text{xd1}?!\) then 6...\(\text{f3}!\).

(another 1 point for this variation)

6.\(\text{d2}\) is met by 6...\(\text{xf2}+\).
The correct defensive idea is 6...\(\text{e3}?! \text{c3}?!\)
(6...\(\text{d4} 7.\text{e2} \text{e6}?! \) [or 7...\(\text{e5}+\)] 8.gxf4
\(\text{gxf4} 9.\text{d2} \text{xf2} 10.\text{c3} \text{e4} 11.\text{xd4}\)
\(\text{cxd4}+\) 7.\(\text{xc3} \text{d3}+ 8.\text{g4} \text{xc3} 9.\text{g5}!\).

6...\(\text{gxf4} 7.\text{e1}\)

Here too, 7.\(\text{e3}?!\) would be correct: 7...\(\text{d3}?! \text{c3}?!\)
(7...\(\text{d4} 8.\text{e2} 8.\text{xc3} \text{d3}+ 9.\text{xf4} \text{xc3} 10.\text{e1}\) and then 11.\(\text{e3}+\).

7...\(\text{b2} 8.\text{c3} \text{d3}+ 9.\text{g1}\)

If 9.\(\text{d1}?!\), then 9...\(\text{xb4} 10.\text{xb4} \text{f3}+\) 11.\(\text{e1}\)
\(\text{xd1}+ 12.\text{xd1} \text{a4}+\).

9...\(\text{b4}\)

Threatening ...\(\text{f3}+\).

10.\(\text{g7}?!\)

10.\(\text{xb4}\) was necessary: 10...\(\text{xb4} 11.\text{g7}+\)
\(\text{d6} 12.\text{xb7} \text{f3}+ 13.\text{e3} \text{d1}+\)

See Ex. 20-11.

Ex. 20-11

L.Psakhis – J.Speelman
Hastings 1987

1...\(\text{f8}+\)

(1 point)

2.\(\text{b2}\)
2.\texttt{\texttt{h}h7} \texttt{f}f3\texttt{!} 3.\texttt{\texttt{e}xe}3 (3.\texttt{\texttt{f}f1} \texttt{\texttt{d}d}1\texttt{!} 4.\texttt{\texttt{e}e}1 \texttt{c}c2\texttt{!}) 3...\texttt{\texttt{d}d}3\texttt{!} (Speelman)
   (another 1 point for this variation)
   If 2.f3, then 2...\texttt{\texttt{d}d}3\texttt{!} 3.\texttt{\texttt{a}a}1 (3.\texttt{\texttt{b}xb}4 \texttt{\texttt{e}e}3\texttt{!}++)
   3...\texttt{\texttt{e}e}3\texttt{!} 4.\texttt{\texttt{f}f}2 \texttt{\texttt{d}d}3\texttt{!} 5.\texttt{\texttt{g}g}2 \texttt{\texttt{e}e}1\texttt{!}\texttt{+}.
2...\texttt{\texttt{d}d}3\texttt{!}
\texttt{0-1}

\textbf{Ex. 20-12}

\textbf{V.Smyslov – M.Rohde}

New York 1989

1.g4!

(2 points)

One weakness (the e-file) is no problem for Black to defend. White methodically improves his position on the kingside and creates another weakness there.

1...\texttt{\texttt{h}h6} 2.\texttt{\texttt{h}h4} \texttt{\texttt{d}d}8 3.\texttt{\texttt{e}e}1
   The overhasty 3.\texttt{\texttt{g}g}5 \texttt{hx}g5 4.\texttt{hx}g5 \texttt{\texttt{h}h7}
   would give White problems defending his g5-pawn.
3...\texttt{\texttt{d}d}7 4.\texttt{\texttt{g}g}2 \texttt{\texttt{f}f6} 5.\texttt{\texttt{g}g}5 \texttt{hx}g5 6.\texttt{hx}g5
   \texttt{\texttt{h}h5} 7.\texttt{\texttt{e}e}3 \texttt{\texttt{g}g}7 8.\texttt{\texttt{h}h}3! \texttt{\texttt{g}g}8 9.\texttt{\texttt{f}f}4 \texttt{\texttt{c}c}7
   10.\texttt{\texttt{e}e}5! \texttt{\texttt{d}d}8 11.\texttt{\texttt{d}d}1\texttt{!} \texttt{\texttt{d}d}5 12.\texttt{\texttt{g}g}2 \texttt{\texttt{e}e}7
   13.\texttt{\texttt{x}x}d5 \texttt{\texttt{x}x}d5 14.\texttt{\texttt{h}h}1\texttt{!}+
   This is stronger than 14.\texttt{\texttt{d}d}6 \texttt{\texttt{c}c}3 15.\texttt{\texttt{d}d}3
   \texttt{\texttt{b}b}5\texttt{!}.
14...\texttt{\texttt{e}e}7 15.\texttt{\texttt{h}h}8
   The penetration of the rook decides the game.
15...\texttt{\texttt{b}b}6 16.\texttt{\texttt{d}d}4 \texttt{\texttt{d}d}7 17.\texttt{\texttt{a}a}8 \texttt{\texttt{d}d}6
   17...\texttt{\texttt{a}a}6 18.\texttt{\texttt{a}a}7\texttt{!}+
18.\texttt{\texttt{x}x}a7 \texttt{\texttt{c}c}7 19.\texttt{\texttt{a}a}8 \texttt{\texttt{d}d}6 20.\texttt{\texttt{f}f}4 \texttt{\texttt{e}e}6
21.\texttt{\texttt{a}a}7
\texttt{1-0}

\textbf{Scoring}

Maximum number of points is 25

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>Grade</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21 points and above</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 points and above</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 points</td>
<td>Pass mark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.

223
Blockade

The blockade is an important strategic concept in the struggle against opposing passed pawns.

The point of the blockade is to make it more difficult for the opposing pawns to advance. The piece most suited to this task is a minor piece, since their lesser value means the effect of attacking them is less than it would be if the rook, queen or king were attacked. – Bönsch 'Schachlehre – Schachtraining'

The three most important reasons why the blockading of one or more pawns may be necessary are:

1) otherwise the pawns might advance further towards the queening square;
2) the blockading square is a safe position for our pieces;
3) the blockaded pawn often limits the mobility of the opposing pieces.

If a pawn is blockaded on its starting square, then the development of the pieces can be considerably hindered, and sometimes a whole wing cannot be properly mobilized. Such situations are considered in more depth in the next two examples.

L.Paulsen – P.Morphy
New York(6) 1857

1.e4 e5 2.d3 d6 3.d4 d5 4.b5 c5
Nowadays the preference is for either 4...b4 or 4...d4.

5.0–0
5.dxe5 is a good alternative for White. After 5...dxe5 6.d4 b4 7.dxe5 cxe4 8.d4 dxc3 (8...dxc3† 9.bxc3 g5 10.a3 e6 11.e4 g5 12.g3±) 9.bxc3 e7 10.f4! White is slightly better.

5...0–0 6.dxe5 e8
6...dxe5 7.d4±

7.dxc6
The correct continuation is 7.f3! dxe4 8.d4 dxc3 9.bxc3 a8 10.d5 e5 11.dxe5 e5 12.f4±.

7...dxc6 8.a4 b5!
8...\textit{\underline{xe}4? 9.\textit{\underline{x}xe4} \textit{\underline{xe}4} is wrong, because of 10.\textit{\underline{x}xf7+} when 10...\textit{\underline{x}xf7??} loses to 11.\textit{\underline{f}f3+}.

9.\textit{\underline{e}e2}

9.b3? \textit{\underline{g}4 10.\textit{\underline{e}e1} b4+}

9...\textit{\underline{xe}4 10.\textit{\underline{xe}4}}

10.\textit{\underline{f}f3??} loses, on account of 10...\textit{\underline{x}xf2! 11.\textit{\underline{x}xf2 d4 12.\textit{\underline{e}e4} (12.\textit{\underline{f}f1} \textit{\underline{x}xf2+} 13.\textit{\underline{x}xf2} \textit{\underline{e}e1#}) 12...\textit{\underline{xe}4 13.\textit{\underline{xe}4} \textit{\underline{x}xf2+} 14.\textit{\underline{h}h1} \textit{\underline{g}4 15.\textit{\underline{f}f3} \textit{\underline{e}e8.}}

10.\textit{\underline{xe}4 11.\textit{\underline{f}f3}}

Since the black pieces are more actively posted, White must play very carefully. The dangers which are lurking there for White can be seen from the following continuation: 11.c3 \textit{\underline{h}4 12.g3 (12.d4 \textit{\underline{d}d6 13.g3 \textit{\underline{h}3 14.f4 \textit{\underline{d}d7 15.\textit{\underline{f}f3} \textit{\underline{e}e7} and then ...\textit{\underline{ae}8 gives Black attacking chances}) 12...\textit{\underline{h}h3 13.\textit{\underline{f}f3} \textit{\underline{h}4!! 14.gxh4 \textit{\underline{d}d6+}}

A safer way to develop is 11.d3 \textit{\underline{e}e6 12.\textit{\underline{f}f3} (12.\textit{\underline{f}f4 \textit{\underline{f}f6 13.\textit{\underline{x}xc7} \textit{\underline{e}e8} 14.\textit{\underline{c}c7} \textit{\underline{b}b7 and Black maintains the blockade on d3.}}

11...\textit{\underline{e}e6 12.c3?}

Diagram 21-1

A typical mistake. White wants to prepare d2-d4 and completely underestimates his opponent's next move. As mentioned in the previous note, 12.d3 \textit{\underline{f}f6 would be level.

12...\textit{\underline{d}d3!}

Now the d2-pawn is blockaded. White can no longer develop his queenside normally.

13.b4

13.\textit{\underline{e}e1} \textit{\underline{xe}1+ 14.\textit{\underline{x}xe1} \textit{\underline{f}f5 15.\textit{\underline{e}e2} \textit{\underline{d}d8 16.\textit{\underline{x}xd3 \textit{\underline{xd}d3+ and Black maintains the blockade on d3.}}}

13...\textit{\underline{b}b6 14.a4 \textit{\underline{xa}4 15.\textit{\underline{xa}4} \textit{\underline{d}d7?}}

15...\textit{\underline{b}b7 would be better: 16.\textit{\underline{a}a2} \textit{\underline{ae}8 (threatening ...\textit{\underline{x}xf1+}) 17.\textit{\underline{d}d1} \textit{\underline{a}a6! and Black wins the exchange.

16.\textit{\underline{a}a2?}

White absolutely has to exchange the blockading black queen at once. So the correct move is 16.\textit{\underline{a}a6 \textit{\underline{f}f5 (16...\textit{\underline{a}a6 17.\textit{\underline{xa}6} \textit{\underline{ae}8 18.\textit{\underline{g}g4} \textit{\underline{e}e7 19.\textit{\underline{x}xd7 \textit{\underline{x}xd7 20.d4 is good for White, as the black bishop on b6 is cut off from play) 17.d4 \textit{\underline{ae}8 18.\textit{\underline{c}c3 and now 18...\textit{c}c5! leads to complicated play.

16.\textit{\underline{ae}8}

Black prepares the unpleasant mating threat of 17...\textit{\underline{x}xf1+ followed by 18...\textit{\underline{e}e1#.

17.\textit{\underline{a}a6
White overlooks the following pretty combination, but even the better 17.\( \text{dx}d1 \text{c}5! \) (intending \( \text{d}7-\text{b}5 \)) leads to a strategically lost position.

Diagram 21-2

17...\( \text{xf}3! \)

All the black pieces are well placed, whilst the white pieces on the queenside can no longer get to the defence of the king in time.

18.\( \text{gx}f3 \) \( \text{g}6\uparrow \)

Threatening mate in two moves with 20...\( \text{g}2\uparrow \) and 21...\( \text{f}3\# \).

20.\( \text{ed}1 \)

If 20.\( \text{dd}3 \), then 20...\( \text{f}5! \) 21.\( \text{cd}4\uparrow \) \( \text{f}8 \) 22.\( \text{dd}1 \) (22.\( \text{gg}1 \) \( \text{x}g1 \) 23.\( \text{x}g1 \) \( \text{e}1\uparrow \)) 22...\( \text{g}2\uparrow \) 23.\( \text{gg}1 \) \( \text{xf}3\uparrow \) 24.\( \text{ff}1 \) \( \text{g}2\uparrow \) 25.\( \text{gg}1 \) \( \text{d}5\uparrow \).

20.\( \text{gg}1 \) loses to 20...\( \text{x}g1 \) 21.\( \text{x}g1 \) \( \text{e}1\uparrow \).

20...\( \text{g}2\uparrow \) 21.\( \text{gg}1 \) \( \text{xf}3\uparrow \) 22.\( \text{ff}1 \) \( \text{g}2\uparrow \) 23.\( \text{gg}1 \) \( \text{h}3\uparrow \)

23...\( \text{ee}4\uparrow \) is even stronger: 24.\( \text{ff}1 \) \( \text{f}5! \) (threatening \( \text{h}3\# \)) 25.\( \text{ee}2 \) \( \text{h}3\uparrow \) 26.\( \text{ee}1 \) \( \text{gg}1 \# \)

24.\( \text{hh}1 \) \( \text{xf}2 \)

Now the threat is \( \text{g}2\# \).

25.\( \text{ff}1 \) \( \text{xf}1 \) 26.\( \text{xf}1 \) \( \text{ee}2! \) 27.\( \text{aa}1 \) \( \text{hh}6 \) 28.\( \text{d}4 \) \( \text{ee}3 \)

White resigned. He cannot defend his h-pawn and 29.\( \text{xe}3 \) is followed by the typical mate in two moves.

Diagram 21-3

In this example, the white pawn on d6 blockades the whole black queenside. The c8-bishop and the two major pieces cannot be developed quickly. Chigorin consequently moves the white pieces into a rapid attack on the kingside.

1.e5!

Aiming to open lines against the opposing king.

1...\( \text{xe}5 \) 2.\( \text{xf}4\uparrow ! \)

White can even sacrifice a whole rook, since there are clearly more pieces in the attack than his opponent has available for the defence.

2...\( \text{gg}7 \)

The principled variation is 2.exf4 3.\( \text{xf}4\uparrow \) \( \text{gg}7 \) 4.\( \text{ff}1 \) and Black will end up being mated:

Diagram 21-3
Blockade

a) 4...\texttt{g8} 5.\texttt{d4} \texttt{h6} 6.\texttt{f7} c5 7.\texttt{e3} g5 (7...\texttt{g5} 8.\texttt{h3}+) 8.\texttt{c4} b5 9.\texttt{f3} \texttt{g6} 10.\texttt{e5} \texttt{h5} 11.\texttt{xb7}\#

b) 4...\texttt{fxh4} 5.\texttt{d4} \texttt{g8} 6.\texttt{c4} \texttt{g7} 7.\texttt{f7} \texttt{g8} 8.\texttt{e7} \texttt{f8} 9.\texttt{f7}\#

3.\texttt{f5}\#

White wants to break through the pawn shield and rob the black king of its protection.

3...\texttt{gxfs} 4.\texttt{xf5} \texttt{g8} 5.\texttt{df1}

Black has no chance against the attack of White's major pieces.

3...b5 6.\texttt{g4} \texttt{h8} 7.\texttt{f8}

1-0

Since the pawns only move forwards and cannot control the squares in front of them, they can easily be blockaded. 

Connected pawns are strongest when they stand side by side, because then they can only be blockaded when one of them moves forward.

S.Gligoric - L.Szabo
Helsinki Olympiad 1952

1.d4 \texttt{f6} 2.c4 e6 3.\texttt{c3} \texttt{b4} 4.e3 c5 5.\texttt{ge2} d5
6.a3 \texttt{xd4} 7.exd4 \texttt{e7} 8.c5 0-0 9.b4 b6 10.g3 bxc5
11.dxc5 a5 12.\texttt{b1} axb4

The immediate 12...\texttt{c6} is more accurate here than clearing the a3-square for the white bishop. But in any case, the opening variation doesn't bring any advantage to White.

13.axb4 \texttt{c6}! 14.\texttt{g2}

14.b5 is answered by 14...\texttt{e5}!, threatening both \texttt{f3}\# and \texttt{xc5}.

14...\texttt{b8} 15.\texttt{a3}

15.b5 \texttt{xc5}! 16.bxc6 \texttt{xb1} 17.\texttt{xb1} \texttt{b6} leads to a dangerous black attack.

Diagram 21-4

15...\texttt{d7}!

The white pawns on the queenside must be stopped. So Black prepares for a blockade.

16.0-0

This was White's last chance to advance the pawns on the queenside. After 16.b5, Black should avoid 16.\texttt{a7}! 17.b6 (but not 17.\texttt{d3} \texttt{xb5}! 18.\texttt{xb5 a5}+) nor 17.\texttt{a4}! and White has improved
his position on the queenside; but he can simply reply 16...\( \mathcal{D}e5 \) followed by ...\( \mathcal{D}c4 \).

16...\( \mathcal{D}a7 \)!

Now the white pawns are blockaded and Black has a pawn majority in the centre. If he manages to set this in motion, White could soon be facing major problems.

17.\( \mathcal{B}e1 \) \( \mathcal{D}e8 \)!

Black brings this knight to c7 to strengthen the blockade. 17...\( \mathcal{D}b5 \) would be premature, due to 18.\( \mathcal{D}xb5 \) \( \mathcal{D}xb5 \) 19.\( \mathcal{D}d4 \). White threatens to exchange on b5 and then play \( \mathcal{A}f1 \), after which the white pawns would become mobile again.

18.\( \mathcal{A}c1 \) \( \mathcal{A}f6 \)

19.\( \mathcal{A}f4 \)!

White provokes the movement of the centre pawns, but then does not play energetically enough, enabling Black to support these pawns in time. 19.\( \mathcal{F}f4 \) is sounder, in order to restrain the black pawns' lust to advance.

19...\( e5 \) 20.\( \mathcal{D}d2 \) \( \mathcal{D}d4 \) 21.\( \mathcal{D}d5 \)!

21.\( \mathcal{D}e4 \) is necessary: 21...\( \mathcal{D}b5 \) 22.\( \mathcal{F}f4 \).

21...\( \mathcal{D}c6 \) 22.\( \mathcal{D}xf6 \) \( \mathcal{W}xf6 \) 23.\( \mathcal{A}xc6 \) \( \mathcal{W}xc6 \) 24.\( \mathcal{F}f4 \) \( \mathcal{F}f6 \)

White has not achieved anything. If Black can stabilize the position, then the white situation will become critical.

25.\( \mathcal{W}b3 \) \( \mathcal{W}h8 \) 26.\( \mathcal{F}f1 \) \( \mathcal{D}c7 \) 27.\( \mathcal{W}c4 \) \( \mathcal{D}ab5 \)

The white pawns on the queenside are safely blockaded. Now Black concentrates his forces in the centre, to prepare the further advance of his own pawns.

28.\( \mathcal{B}e1 \) \( h6 \) 29.\( g4 \) \( \mathcal{B}e8 \)!

A very instructive mistake. It is important for Black to secure the possibility of ...\( e5-e4 \). White, on the other hand, should utilize every opportunity to blockade the black pawns on d4 and e5 as soon as possible. So the correct move is 29...\( \mathcal{F}e8 \) 30.\( fxe5 \) \( fxe5 \) 31.\( \mathcal{D}g3 \) \( e4 \) 32.\( \mathcal{F}f4 \) \( e3 \) and the pawns get dangerously close to White's back rank.

30.\( \mathcal{F}f5 \)!

But now White makes a positional mistake. He should blockade the centre pawns. After 30.\( fxe5 \) \( fxe5 \) 31.\( \mathcal{D}g3 \) \( \mathcal{W}xf1 \) 32.\( \mathcal{W}xf1 \) Black cannot play
32...e4? on account of 33.\(\text{Qxe4! Qxe4}\) 34.\(\text{Qf4}+\text{h7}\) 35.\(\text{Of5}+\text{t+-}\).

30...\(\text{d5}\) 31.\(\text{c1}\)?
Probably the players were in time trouble. White sets a trap (32.\(\text{Bxh6}\)), but in doing so misses the last chance to set up a blockade. The endgame after 31.\(\text{Bxd5 Bxd5}\) 32.\(\text{g3}\) offers White some chances to save the game. For example: 32...\(\text{b8}\) 33.\(\text{e4}\) \(\text{bc3}\) 34.\(\text{xc3}\) \(\text{dxc3}\) 35.\(\text{c1}\) \(\text{xb4}\) 36.\(\text{xc3}\) \(\text{xg4}\) 37.\(\text{h1}\) \(\text{xc3}\) 38.\(\text{xc3}\) 39.\(\text{c6}\)

31...\(\text{h7}\)! 32.\(\text{g3}\) e4!
Now the white position can no longer be held.

33.\(\text{f4}\) e3 34.\(\text{d1}\) \(\text{c4}\) 35.\(\text{h4}\) \(\text{d5}\) 36.\(\text{g5}\)
White tries a despairing attack, but the strong black pawns on e3 and d4 also hinder the opposing pieces.

36...d3
Threatening simply ...\(\text{xf4}\).

37.\(\text{g4}\) \(\text{g8}\)!
Black defends against the threat of \(\text{gxh6}\).

38.\(\text{h5}\) \(\text{e4}\)! 39.\(\text{g6}\) \(\text{h8}\)
White cannot break through on the kingside.

40.\(\text{g3}\)
And here White didn’t wait to find out which pawn his opponent would advance first; he resigned.

The test is very difficult this time. But the test positions illustrate some important ideas concerning the blockade. It is essential to play through the solutions on a board.
Exercises

Ex. 21-1

Ex. 21-2

Ex. 21-3

Ex. 21-4

Ex. 21-5

Ex. 21-6
Ex. 21-1

P. Romanovsky – G. Ravinsky
Moscow 1943

1. \( \textit{d6} \)!

(2 points)

The exchange of bishops is the correct idea. It leaves Black with only bad pieces.

Offering the exchange of bishops by 1. \( \textit{d4} \) also earns 2 points, although Black can still defend with 1...f6±. 1 consolation point for 1...c7.

1...f6

1...0–0 is followed by 2. \( \textit{xg7} \) \( \textit{yg7} \) 3. \( \textit{d4} \) ± 4. \( \textit{a7} \) +–.

1...e5 loses after 2. \( \textit{e3} \) ! \( \textit{xd6} \) 3. \( \textit{d4} \) !.

2. \( \textit{xg7} \) \( \textit{yg7} \) 3. \( \textit{e3} \)!

Black resigned, as he has no good defence to the threat of 4. \( \textit{a7} \). Both 3...a8 4. \( \textit{a7} \)!! and 3...b6 4. \( \textit{xb6} \) ! see White winning on the spot.

Ex. 21-2

A. Alekhine – G. Levenfish
St. Petersburg 1912

1. \( \textit{b5} \)!

(2 points)

1. \( \textit{d2} \)?! would not be so energetic, on account of 1...b4.

1...\( \textit{xa1} \)!

If 1...axb5, then 2. \( \textit{xb5} \) \( \textit{d8} \) 3. \( \textit{d1} \) \( \textit{d7} \) 4. \( \textit{e5} \) (or 4.0–0) 4...b4! 5. \( \textit{c3} \) +– (Lisitsin).

2. \( \textit{f2} \) \( \textit{eh1} \) 3. \( \textit{c7} \) + 4. \( \textit{d2} \) + 5. \( \textit{exd7} \)

Black resigned. The threat is \( \textit{e6} \)#, and Black is saved by neither 5... \( \textit{xd7} \) 6. \( \textit{e6} \+- nor 5...e5 6. \( \textit{e6} \) ± 7. \( \textit{e7} \) 8. \( \textit{xd8} \) \( \textit{g7} \) 9. \( \textit{xf8} \) \( \textit{g7} \) 10. \( \textit{d7} \) (Lisitsin).

Ex. 21-3

Post – Kagan

1. \( \textit{d6} \)!

(2 points)

1 point for 1. \( \textit{d2} \) or 1. \( \textit{d3} \). The blockading move in the game is much more energetic.

1...\( \textit{xb5} \) 2. \( \textit{d2} \) \( \textit{h6} \)

2...\( \textit{d8} \) is followed by 3. \( \textit{e1} \) \( \textit{h6} \) 4. \( \textit{e3} \) \( \textit{f4} \) transposes to the game) 4... \( \textit{e8} \) 5. \( \textit{g4} \) \( \textit{g6} \) 6. \( \textit{e5} \) \( \textit{e6} \) 7. \( \textit{g3} \) \( \textit{g6} \) (7... \( \textit{f6} \) 8. \( \textit{xb7} \) –) 8. \( \textit{xf7} \) ! \( \textit{xf7} \) 9. \( \textit{g5} \) +–.

3. \( \textit{e1} \)!

White can win more quickly with 3. \( \textit{hxh6} \) ! gxh6 4. \( \textit{g4} \) b6 5. \( \textit{e1} \) \( \textit{d8} \) 6. \( \textit{h6} \) +–.

4. \( \textit{h8} \) 4. \( \textit{f4} \)

Here 4. \( \textit{e3} \) is also strong, transposing to the note to Black’s 2nd move.

4...\( \textit{c6} \)

Black’s situation also remains critical after 4... \( \textit{g6} \) 5. \( \textit{d5} \) !.

5. \( \textit{d6} \) \( \textit{f6} \) 6. \( \textit{f4} \)

Black resigned. The threat is 7. \( \textit{e7} \) \( \textit{e8} \) 8. \( \textit{xf6} \) !, and after 6... \( \textit{e8} \) there follows 7. \( \textit{c7} \) \( \textit{xc7} \) 8. \( \textit{xe8} \) ! +–.

Ex. 21-4

A. Konstantinopolsky – A. Kotov
Baku 1945

1. \( \textit{h5} \)!

(2 points)

Black restrains the white pawns on the kingside. Only 1 point for 1...a5 or 1...\( \textit{e6} \).

2. \( \textit{e2} \) \( \textit{d7} \) 3. \( \textit{ae1} \) \( \textit{h3} \) 4. \( \textit{h1} \) \( \textit{e6} \) 5. \( \textit{e4} \)

Intending 7... \( \textit{g4} \) 8. \( \textit{e3} \) \( \textit{e7} \) 9. \( \textit{d3} \) \( \textit{d5} \) !.

7. \( \textit{f3} \) !

7. \( \textit{d5} \) !

7...\( \textit{g4} \) 8. \( \textit{f4} \) \( \textit{xf3} \) 9. \( \textit{xf3} \)

Black wants to blockade the centre pawns, but he should first play 9...h4, after which 10. \( \textit{gxh4} \) \( \textit{e7} \) 11. \( \textit{e5} \) \( \textit{d5} \) leads to a more pleasant position for Black.
Solutions

Ex. 21-5

M. Botvinnik - I. Boleslavsky
Leningrad/Moscow 1941

1. \( \text{c3} \) (2 points)

White now controls the c5-square and can blockade the black pawns on c6 and d5. Only 1 point for 1. \( \text{b5} \), since Black can simply reply 1...e5.

1... \( \text{b8} \) 2. \( \text{ab1} \) \( \text{e8} \) 3. \( \text{f6} \) \( \text{g6} \) 4. \( \text{c5} \) \( \text{g4} \) 5. \( \text{c4} \) \( \text{e5} \) 6. \( \text{b4} \) \( \text{h6} \) 7. \( \text{d4} \) \( \text{dxe4} \) 8. \( \text{xh4} \) \( \text{h5} \) 9. \( \text{a3} \) \( \text{f4} \) 10. \( \text{a6} \) \( \text{c8} \) 11. \( \text{h1} \) \( \text{e8} \) 12. \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{d7} \)

See Ex. 21-6.

Ex. 21-6

M. Botvinnik - I. Boleslavsky
Leningrad/Moscow 1941

1. \( \text{xd7} \)!

(1 point)

1... \( \text{xd7} \) 2. \( \text{xc6} \)!

(another 1 point)

This elegant tactical operation exploits the weakness of Black's back rank and leads to the win of a pawn.

2. \( \text{d8} \)

1f 2... \( \text{xb4} \)? then 3. \( \text{xd7} \)++.

2... \( \text{b8} \) is followed by 3. \( \text{xe5} \) \( \text{f5} \) 4. \( \text{xd7} \) \( \text{xe4} \) 5. \( \text{f4} \) \( \text{exd4} \) 6. \( \text{b1} \) and White is winning the rook ending, e.g. 6... \( \text{c8} \) 7. \( \text{b5} \) \( \text{xc2} \) 8. \( \text{b6} \) \( \text{c8} \) 9. \( \text{b7} \) \( \text{b8} \) 10. \( \text{c1} \++.

3. \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{c7} \) 4. \( \text{xe5} \) \( \text{h5} \) 5. \( \text{xe8} \) \( \text{xh5} \) 6. \( \text{e5} \) \( \text{g8} \) 7. \( \text{e8} \) \( \text{xc2} \) 8. \( \text{xg8} \) \( \text{xg8} \) 9. \( \text{xb1} \++

Ex. 21-7

A. Kotov - S. Gligoric
Zürich Candidates 1953

1... \( \text{e4} \)!

(3 points)

A typical positional sacrifice, clearing the e5-square for the queen's knight. The extra white pawn will be securely blockaded. 1... \( \text{a6} \) (1 consolation point) is simply met by 2.a3.

2. \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{f4} \) 3. \( \text{f2} \) \( \text{g7} \) 4. \( \text{g1} \)

The position after 4.e5 \( \text{xe5} \) 5. \( \text{h7} \) \( \text{h8} \) would be unclear.

4... \( \text{g5} \) 5. \( \text{f1} \) \( \text{e5} \) 6. \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{e7} \) 7. \( \text{xe5} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 8. \( \text{h6} \) \( \text{h8} \) 9. \( \text{a6} \) 10. \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{b6} \)

10. \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{a6} \) 11. \( \text{b1} \)!

White intends \( \text{d2-f3} \).

See Ex. 21-8.

Ex. 21-8

A. Kotov - S. Gligoric
Zürich Candidates 1953

1... \( \text{f3} ! \) (3 points)

Black does not want White to bring his knight to f3 and thereby break the black blockade.

However, Black has another good option in 1... \( \text{h5} ! \) 2. \( \text{d2} \) (2.a1 \( \text{g3} \) 3. \( \text{e1} \) \( \text{a4} ! \) 4.b3 \( \text{d7} \) ) 2... \( \text{a4} ! \) (also 3 points) and Black obtains sufficient counterplay.

2. \( \text{xf3} \) \( \text{h5} \) 3. \( \text{d2} \)

3. \( \text{e1} ! \) \( \text{xf3} \) 4. \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{g5} ! \) 5. \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{xc3} \) 6. \( \text{xc3} \) \( \text{g3} \)

3. \( \text{f4} \) \( \text{f1} \) a5 5. \( \text{h4} \) \( \text{h8} \) 6. \( \text{g1} \) \( \text{h6} \) 7. \( \text{b3} \) \( \text{a8} \)

The immediate 7... \( \text{b4} \) would be a slight improvement: 8. \( \text{a5} \) \( \text{g4} =. \)

And 7... \( \text{bxc4} \) 8. \( \text{xc4} \) a5 would also be very interesting.

8. \( \text{e1} \) \( \text{b4} \) 9. \( \text{b1} \) \( \text{a8} \) 10. \( \text{g3} \) \( \text{g8} \) 11. \( \text{h2} \) \( \text{g3} \) 12. \( \text{f3} \) \( \text{e2} \) 13. \( \text{xe2} \) \( \text{g3} \) 14. \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{a5} \) 15. \( \text{d3} \) \( \text{d4} \) 16. \( \text{h5} \) \( \text{h4} \) 17. \( \text{g2} \) \( \text{g8} \)

18. \( \text{h1} \) \( \text{g3} \) 19. \( \text{f1} \) a4 20. \( \text{c2} \) a3

Black could have obtained good attacking chances with 20... \( \text{b3} ! \) ? 21. \( \text{axb3} \) \( \text{axb3} \) 22. \( \text{xb3} \) \( \text{g7} \).

21.b3

Black retains sufficient compensation for the two pawns, since he controls the dark squares.

\( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \)
Solutions

Ex. 21-9

E. Geller - V. Smyslov
USSR Ch, Moscow 1949

Just one more move and Black will blockade the white f4-pawn with the knight on f5. Then White would have no more active play. For that reason, Geller sacrifices his f-pawn.

1.f5!

(3 points)

1...e6 is not so good: 1...fxe6 2.d3 d4 3.dxc4
1...exf5 2.Bf3 dxc4 3.dcl a5 4.d3 h4 5.d2 h5 6.d4 g6 7.dh3 d6 8.dh6 d7 xh6 9.dhxh4 d5 10.d6 d7 11.dh6±

White is intending d4xg6. Another good plan was 11.df1 followed by d4-h4.

Ex. 21-10

A. Tolush - A. Sokolsky
Leningrad 1938

1...b5!

(2 points)

An interesting positional sacrifice. But 1...b8?? (also 2 points) would be just as good: after 2.cxd5 exd5 Black will continue with ...b5=.

2.cxb5 axb5 3.d3 b8 a5 4.d3 a5 5.0–0 c6

Black has good compensation for the pawn.

Ex. 21-11

P. Johner - A. Nimzowitsch
Dresden 1926

1...h5!

(2 points)

"The start of the process of tying White up."

-Nimzowitsch

2.d2

Weaker is 2.h4 d5 3.g5 d7 4.hxh5 g3+ (Nimzowitsch).

2...d5!

(another 1 point)

So as to wander off to h7; this was the original point of the restraining manoeuvre.

3.d2 h7 4.d4 d5

Black's idea is 5...g4+ 6.hxg4 hxg4 7.g1 g3=. However, the immediate 4...a5?? is more accurate, preventing the possibility mentioned in the next note.

5.d3

5.a5! would be better, and if 5...d4+, then 6.gxh4 gxh4 7.axb5 gxh3 8.gxh3 d4 9.d3=. (Larsen).

See Ex. 22-12.

Ex. 21-12

P. Johner - A. Nimzowitsch
Dresden 1926

1...a5!

(3 points)

Now White will have no counterplay on the queenside, leaving Black free to continue to prepare his attack on the kingside.

2.g1 h6 3.g1 d7 4.d1 eac8 5.d5

5.d2? would be slightly better, although after 5...e6 6.d5 d7 Black retains good prospects on the kingside.

5...h8 6.d2

If 6.g2, then 6...h8 g7 f2 g5.

6...g8 7.h2 g5 8.f1 e7

8...h4! would also be very strong: 9.gxh4 (9.fxh5 hxg3+ 10.gxg3 d4+- 10...g4+) 9...g5 10.d1 gxf4!

12.exf4 d8 13.b3 d8 14.e2

14.d2 g6! 15.d1 d4+ 16.hxg4 hxg4+ 17.d2 xc4! 18.xc4 e3+- (Nimzowitsch)

14.h4! 15.d3

15.d2 c8! (15...d5? 16.d1 c8+)

15.d1! 16.dxe4 (16.d1 d3! 17.d3!)

16.d3 f5+ 17.d2 d3+! 18.d3 d4# (Nimzowitsch)

15.e4 c8 16.c2 d3!

16...d5 17.d2 g2

17.e4

17.d3 f5+ 18.d2 d4+ 19.d3
d2+ 20.d3 d3# (Nimzowitsch)
17...g6

'The best, because ...h5-h4 can now no longer be stopped; after the fall of the h3-pawn there is no hope of any defence.'

– Nimzowitsch

18.\textit{Qxf5} Qxf5 19.e2 h4 20.e2 h4 21.g1 h3 22.e3 h4 23.f1 e8!

White resigned. The threat is 24...\textit{Qxg2} 25.xg2 h1t 26.e2 xg2t! and 24.e1 is followed by 24...f3t 25.d1 h1t++ (Nimzowitsch).

\section*{Scoring}

Maximum number of points is 29

\begin{itemize}
  \item 24 points and above \rightarrow \textbf{Excellent}
  \item 19 points and above \rightarrow \textbf{Good}
  \item 14 points \rightarrow \textbf{Pass mark}
\end{itemize}

If you scored less than 14 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Dragging the king out

Dragging the king out is an important tactical motif in many beautiful combinations, often linked with great material sacrifices. Most such combinations make use of decoying the king onto squares which are dangerous for it.

In his work *Chess Tactics*, Alexander Korov described this combinational motif in a very apposite manner: 'The attacking pieces do not always succeed in trapping the opposing king. Behind its wall of pawns, the king feels safe and secure. But there is one tactical method: the king is “pitilessly” dragged out from its hiding place by a sacrifice and driven in front of its wall of pawns, not infrequently being chased right into the centre. The usual end of such a “stroll” is the mate of the king which is hunted down.'

Ed. Lasker — G. Thomas
London 1912

1. d4 f5 2. e4 fxe4 3. dxc3 dxc6 4. g5 e6

4... d5 is met by 5. xf6 exf6 6. h5+ g6 7. x d5±.
The most important alternative is 4... c6.

5. dxe4 e7 6. x f6 x f6 7. f3

7. h5+ g6 8. h6 b6 9. f3 b7 10. d3 e7 11.0-0-0 a6 12. c3 g7 13. e3 0-0-0 14. b1 b8 15. h1 c6 led to a better position for Black in the game R. Ash — A. Yusupov, Winnipeg 1986.

7...0-0

7... d5 8. x f6+ x f6 9. c3 0-0 10. e2 c6 11.0-0 a6 12. d2 d7 13. a1± Temirbaev — A. Yusupov, Yerevan 1996.

Black would be better preparing to castle long with 7... c6 followed by ... b6, ... b7 and ... e7.

8. d3 b6?!

Better is 8... c6

9. e5 b7?

Black should play 9... x e5 10. dxe5 c6, when he can meet 11. h5 with 11... f5.

10. h5+ e7?

10... x e5 was necessary.

Diagram 22-1
Edward Lasker now forces the opposing king to go on a long journey. The play from now on is forced. Black had only considered 11...c5 g6 12.fxg6 hxg6 13.f6+ g7 14.xb7 xd4+ or 11.xf6+ gxf6.

11...hxh7 12.xf6+ h6
12...g8 13.g6#

13.xe4!

All that follows happens with check. Such forcing variations are easier to calculate. And of course nothing has a higher level of priority than responding to a check!

13...g5 14.h4+

14.f4+ also leads to mate: 14...xf4 (or 14...h4 15.g3+ h3 16.xf1+ g2 17.xf2#) 15.g3+ f3 (15...g5 16.h4#) 16.0-0#

14...f4 15.g3+ f3 16.e2+

Diagram 22-2

White wins more quickly after 16.0-0 gxf6 17.xh2# or 16.xf1 gxf6 17.xh2#, but such quiet moves need to be calculated very carefully. Edward Lasker prefers the forcing way. It is better to aim for a safer win than for a quicker one!

16...g2 17.xh2+ g1 18.d2#

Of course there are situations in which a player cannot calculate a forced mate. Nevertheless, an exposed king position means great danger. In the next example, Garry Kasparov boldly played an intuitive rook sacrifice against his future successor on the world throne, Veselin Topalov, and by doing so created a masterpiece. Extensive comments to this brilliant game can be found in Igor Stohl’s book *Instructive Modern Chess Masterpieces*. In what follows we shall concentrate on only some of the main lines of this famous game.

### Diagram 22-3

**G.Kasparov – V.Topalov**

*Wijk aan Zee 1999*

1.xd4! cxd4?

Black plays very boldly, but goes wrong. He should content himself with equality. 1...b6 is better: 2.b3 xd5 3.xd6+ xd6 4.d2=.
2. \( \text{Be}7 \)†!!

But not 2. \( \text{Bxd}4? \text{Bb}6! \) 3. \( \text{Bc}7 \)† \( \text{d}7 \) 4. \( \text{Bxd}7 \)† (4. \( \text{Bc}3 \text{g}1\text{t}++ ) 4. \( \text{Bxd}7 \) 5. \( \text{Bhx}8 \text{Bgl} \text{t}++ .

2. \( \text{Bb}6 \\

2. \( \text{Bxe}7? \) would be bad: 3. \( \text{Bxd}4 \) \( \text{Bb}8 \) 4. \( \text{Bb}6 \)† \( \text{Bb}7 \) 5. \( \text{Bc}6\text{t}++ .

2. \( \text{Bb}8 \) is followed by 3. \( \text{Bxd}4 \) \( \text{d}7 \) 4. \( \text{Bxd}7 \text{xd}5 \) 5. \( \text{c}4 \) \( \text{Bxe}7 \) 6. \( \text{Bb}6\text{t} \text{Bc}8 \) 7. \( \text{Bxa}6\text{t} \text{Bb}8 \) 8. \( \text{Bb}6\text{t} \text{Bc}8 \) 9. \( \text{Bc}6\text{t} \text{xc}6 \) 10. \( \text{Bc}6\text{t} .

3. \( \text{Bxd}4\text{t} \text{Bx}a5 \\

Black accepts the challenge. After 3... \( \text{Bc}5 \) 4. \( \text{Bxf}6\text{t} \text{Bd}6 \), Kasparov had seen a powerful continuation: 5. \( \text{Be}6\text{t} \) and if 5... \( \text{Bxd}5 \), then \( \text{Bb}4\text{t}++ .

4. \( \text{Bb}4\text{t} \text{Bc}4 \\

5. \( \text{Bc}3\text{t}!! \\

Kavalek's idea of 5. \( \text{Ba}7\text{t} \) is even stronger, and 5... \( \text{Bxd}5 \) would be followed by 6. \( \text{Bxa}6\text{t} ! \text{Bxa}6 \) 7. \( \text{Bb}2 \text{Bc}3\text{t} 8. \text{Bxc}3 \text{Bd}5 \) 9. \( \text{Bb}2\text{t} \) (threatening \( \text{Bb}3\text{t} \)) 9... \( \text{Bd}6 \) 10. \( \text{Bxe}6 \text{f}e6 \) 11. \( \text{Bb}3\text{t} \text{Bxb}3 \) 12. \( \text{Bxb}3 \text{f}e6 \).

5. \( \text{Bxd}5 \\

5... \( \text{Bxd}5 \) is wrong, because of 6. \( \text{Bb}2 \) with the threat of \( \text{Bb}3\text{t} \)!

6. \( \text{Ba}7 \\

Threatening mate. Now 6... \( \text{Bd}4\text{t} \) would lose to 6... \( \text{Bxd}5\text{t} .

6. \( \text{Bb}7 \\

The only move.

7. \( \text{Bxb}7 \\

7... \( \text{Bc}7\text{t} \) leads only to perpetual check after 7... \( \text{Bd}1\text{t} .

7. \( \text{Bc}4\text{t}!! \\

7... \( \text{Bh}8\text{t} \) is more resilient: 8. \( \text{Bb}6 \text{Ba}8 \\

White has to find a difficult prophylactic move here, in order to deprive Black of the most important defensive resource of ... \( \text{Bc}4 \). The move is 9. \( \text{Bf}1\text{t}!! \\

and Black is powerless against the threat of \( \text{Bd}6 \). For example, 9... \( \text{Bc}1\text{t} \) (or 9... \( \text{Bc}8 \) 10. \( \text{Bxc}8\text{t}++) 10. \( \text{Bxe}1 \text{Bd}7 \) 11. \( \text{Bb}7\text{t} \text{Bxb}7 \) 12. \( \text{Bd}1\text{t} \text{Bxa}3 \) 13. \( \text{c}3 \) followed by \( \text{Bc}1\text{t} \) with a quick mate (analysis by Ligterink).

8. \( \text{Bxf}6 \text{Ba}3 \\

The more stubborn 8... \( \text{Bd}1\text{t} \) 9. \( \text{Bb}2 \text{Ba}8 \) (9... \( \text{Bd}4\text{t} \\

10. \( \text{Bxd}4 \text{Bxd}4 \) 11. \( \text{Bxf}7 \text{Bd}6 \) 12. \( \text{Be}7 \) and then \( \text{Bb}6\text{t}++) .

238
10. \( \text{b6} \) \( \text{d4} \) also leads to a lost ending: 11. \( \text{xd4} \) \( \text{xd4} \) 12. \( \text{xf7} \) a5 13. \( \text{xe6} \) axb4 14. \( \text{b3} \) \( \text{a5} \) 15. \( \text{xb4} \) \( \text{xb4} \) (15... \( \text{b6} \) 16. \( \text{xh7} \) 16. \( \text{c3} \)\( + \)

If 8... \( \text{a8} \) then 9. \( \text{b6} \) a5 10. \( \text{a7} \)\( ++ \).

Diagram 22-6

9. \( \text{xa6} \)
Kasparov now gives chase to the king.

9... \( \text{b4} \) 10. \( \text{c3\!}\) \( \text{xc3} \)
10... \( \text{b3} \) 11. \( \text{a2\!} \) \( \text{xc3} \) 12. \( \text{b2\!} \) \( \text{d3} \) 13. \( \text{e7} \)\( + \) leads to a quick mate.

11. \( \text{a1} \) \( \text{d2} \)

11... \( \text{b4} \) 12. \( \text{b2\!} \) \( \text{a5} \) (12... \( \text{b3} \) 13. \( \text{xb5} \)\( ++ \))
13. \( \text{a3\!} \) \( \text{a4} \) 14. \( \text{a7\!} \)\( + \) and White wins the queen.

12. \( \text{b2\!} \) \( \text{d1} \)
12... \( \text{e3?} \) loses more quickly: 13. \( \text{e7\!} \) \( \text{xf3} \)
14. \( \text{g2\#} \)
12... \( \text{e1\!} \) is met by 13. \( \text{e7\!} \) \( \text{d1} \) 14. \( \text{f1\!} \)\( + \).

13. \( \text{f1\!} \)
And Kasparov brings his bishop into the attack.

13... \( \text{d2} \)!
13... \( \text{fxa6} \) loses to 14. \( \text{c2\!} \) \( \text{e1} \) 15. \( \text{e7\!} \).

Diagram 22-7

14. \( \text{d7\!} \)
The final tactical trick in this exciting game. White wins material.

14... \( \text{xd7} \) 15. \( \text{xc4} \)
The threats are \( \text{c1\#} \) and \( \text{e2\#} \) Black has to surrender an exchange, after which White wins without much trouble.

15... \( \text{xc4} \) 16. \( \text{h8} \) \( \text{d3} \) 17. \( \text{a8} \) c3 18. \( \text{a4\!} \) \( \text{e1} \) 19. \( \text{f4} \) \( \text{fs} \) 20. \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{d2} \) 21. \( \text{a7} \)

1-0

In the exercises you should try first of all to discover the method of dragging out the king. Then calculate the variations. Try first to find an attack with checks. Quiet moves are normally only considered if you can either create a threat of mate or if you have to prevent the king from retreating.

The final five positions are particularly hard to calculate. Try to work on each for 10 minutes without moving the pieces and note down your variations. After that time you can then analyse these positions on the board (at which point you may of course move the pieces).
Exercises

Ex. 22-1

Ex. 22-2

Ex. 22-3

Ex. 22-4

Ex. 22-5

Ex. 22-6
Solutions

Ex. 22-1
Variation from the game

A. Alekhine – A. West
Portsmouth 1923

1...h7
1...f6 is equally good: 1...f8 2...h7+
1...xh7 2.xg7†! xg7 3.f6† g6
4.h5# (1 point)

Ex. 22-2

G. Kasparian – Manwelian
Yerevan 1936

1.xc6!
1...xc6 2.c4† b7
Better is 2...a7 3.xc6±.
3.xc6!! xc6 4.e5† c5 5.d3† d4
6.d2!+- (another 1 point)
Next comes 7.c3#.

Ex. 22-3

M. Euwe – A. Alekhine
Zürich 1934

1.f7!! (1 point)
1.e8
1...xf7 loses after 2.h5† e7 (2.g6
3.xh7†+-) 3.xe6† xe6 4.e1† d6
5.c5† d7 6.f5† d6 7.e6#.

2.xe6 xe6 3.d8! (another 1 point)
3.e4 4.xc6+-

Ex. 22-4

G. Mackenzie – J. Mason
Paris 1878

1.h6†!! (1 point)

1.hf5† is not so strong, due to 1...f8.
1.xh6 2.hf5† xf5 3.xf5† h5
4.g4†
Or 4.h3† h4 5.xh4† g6 6.h6#.
4.xg4 5.g3† h5 6.e2#
(1 point)

Ex. 22-5

T. Petrosian – L. Pachman
Bled 1961

1.xf6†!! (1 point)
1...xf6 2.e5† g5
2...f5 3.f4† g4 4.f6† h6 5.h4#
3.xg7! (another 2 points)
Only 1 point for 3.h4+ or 3.e3+.
The game move leads to mate more quickly:
a) 3...f5 4.h4† (or 4.f4† g4 5.e5† h5
6.f3#) 4.xh4 5.gxh4† f5 6.h3#
b) 3...h5 4.h4† g5 5.f4† f5 6.h3#
c) 3...e5 4.h4† h5 (4...f5 5.h3#)
5.f3† g4 6.xg4#
1-0

Ex. 22-6

L. Ftacnik – O. Cvitan
Bundesliga 1997

An original idea. First of all, the white king
has to come out...
1.xg2†! 2.xg2 h3†!! (1 point)
But not 2.g5 on account of 3.f2!.
3.xh3
...And then it is shut in again.
3.g3† g2 h4† (another 1 point)
White resigned. 5.h1 is followed by
5.g2#.
Solutions

Ex. 22-7

R. Cifuentes – V. Zvjaginsev
Wijk aan Zee 1995

1...\textordmasculine}e3\textdagger!!

(1 point)

2.\textordmasculine}xe3 \textordmasculine}xe3 3.\textordmasculine}xg4 \textordmasculine}c8\textdagger 4.\textordmasculine}g5
4.\textordmasculine}h4 \textordmasculine}c7#

4...h6\textdagger!!

(another 1 point)

4...\textordmasculine}g7?! is not so accurate, because of
5.\textordmasculine}h1.

5.\textordmasculine}xh6
5.\textordmasculine}h4 \textordmasculine}c7#

5...\textordmasculine}e5

(another 1 point)

White cannot defend against both the
threats: ...\textordmasculine}f8# and ...\textordmasculine}h5#.

0–1

Ex. 22-8

P. Schmidt – Richter
Heidelberg 1946

1.\textordmasculine}h6\textdagger!!

(1 point)

1...\textordmasculine}xh6 2.hxg6\textdagger \textordmasculine}g5 3.\textordmasculine}h5\textdagger!

(1 point)

3...\textordmasculine}xh6 4.f4\textdagger \textordmasculine}xe2

(another 1 point)

If 4...\textordmasculine}xf3, then 5.\textordmasculine}xf3 3.\textordmasculine}xf3 6.\textordmasculine}h1\textdagger \textordmasculine}h4
6...\textordmasculine}g4 7.\textordmasculine}xf3#) 7.\textordmasculine}xf6\textdagger \textordmasculine}h6 8.\textordmasculine}xh4\textdagger \textordmasculine}g7
9.\textordmasculine}e8\textdagger! \textordmasculine}xe8 10.\textordmasculine}xh7\textdagger \textordmasculine}f8 (or 10...\textordmasculine}f6)
11.\textordmasculine}xf7#.

5.\textordmasculine}f6\textdagger \textordmasculine}h6
5...\textordmasculine}h4 6.\textordmasculine}f5#

6.\textordmasculine}h1\textdagger \textordmasculine}g7 7.\textordmasculine}e8\textdagger!

(another 1 point)

7...\textordmasculine}xe8 8.\textordmasculine}xh7\textdagger \textordmasculine}f6
Or 8...\textordmasculine}f8 9.\textordmasculine}xf7#.

9.\textordmasculine}xf7#

Ex. 22-9

Begun – Marjakin
USSR 1967

1.\textordmasculine}xf5\textdagger!

(1 point)

1...\textordmasculine}xf5 2.\textordmasculine}xf5 \textordmasculine}h5 3.\textordmasculine}g3 \textordmasculine}h4
3...\textordmasculine}g4 4.\textordmasculine}f4\textdagger \textordmasculine}xg5 5.h4#

4.\textordmasculine}f4\textdagger

(another 1 point)

4...\textordmasculine}g4
4...\textordmasculine}xg5 5.h4# or 4...\textordmasculine}g4 5.\textordmasculine}f3\textdagger \textordmasculine}h3
6.\textordmasculine}f1#.

5.\textordmasculine}xg4\textdagger!

(another 1 point)

5...\textordmasculine}xg4
5...\textordmasculine}xg4 6.\textordmasculine}d4#

6.\textordmasculine}f3\textdagger \textordmasculine}h3 7.\textordmasculine}f1#

Ex. 22-10

Rudakov – A. Kotov
Tula 1929

1...\textordmasculine}xd3\textdagger!

(1 point)

2.exd3 \textordmasculine}xd3\textdagger 3.\textordmasculine}b2
3...\textordmasculine}c1? is bad, due to 3...\textordmasculine}c8\textdagger++.

3...\textordmasculine}c3\textdagger 4.\textordmasculine}a3
4...\textordmasculine}b1? loses quickly after 4...d3.

4...\textordmasculine}c5\textdagger!

(another 1 point)

4...\textordmasculine}a5?? 5.\textordmasculine}b2 d3\textdagger is not so clear, on
account of 6.\textordmasculine}d4? (but not 6.\textordmasculine}bl? \textordmasculine}c3++).

5.b4

Other moves are no better:
a) 5.\textordmasculine}b2 d3\textdagger++
b) 5.\textordmasculine}a4 b5?? (5...a5 wins even more
quickly) 6.\textordmasculine}a5 \textordmasculine}b67 7.\textordmasculine}b4 a5?? 8.\textordmasculine}a3 \textordmasculine}c5??
9.\textordmasculine}b2 d3\textdagger++.

5...\textordmasculine}c3?? 6.\textordmasculine}a4 b5?? 7.\textordmasculine}xb5

After 7.\textordmasculine}a5 \textordmasculine}c6 the threat of ...\textordmasculine}b6# is
decisive.

7...\textordmasculine}e5??

(another 1 point)
Solutions

8. ...dxe6 9.cxd5 10.c4
Or 10...b6+–.

11. ...a5 c6 12. ...xa7 a8#

Ex. 22-11

Y. Averbakh – A. Kotov
Zürich Candidates 1953

1...hxh3!!

(1 point)

2. gxh3 h6 3. g4 f6

(another 1 point)

3...f8 is equally good. After 4. xf4 f6 we have:

a) 5. f5 e8!! 6. g4 g8 7. g6 f6g6+ 8. f5 g7#

b) 5. g5 g8! 6. f5 (6. xh6 f8+–) 6...g4!!

(another 1 point for spotting this idea)

7. h5 (7. g6 h6g6–+) 7...h6!
(threatening ...f8) 8. g5 xg5 9. g4 f4+–

4. g5 d7

4...g4 also wins: 5. xf4 (5. h4 f8+ 6. f6+ xf6+ 7. xg6 f6g6+ 8. f5 h5+ 9. f5 h5g5+) 5...g8! See line 'b' in the previous note.

5. g5

5. xf4 loses more quickly: 5...f8 6. g4 g8+ 7. g6 g6g6+ 8. f5 h5+ 9. f5 h5g5+ 9...g5+–

5...f8 6. g4 f6+ (another 1 point)

7. f5 g8+

In time trouble, Kotov repeated moves a few times, in order to make the time control safely and then to look for the way to win in peace and calm.

8. g4 f6 9. f5 xd5 10. g4 f6 11. f5 g8 12. g4 f6 13. f5 g8

Nor do other moves help:

a) 15. g3 e7 and now:

a1) 16. h1 f6 17. g5 g4+ 18. xg4 g8+ 19. f5 f6#

a2) 16. h5 f6+ 17. h3 (17. xf6 xf6) 18. g1 xf6 19. f5 h5+- 17...h5 18. h4 h4f4–+

b) 15. g3 f6+ 16. f5 e8 17. xg5 (17. g4 g8–+) 17...g8 18. xh6 f6 19. xf4 xf4 20. xf4 xf4+ (Kotov)

c) 15. h1 xh1 16. xg5 (16. xd6 h6+- 17. xg5 f7+-+) 16...h6 17. g4 e7 18. h4 g8+ 19. h5 h7–+

15...f7!

Threatening ...g7 followed by ...f6#.

16. h4

16. xf4 g7 17. g6 f6g6+ 18. f5 f6 e7#

16...g6 17. h5 g7

The threat is now ...h6#.

18. g5 xg5 19. h4 h6 20. g3 xg3
21. xd6 e3 2g6 22. b8+ e8 0–1

Ex. 22-12

L. Polugaevsky – R. Nezhmetdinov
Sochi 1958

1...xf4!!

(2 points)

2. xh2

The queen sacrifice has to be accepted:

a) 2. xf4 xf2+–

b) 2. xh2 3. xf4 3. xf4 (3. d4 xf2+ 4. e3 c5#) 3...xf4+–

c) 2. xh5 xf3+ 3. d4 xf2+ 4. c4 c5#

2...f3+ 3. d4 g7!

(another 2 points)

This threatens ...b5 and then ...e6#, as well as 4...c5 5. dxc6 bxc6 followed by 6...c5#.

3...c5!! (also 2 points) is equally good: 4. dxc6 b5! (threatening ...e6#) 5. d3 (5. d3 xd3 6. xd3 d3f3 7. d3 a2#) 5...xc6 6. c3 d7 7. d2 xd3 8. e1 xd1 9. xd1 xb2 10. xdx6 e8–+

4. a4

This move loses quickly, but, as the following analysis shows, White could no longer save the
Solutions

game, even with his extra queen:
a) 4.\textit{c}3 b5 5.\textit{xb}4 \textit{c}6#
b) 4.\textit{g}1 \textit{xe}3 5.e2 \textit{e}3 6.\textit{g}1 \textit{ed}3 7.\textit{c}4 \textit{xb}2 8.\textit{xb}4 \textit{c}3 9.\textit{a}3 b5! (threatening ...b4#)
10.d4 (10.b4 a5t++ Nezhmetdinov) 10...\textit{xd}4 11.\textit{xf}3 \textit{c}3 12.b4 \textit{c}4t 13.b3 \textit{xa}1 14.\textit{g}5 g3+-
c) 4.\textit{f}4 b5! (threatening ...\textit{ec}6#) 5.\textit{xf}3 \textit{xf}3t 6.\textit{e}3 \textit{xb}2--
d) 4.\textit{c}3 \textit{ed}3t! (4...\textit{xe}3! also wins)
5.\textit{c}4 (or 5.e5? \textit{xe}5t++) 5...\textit{xb}2 6.\textit{xb}4 \textit{xc}3t 7.\textit{a}3 b5! 8.b4 a5 9.bxa5 (9.\textit{b}3 a4t 10.\textit{a}3 \textit{c}4#) 9...\textit{c}4t 10.\textit{b}3 \textit{xa}5t 11.\textit{a}3 \textit{c}4t 12.b3 \textit{a}3#
e) 4.\textit{e}2 c5t! 5.dxc6 \textit{ed}3t 6.\textit{c}4 b5t
7.\textit{xb}5 \textit{b}8t 8.\textit{a}4 (8.\textit{a}5 \textit{xc}6t 9.\textit{a}4 \textit{b}4 10.\textit{a}3 \textit{xb}2#) 8...\textit{xb}2 9.\textit{a}3 \textit{xd}1 10.\textit{xd}1 \textit{xa}1t++
f) 4.\textit{d}3 \textit{ed}3t 5.\textit{c}4 \textit{xb}2 6.\textit{xb}4 \textit{xd}1 7.\textit{xd}1 \textit{e}8+-
4...c5t

Apparently White wanted to draw the teeth from the idea ...b7-b5. But Black has another idea up his sleeve!
5.dxc6 bxc6

The threat is ...c5#.
6.\textit{d}3 \textit{ed}3t 7.\textit{c}4
Or 7.e5 \textit{xe}5t 8.\textit{e}4 d5#.
7...d5t 8.exd5 cxd5 9.\textit{b}5 \textit{b}8t 10.\textit{a}5 \textit{c}6t
And White resigned, just before mate.
A masterpiece by the brilliant chess artist.

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 33

28 points and above $\rightarrow$ Excellent
23 points and above $\rightarrow$ Good
17 points $\rightarrow$ Pass mark

If you scored less than 17 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Reti/English Opening

It is often very difficult to separate one specific opening from another. This is the case for the Reti Opening (1.\(\text{d}f3\) and g3) and the English Opening (the variations with 1.\(c4\) e6) which are very closely related to each other.

In this chapter we shall examine a system with a double fianchetto. White has a choice of various move orders in order to bring about this system. Frequently it is the king’s bishop which is fianchettoed first, in order to bring more pressure to bear on d5, but the most important piece for White can turn out to be the dark-squared bishop, which often operates down an open diagonal.

This quiet system is, nevertheless, very venomous. It will come as no surprise that Kasparov played it at a most decisive moment in his chess career. In order to defend his title of World Champion against Anatoly Karpov, he absolutely had to win the final game. The advantage of this double fianchetto system is that White can play a long game in which he gradually increases the pressure on his opponent.

G.Kasparov – A.Karpov
World Ch(24), Seville 1987

1.\(c4\) \(e6\) 2.\(\text{d}f3\) \(\text{d}f6\) 3.\(g3\) d5 4.b3

As is typical for the double fianchetto system, White defends his c-pawn, to draw the teeth from the variation with 4...\(dxc4\) and prepare the second fianchetto.

4...\(\text{e}7\) 5.\(g2\) 0–0 6.0–0 \(b6\)

6...\(c5\) is the most important alternative. After 7.\(\text{b}2\) \(\text{c}6\) 8.\(e3\) d4 9.exd4 cxd4 10.\(\text{d}1\) we get a position resembling a Modern Benoni with reversed colours. White is actively placed and should play on the queenside and in the centre (d3, \(\text{a}3\)-c2, a3, b4).

7.\(\text{b}2\) \(\text{b}7\) 8.\(e3\)

Usually White tries to play the position without the move d4, since the dark-squared bishop is very well placed on the open diagonal.

8...\(\text{bd}7\)
In the event of 9.d3 Black is planning to exchange on c4 and provoke the move d4, by means of ...\( \text{c5} \). Other possible defensive systems are 8...c5 and 8...dxc4 9.bxc4 c5 followed by ...\( \text{c6} \).

9.\( \text{c3} \) \( \text{e4} \)

**Diagram 23-1**

Karpov only needed a draw from this game and so had nothing against a simplification of the position.

10.\( \text{e2}?! \)

On the other hand, Kasparov is, of course, aiming for a more complicated position.

10...\( a5 \)

After 10...\( \text{f6} \) 11.d4?! \( c5 \) 12.\( \text{f4} \) White is slightly more active.

10...c5 would be a logical continuation.

11.\( \text{d3} \) \( \text{f6} \)

This is the idea behind ...\( \text{e4} \). Black wants either to exchange the dark-squared bishops or to provoke d3-d4.

12.\( \text{c2} \) \( \text{xh2} \) 13.\( \text{xb2} \) \( \text{d6} \) 14.\( \text{cxd5} \) \( \text{xd5} \)

**Diagram 23-2**

Karpov does not want to shut in his bishop. But 14...exd5?! is possible. After 15.d4 \( c5 \) 16.\( \text{xc5} \) \( bxc5 \) White could play against the hanging pawns.

15.\( \text{d4}! \)

After the exchange of the dark-squared bishops, White no longer has anything against this move in the centre.

15...c5

Otherwise White could attack the pawn on c7.

16.\( \text{fxd1} \) \( \text{b8?!} \)

16...\( c4?! \) 17.\( \text{f4} \) b5! 18.\( \text{xd5} \) exd5 19.\( \text{c5} \) \( \text{f6} \)

is better. But Karpov is trying to play quietly, and in doing so he loses the struggle for the initiative.

17.\( \text{f4} \)

Attacking the black pieces on the d-file.

17...\( \text{fxb3} \)

17...\( c4?! \) 18.\( \text{xd5} \) exd5 19.bxc4 dxc4 comes too late, on account of 20.\( a4?! \).

18.\( \text{xf3} \) \( \text{e7} \) 19.\( \text{ac1} \)

**Diagram 23-3**

White has a small but lasting advantage.

19...\( \text{d8} \) 20.\( \text{xc5} \) \( \text{xc5} \) 21.\( \text{b4}! \)

Kasparov has an active bishop and wants to open the position on the queenside.
21...axb4 22.\(\text{W}\)xb4 \(\text{a}7\)
Since the white bishop is controlling the long diagonal, Black has more problems with the defence of his b-pawn than White does with the protection of the a-pawn.

23.a3 \(\text{Qf}5\) 24.\(\text{B}\)bl \(\text{Exd}1\) \(\uparrow\) 25.\(\text{B}\)xd1 \(\text{W}c7\)
25...\(\text{Wa}5\) is answered by 26.\(\text{Cc}1\) \(\uparrow\).

26.\(\text{Dd}3\) \(\uparrow\)

**Diagram 23-4**
Attacking the strong knight on c5.

26...h6?!  
26...g6 would be safer.

27.\(\text{Cc}1\) \(\text{Qe}7\)?!  
Not 27...\(\text{Exd}3\)? 28.\(\text{Bxc}7\) \(\text{Bxc}7\), because of 29.\(\text{W}\)e4! \(\text{Cc}1\) \(\uparrow\) 30.\(\text{Qg}2\) \(\text{Qe}1\) \(\uparrow\) 31.\(\text{h}3\) \(\uparrow\). But 27...\(\text{Dd}6\) \(\uparrow\) is an improvement.

28.\(\text{Bb}5\) \(\text{Df}5\)
Karpov waits.

29.a4?!  
Threatening to play a5.

29...\(\text{Dd}6\) 30.\(\text{Bb}1\) \(\text{Da}7\)
30...\(\text{Dd}8\) ? is an alternative.

31.\(\text{Dd}5\)!

**Diagram 23-5**
Now Kasparov sharpens the position.

31...\(\text{Dxa}4\) ?
Karpov wants to simplify the position, but underestimates the danger. 31...\(\text{Dxa}4\) is also very dangerous after 32.\(\text{Wxb}6\). The correct move is 31...\(\text{Df}5\)? and if 32.\(\text{Dc}6\) \(\text{Dxa}4\) 33.\(\text{Wxb}6\), then 33...\(\text{Dd}3\) \(\uparrow\).

32.\(\text{Bxc}8\) \(\text{Dxc}8\) 33.\(\text{Dd}1\)?
Kasparov does not exploit his first opportunity. 33.\(\text{Wb}5\)! would be better: 33...\(\text{Dh}7\) \(\uparrow\) (33...\(\text{Dd}6\) 34.\(\text{Wc}6\) \(\uparrow\); 33...\(\text{Df}8\) 34.\(\text{Dc}6\) \(\text{Da}8\) 35.\(\text{Dd}3\) \(\text{g}6\) 36.\(\text{Dd}4\) \(\uparrow\)) 34.\(\text{Dc}6\) \(\text{Da}8\) 35.\(\text{Dd}3\) \(\uparrow\) (35.\(\text{Dg}2\) is also interesting) 35...\(\text{f}5\) (35...\(\text{g}6\) 36.\(\text{Dd}7\) \(\text{Dg}7\) 37.\(\text{Dc}5\) \(\uparrow\)) 36.\(\text{Dd}8\) (threatening \(\text{Dc}7\)) 36...\(\text{Dc}5\) 37.\(\text{Dg}2\) \(\uparrow\) with a strong attack.

33...\(\text{Dc}7\) ?
33...\(\text{Dc}5\) \(\uparrow\) would save him. 34.\(\text{Dd}8\) \(\uparrow\) \(\text{h}7\) 35.\(\text{Dx}c8\) ? is followed by 35...\(\text{Dxa}1\) \(\uparrow\) and then ...\(\text{x}e5\).

34.\(\text{Wd}8\) \(\uparrow\) \(\text{h}7\) 35.\(\text{Dxf}7\) \(\uparrow\)

**Diagram 23-6**
The black kingside has been decisively weakened and Kasparov went on to win. Here is the rest of the
There is one typical mistake made by many players — they simply learn the opening moves by rote. But as soon as they are out of their preparation, they no longer have any understanding of the position which has arisen. **Even more important than learning specific variations is understanding the typical middlegame positions and being familiar with the correct plans.**

Study games by strong players and find for yourself some model games which illustrate important plans or ideas in the opening and the middlegame. Here is just such a model game.

**E. Lobron – J. Timman**

Brussels (rapid) 1992

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.g3 dxc4 4.e4

4.c3 is simpler if you want to play the double fianchetto system, since it allows White to avoid certain lines with ...dxc4.

4...d5

The other important variation is 8...c5 9.dxc3 and now:

- a) 9...d4?! 10.exd4 cxd4 11.d5 d3 12.cxd5 \( \text{dxg2} \) 13.d5 f6 (\( \Delta \text{f3} \)) – ECO.

**Diagram 23-7**

- b) 9.dxc6 10.d5 d5 11.d5 d5 (11...d5 12.d4) 12.d4 We shall see in the test how White should handle this position.

9.bxc4 c5 10.e2 d5 11.d3

A standard move. But 11.dxc3?! db4?! 12.d4± is also possible.
11...\[c7 12.\[c3 \[ad8

Diagram 23-8

13.\[e1!?

An important plan for White. He is preparing f2-f4 and operations on the kingside. These activities are supported by the strong bishop on b2.

13...\[a6?!

Another standard plan. Black seeks counterplay on the queenside and prepares ...b6-b5.

14.f4 \[a7 15.a4

15.a4?!

15...\[xg2 16.\[xg2 \[c6

A logical move for a rapid game. The knight is aiming for b4. But 16...\[c6? would be more prudent.

Diagram 23-9

17.g4

The logical continuation. White coordinates his pawns, queen, knight and, of course, the bishop for a concerted attack.

17...\[b4 18.g5 \[e8 19.\[e4?!

An interesting pawn sacrifice. White simply threatens \[f6+.  

19...\[xd3 20.\[xd3 \[xd3 21.\[f6+ \[xf6

21...\[h8? would be bad, because of 22.f6xh7! \[xh7 23.\[e4++.  

Diagram 23-9

22.gxf6 \[g6

23.\[ad1!

Lobron is playing with great energy and brings all his forces into play. His pawn wedge on f6 paralyses the black pieces. The really bitter pill for Black is that his rook on \[f8 remains shut in.

23...\[xe3 24.\[xe5

24.\[d2?! \[d6 25.e5 is followed by 25...\[xe5 26.fxe5 \[xc4∞.

Diagram 23-10

24...\[xe5

The exchange sacrifice is almost forced. 24...\[c8?! is met by 25.\[d2, intending \[d2-d8.

25.fxe5 \[xe5 26.\[g3!

White has good prospects in the endgame too, because the black queenside is weak.

26...\[e2

After 26...\[xg3?\[d2? 27.hxg3+, White can continue with either \[d7 or \[b1.
27.\(\text{h4}\) b5 28.\(\text{f4}\) \(\text{g7}\)?

28...\(\text{e5}\)! is necessary, in order to clear the e6-square for the knight. If White replies 29.\(\text{h6}\)? then Black has 29...\(\text{xf6}\)!.

29.\(\text{d2}\)

Diagram 23-11

Forcing an advantageous endgame. Although Black has three pawns for the exchange, the black pieces are very badly placed.

29...\(\text{g4}\)† 30.\(\text{g4}\) \(\text{hxf4}\) 31.\(\text{d8}\) g5 32.\(\text{b1}\)

The pin and the white a-pawn are the deciding factors. Lobron plays the ending, as he did the whole game, very well.

32...\(\text{e6}\) 33.\(\text{xh6}\) \(\text{xf6}\) 34.\(\text{xa6}\) \(\text{c7}\) 35.\(\text{xf8}\) \(\text{xa6}\) 36.a5

The knight cannot put up a proper fight against the a-pawn.

36...\(\text{g7}\) 37.a8 \(\text{c7}\) 38.a8 \(\text{g6}\)

38...\(\text{f6}\) is followed by 39.\(\text{f2}\) and then \(\text{g3}\), or the immediate 39.\(\text{b8}\)!

39.\(\text{xf6}\) 35.\(\text{g5}\) \(\text{d6}\) 40.\(\text{f2}\) \(\text{c6}\) 41.\(\text{e3}\) \(\text{a6}\) 42.\(\text{f4}\) \(\text{d6}\)

43.\(\text{g8}\) \(\text{b4}\) 44.\(\text{b8}\) \(\text{d3}\)† 45.\(\text{g5}\) \(\text{c7}\) 46.\(\text{b5}\) f4 47.\(\text{xf4}\) \(\text{c6}\) 48.\(\text{b6}\)† \(\text{d7}\) 49.\(\text{b5}\) \(\text{c6}\) 50.a6 \(\text{e5}\)† 51.\(\text{xf4}\) \(\text{xc4}\)

1–0

In the test which follows, you will become acquainted with some more ideas. Please play through all the sample games in order to get a better understanding of this system.
Ex. 23-1

G.Kasparov – G.Sosonko
Brussels (blitz) 1987

1. ♜f3 d5 2. c4 e6 3. b3 ♜f6 4. ♝b2 ♛e7 5. g3 0-0 6. ♝g2 c5 7.0-0 ♛c6 8.e3 dxe4 9. bx e4 b6 10. ♝e2 ♛a6 11. ♝c3 ♛e8 12. ♞fd1 ♛d7 13. ♝d3 ♛f8

Diagram Ex. 23-1

14. ♝e1!

(2 points)

White prepares f2-f4. We have already seen this typical idea in Diagram 23-8.

1 consolation point for 14. ♝b5.

14... ♛b7 15. f4 a6 16. g4 ♝e8 17. g5 ♝a5 18. a4 ♝xg2 19. ♝xg2 ♛c6 20. ♝xc4 ♛f8 21. ♝xe3 ♝xb8 22. h4 b5 23. axb5 axb5 24. ♝e5 ♝xe5 25. ♝xe5 ♛bc8 26. ♝d2 ♛c6 27. ♝ad1 ♝xc4 28. ♝xc4 ♝xd2 29. ♝xd2 ♛a6 30. ♝e2 ♛a3? 31. h5 ♛a5 32. g6! ♛f6 33. ♝c3 ♛d8? 34. ♝xa5

1-0

Ex. 23-2

J.Timman – B.Spassky
Sochi 1973

1. ♜f3 d5 2. c4 e6 3. g3 ♜f6 4. ♝g2 ♛e7 5.0-0 0-0 6. b3 c5 7. e3 ♜c6 8. ♝h2 b6 9. ♝c3 dxc4 10. bx c4 ♛b7 11. ♝e2 ♛c7 12. ♝d3 ♝ad8 13. ♝ad1 a6 14. ♝g5

Diagram Ex. 23-2

14... ♝a7!

(2 points)

Now we know who Timman got the idea from! Black secures counterplay by preparing... b5.

15. f4 ♝xg2 16. ♝xg2 b5 17. ♝g1 b4 18. ♝b1 ♝c6 19. ♝d2 a5 20. ♝g4 ♝d7 21. ♝de4 ♝xh4 22. dxe4 ♛c7 23. ♝f3 a4 24. g5 ♝xd1 25. ♝xd1 ♛h8 26. ♝h4 ♛d5 27. ♝xd8 ♛xd8 28. ♝c2 a3 29. ♝al f6 30. ♝f2 ♛f7 31. ♝e2 ♛b8 32. ♝d2 ♛b7 33. ♝d3 h6 34. gxh6 gxh6 35. ♝f2 ♛e8 36. ♝c2 ♛d7 37. ♛f5? e5 38. ♝e2 ♛d8 39. ♝d1 ♛f8 40. ♝g1 ♛f7

41. ♝d3 ♛h5-- 42. ♝h2 ♛d1 43. ♝xe5 fxe5

1-0

Ex. 23-3

J.Dorfman – J.Klinger
Sarajevo 1988

1. ♜f3 ♝f6 2. g3 b6 3. ♝g2 ♝b7 4.0-0 e6 5. c4 ♛c6 6. b3 0-0 7. ♝b2 c5 8. e3 d5 9. ♝c3 ♛c6 10. ♝xd5 ♝xd5 11. ♝xd5 ♛xd5 12. ♝d4 ♛ad8 13. ♝e5 ♛d6 14. ♝xc6 ♝xc6 15. ♝g4 ♛xd4 (15...g6 16. dxc5±) 16. ♝xd4 g6 17. ♝xe6 ♛xc4 18. ♝e1 ♛d6 19. ♝e4 (19. ♝d1 e5 20. ♝b2?) 19...f5 20. ♛c2 ♛d7

Diagram Ex. 23-3

21. ♛a1!

(2 points)

White prepares ♝fd1, while ♛b2 may also become a possibility.

1 point for 21. ♝d1. The game move sets the opponent greater practical problems.

21... ♛c8 22. ♛e2!

The immediate 22. ♛b2?! is not dangerous, due to 22... ♛f6=.

22... ♛xe2? 23. ♛c1! ♛f6± would be better.

23. ♛xc1 ♛e8 24. ♝d1 ♛c7 25. ♛b2± e5 26. ♝xe5 ♛xe5 27. ♝xe5 ♛d8 28. ♛d4 ♛c8 29. a4 ♛f7 30. ♛g2 ♛e6 31. ♛f3 g5 32. e4 ♛g4 33. ♛e3 ♛g5 34. ♛f3 ♛xf3+ 35. ♛xf3 ♛xd8 36. h4 ♛f6 37. ♛e3 ♛xe4 38. ♛xe4 h5 39. ♛d3 ♛e7 40. ♛f3 ♛g8 41. ♛f2 ♛d6 42. ♛d3 a6 43. ♛f3 b5 44. axb5 axb5 45. ♛e1 ♛g4 46. ♛e3+ ♛e5 47. ♛g2 ♛f6 48. ♛f3 ♛g6 49. ♛d2 ♛e4 50. ♛f4 ♛f6 51. ♛h3 ♛e1 52. ♛d3 ♛h1 53. ♛g2 ♛f1 54. ♛f3 b4 55. ♛e4 ♛c3 56. ♛d6+ ♛g7 57. ♛d5 ♛g6 58. ♛g5+ ♛h6 59. ♛f5 ♛xb3 60. ♛xh5+ ♛g7 61. ♛e5+ ♛xe5 62. ♛g5+ ♛h6 63. ♛xe5 ♛b1 64. ♛d4 ♛c1 65. ♛c3 ♛c3+ 66. ♛f4 ♛c4 67. ♛f3 ♛c3+ 68. ♛g4 ♛c4 69. ♛h3 b3 70. ♛b5 ♛c3 71. ♛g4 ♛g6 72. ♛b6+ ♛g7 73. ♛h5 ♛c4+ 74. ♛g5

1-0
Ex. 23-4

M. Sorokin – B. Sambuev
St. Petersburg 1999

1. e4 f5 2. c4 e6 3. g3 b6 4. g2 b7 5.0-0 c5 6. c3 e7 7. b3 0-0 8. e3 d5 9. b2 bd7 (9... dxc4 10. bxc4 e6?) 10. e2 a6 11. ef1 d7 12. acl dxc4 (12... ad8 13. cxd5 exd5 14. d4± E. Olafsson – G. Sigurjonsson, Reykjavik 1968) 13. bxc4 c6?! (13... ac8) 14. d4 b6?

Diagram 23-4

15. d5! (1 point)

15... exd5 16. cxd5 d5
16... d5 17. cxd5 cxd5 18. h4+–

17. d5±

18... d6
18... a5xe5 19. edx5 c6 20. a5x5+–
19. edx5± d5 20. a5d1 cd8 21. a5d2 a5x3
21... d6 22. a5x5 c6 23. f4±

22. a5xb7 a5xb7 23. c2 e4 24. a5xc4 a5c5
25. a5xa6 h6x2 26. g2 efe8 27. c1! d5±
28. a5b2 a5e3! 29. a5xe3 a5xe3 30. a5d3++ g6
31. a5c7 d4 32. a5f4 a5f8 33. a5xf7++ h6
34. a5f4 a5c8 35. a5e7
1–0

Ex. 23-5

R. Bauert – A. Yusupov
Swiss Team Ch 1999

1. e4 f5 2. c4 e6 3. b3 a6 4. g2 b7 5.0-0 c5 0–0 6.0–0 b6 7. b2 b7 8.e3 dxc4 9. bxc4 c5 10. d3 a5 11. e2 c7 12. c3 a6 13. ed1 fdd8 14. ab1 a8b8 15. a5a1 a8a1 16. a5e1

Diagram 23-5

16... a5a7! (2 points)

Black follows Spassky’s plan of preparing...

17. a5xa8 a5xa8 18. a5b3
18. a4?!

Ex. 23-6

G. Dizdar – A. Yusupov
Bundesliga 1992

1. e4 f5 2. c4 e6 3. b3 b6 4. g2 b7 5.0-0 c5 0–0 6.0–0 b6 7. b2 b7 8.e3 dxc4 9. bxc4 c5 10. e2 a6 11. e2 a5 12. b4 d5 13. e4 e5 14. a4 dxe4 15. fxe4 fxe4 16. a5xe4

Diagram 23-6

14. f4! (2 points)

The typical attacking plan in this system.

14... a5e5 15. a5g7 a5e4 f6 17. a5e4 a5d6 18. a5c3 a5d6 19. a5b5 a5a6 20. a5xd6 a5xd6 21. a5b1 a5c6 22. a5c3 a5b8 23. a5g5 f5 24. a4 e5 25. a5xe5 a5xe5 26. a5xe5 a5xe5 27. a5 bxa5 28. a5xb8 a5xb8 29. a5g2 a5d6 30. a5b1 a5xc4 31. a5b7 a5g6 32. a5d5 a5f7 33. a5c6 a5g6 34. a5d5† a5e7 35. a5b7† a5f7 1/2–1/2

Ex. 23-7

R. Vaganian – A. Karpov
USSR Ch, Leningrad 1971

1. e4 f5 2. c4 e6 3. b3 a6 4. g2 b7 5.0-0 c5 0–0 6.0–0 b6 7. b2 b7 8.e3 dxc4 9. bxc4 c5 10. d3 a5 11. e2 c7 12. c3 a6 13. ed1 fdd8 14. ab1 a8b8 15. a5a1 a8a1 16. a5e1

Diagram 23-7

14. d4! (1 point)
Solutions

14...cxd4 15. ∅xd4 ∅xd4 16. ∅xd4 ∅d6?
  Black should have played 16...∅d7
  17. ∅g4±.
  See Ex. 23-8.

Ex. 23-8

R. Vaganian – A. Karpov
USSR Ch. Leningrad 1971

17. ∅dc1!
  (2 points)
  White removes his rook from the d-file with tempo. This means that next move White can attack the d6-rook without allowing Black the chance to exchange rooks.

17... ∅d7 18. ∅e5 ∅d5
  18...∅d2 is followed by 19. ∅g4 g6 20. ∅c7
  ∅b5 21. ∅c3 h5 22. ∅c4+-.

19. ∅c7 ∅d8 20. ∅xb7 ∅xe5 21. ∅d1+- ∅e8
  22. ∅xa7 ∅a5 23. ∅b7 ∅c5 24. a4 ∅a8
  25. ∅bd7 ∅b8 26. ∅b5 ∅a3 27. h7
  1–0

Ex. 23-9

M. Sorokin – S. Slipak
Villa Martelli 1997

1. ∅f3 ∅f6 2. c4 b6 3. g3 ∅b7 4. ∅g2 e6 5.0–0
  ∅e7 6. b3 0–0 7. ∅b2 d5 8. e3 c5 9. ∅c3 dxc4
  10. bxc4 ∅c6 11. ∅e2 ∅c7 12. ∅e1! ∅ad8
  (12...a6? 13. f4 ∅a7 14. a4 ∅fd8 15. g4 ∅xg2
  16. ∅xg2 ∅c6= A. Sokolov – A. Kabanets, Bundesliga 1996)
  13. f4 ∅b4 14. ∅f2? ∅xg2
  15. ∅xg2 ∅d7?? (better is 15...∅b7, planning to meet 16.g4 with 16...∅e4; White may consider playing 16.d3?! before advancing the g-pawn)

Diagram 23-9

16.g4!
  (2 points)
  The standard attack.

16... ∅e8
  16... ∅d3 is followed by 17. ∅xd3 ∅xd3
  18. ∅d5! ∅xd5 (18... ∅xe2?? 19. ∅xe7†+-)
  19. cxd5 ∅xd5±.

17. ∅g5± ∅d6
  Again 17... ∅d3? 18. ∅xd3 ∅xd3 is bad, because of 19. ∅d5†.

18. ∅f3 ∅f5 19. ∅e5 ∅b7 20. ∅f1 a6
  Black could seek counterplay with 20...f6? 21. gxf6 ∅xf6.

21. a3 ∅c6 22. ∅g4 ∅h8 23. ∅e4 b5 24. ∅g3
  bxc4 25. ∅c3 ∅cd4? 25... ∅h4 26. ∅gf2±

26. exd4 cxd4
  The strong centre pawns provide reasonable compensation for the piece.

Ex. 23-10

A. Yusupov – A. Panchenko
Vilnius 1978

1. c4 e6 2. ∅f3 ∅f6 3. g3 d5 4. b3 ∅c7 5. ∅g2 0–0 6.0–0 b6 7. ∅b2 ∅b7 8. e3 c5 9. ∅c3 dxc4
  10. bxc4 ∅c6 11. d3 (11. ∅e2?!) 11... ∅b4

12. ∅b3!
  (3 points)
  An interesting tactical idea! Only 1 consolation point for 12. ∅e5.

12... c8
  Black cannot take the d-pawn:
  a) 12... ∅xd3? 13. ∅e5 ∅f5 14. ∅xb7 ∅ab8
  15. g2 ∅xe5 16. a3 ∅d3 (16... ∅a6 17. ∅b5
   ∅f5 18. ∅a4+–) 17. ∅d5±
  b) 12... ∅xd3? 13. ∅ad1+–
  13. ∅f1 ∅d8 14. ∅e2 ∅c6 15. a3 ∅a6
  16. ∅f4±

Ex. 23-11

Variation from the game

R. Sherbakov – V. Loginov
St. Petersburg 1998

1. ∅f3 ∅f6 2. c4 b6 3. g3 ∅b7 4. ∅g2 e6 5.0–0
  ∅e7 6. b3 0–0 7. ∅b2 d5 8. e3 c5 9. ∅c3
dxc4 10. bxc4 ∅c6 11. ∅e2 ∅c8 (11... ∅c7?!
  12. ∅ad1 12... ∅c7 (12... ∅c7?!) 13. ∅e1 a6
  14. f4 ∅a7 15. g4 ∅xg2 16. ∅xg2 ∅a8 17. d3
  b5 18. g5 ∅d7
Solutions

Diagram 23-11

19.\textit{f}3!

(2 points)

This is in line with the standard plan: the rook is heading to h3. A very interesting alternative is 19.\textit{f}5?! (also 2 points) and if 19...\textit{x}g5, then 20.fx\textit{e}6 \textit{fxe}6 21.\textit{g}g4 gives White a strong attack.

19...\textit{d}d8 20.\textit{h}3 \textit{bxc}4 21.\textit{dxc}4 \textit{d}8 22.\textit{xd}8 23.\textit{e}1! \textit{c}6 24.\textit{d}d3 \textit{e}7 25.\textit{e}4 \textit{d}b4 26.\textit{d}d2!

White has good attacking chances.

Diagram 23-12

19.\textit{g}5! (2 points)

White fights energetically for the initiative.

19...\textit{e}5 20.\textit{e}5?! is answered by 21.\textit{xf}8+ \textit{xf}8 22.\textit{g}6 (or 22.\textit{f}f2?! and 23.\textit{d}4) 22...\textit{hxg}6 23.\textit{h}4.

21.\textit{xf}8+ \textit{xf}8 22.\textit{e}4 \textit{h}6

22...\textit{e}7 or 22...\textit{d}8 is followed by 23.\textit{ef}1+ \textit{g}8 24.\textit{g}4 and then \textit{f}4.

23.\textit{a}5!+ \textit{bxa}5

If 23...\textit{c}6, then 24.\textit{ef}1+ \textit{e}7 25.\textit{g}4.

24.\textit{xc}5! \textit{e}7

24...\textit{xc}5 25.\textit{a}3 \textit{e}7 26.\textit{d}4+-

25.\textit{f}1+ \textit{g}8 26.\textit{g}4! \textit{c}7

As Sherbakov's analysis demonstrates, other moves are no better:

a) 26...\textit{e}c6 27.\textit{e}d6+ \textit{h}8 28.\textit{dh}6+-

b) 26...\textit{xc}5 27.\textit{a}3 \textit{e}5 28.\textit{xe}6+--

c) 26...\textit{d}d6!? 27.\textit{f}f6!? \textit{e}8 28.\textit{d}d4+

27.\textit{d}4 \textit{e}8?

Better is 27...\textit{hf}8+.

28.\textit{d}4 \textit{c}7

Or 28...\textit{c}6 29.\textit{c}5+--

29.\textit{c}5 \textit{xc}5 30.\textit{xc}5+--

1-0

Ex. 23-12

R.Sherbakov - V.Loginov
St. Petersburg 1998

1.\textit{f}3 \textit{f}6 2.\textit{c}4 \textit{b}6 3.\textit{g}3 \textit{b}7 4.\textit{g}2 \textit{e}6 5.0-0 \textit{e}7 6.\textit{b}3 0-0 7.\textit{b}2 \textit{c}5 8.e3 \textit{d}5 9.\textit{c}3 \textit{xc}4 10.\textit{xc}4 \textit{c}6 11.\textit{e}2 \textit{e}8 12.\textit{ad}1 \textit{d}7 13.\textit{e}1!? a6 14.f4 \textit{d}a7 15.a4 \textit{xe}2 16.\textit{xe}2 \textit{d}7!? (16...\textit{fd}8 17.f5) 17.\textit{g}4 \textit{e}8?! (17...\textit{fd}8) 18.\textit{gf}5!? (18.g5!? \textit{g}6 19.\textit{g}3 \textit{f}d8 20.\textit{h}3 \textit{g}6 followed by ...\textit{f}8-g7=) 18...\textit{f}6 (18...\textit{xe}5 19.\textit{d}d5 \textit{d}8 20.\textit{gxf}5 gives White the initiative on the kingside) 19.\textit{fxe}6 \textit{fxe}6 (19...\textit{xe}6 20.\textit{d}f4 and then \textit{fd}5+)

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 24

20 points and above  \rightarrow Excellent

16 points and above \rightarrow Good

12 points  \rightarrow Pass mark

If you scored less than 12 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Typical mistakes in the endgame

In this chapter we shall take a look at some typical mistakes in the endgame. In order to play the endgame properly, we must endeavour to follow the general endgame principles (Build Up Your Chess 2, Chapter 2). If you unnecessarily contravene these principles, then normally you are punished for it.

Diagram 24-1

(Elo 2097) – (Elo 2051)

12th training tournament, Bad Wurzach 2007

1...f4?!

Black puts his pawn on a dark square and makes it considerably more difficult to realize his material advantage. To find the correct move, all he has to do is to remember Capablanca's rule from Chapter 17!

After 1...g4! 2.\texttt{xf4} $\texttt{d5} 3.\texttt{b3} h5++ Black sets up his pawns carefully and at the same time fixes the opposing ones on the dark squares, so that he can later attack them with the bishop. For example, after 4.\texttt{g5} $\texttt{d6} 5.\texttt{f6} (5.\texttt{h6} $\texttt{e7} 6.\texttt{f4} h4++) there follows 5...f4 6.dxe4 $\texttt{xe4} 7.gxf4 $\texttt{xg4} 8.\texttt{b4} \texttt{wh2} 9.\texttt{xb5} \texttt{g1} 10.h4 d3 11.exd3 $\texttt{xd3}++.

2.dxe4 $\texttt{f5}$

2...$\texttt{xe4}!?! 3.f3 $\texttt{e5} 4.gxf4 is no longer a clear win either.

3.$\texttt{hxg3} \texttt{xe4} 4.\texttt{f3} $\texttt{d5} 5.\texttt{b3} $\texttt{d6}$

5...d3?! 6.exd3 $\texttt{d4}+$ would be better. Later Black will be unable to find any way to break through.

6.\texttt{g4} $\texttt{c5}$

6...d3 is now met with 7.e3.

7.$\texttt{e1} \texttt{e5} 8.\texttt{g3} $\texttt{d5} 9.$\texttt{e1} \texttt{b6} 10.\texttt{b4} $\texttt{c6}$

11.$\texttt{g3} \texttt{c5}+$ 12.$\texttt{b3} $\texttt{d5} 13.$\texttt{e1}$

White could already claim a threefold repetition of the position...

13.$\texttt{d6} 14.$\texttt{f2} $\texttt{c5} 15.$\texttt{e1} $\texttt{d5} 16.$\texttt{f2} $\texttt{c5}$

17.$\texttt{g3} \texttt{d6} 18.$\texttt{e1}$

With a draw. 18...d3 achieves nothing, in view of 19.e4 $\texttt{d4} 20.$\texttt{f2} $\texttt{e5} 21.$\texttt{g3} $\texttt{e6} 22.$\texttt{xd6}$

\texttt{xd6} 23.$\texttt{c3}=$.
Of course, mistakes occur for a variety of reasons. Many failures have to do with a lack of endgame knowledge, poor calculation of variations, bad endgame technique or tackling the endgame in the wrong way.

The lack of knowledge of important basic endgames often leads to blunders.

Diagram 24-2

P.Carty – W.Wegener
Bad Wiessee 1997

1...h2??

Black does not know this elementary fortress! Of course, the correct continuation is 1...h2 2.f1 g3 3.g1 e3 4.h1 g4=.

2.f1 g3+ 3.f2 e4+ 4.f1=

Black played on for another 30 moves, but naturally enough he was unable to change matters! The position is dead drawn.

Precision is required in the endgame. There is frequently no second best move, but just one single solution. It is important to calculate the required variations accurately.

Diagram 24-3

V.Kramnik – A.Naiditsch
Dortmund 2007

1..c5?

This natural looking move loses. The correct defence is 1..d8! 2.a6 f8 3.e2 e7 4.b6 xb6 5.xb6 xa7=.

2.xc1 d4 3.e4! xa7

Or 3...b6 4.c6 xa7 4.a6 and then b6=.

4.a4 b8

4...g6 5.b6+=

5.xa7 f8 6.a5 c7 7.e2 b6

If 7...d6, then 8.d3 c5 9.a7=.

8.d3 d6

8...g5 would put up a more stubborn defence.

9.c4 d2 10.b6 d6 11.b5 c2+ 12.d4

Black resigned, on account of 12...c8 13.d5+ c6 14.c5+=.
Very many mistakes are made in the transition to a pawn ending. Unfortunately, my opponent in the following game was very careful!

He calculated very precisely and played:
1...\( \text{f5} \)!
1...\( \text{c6}?! \) would have led to the loss of the game.
2.\( \text{xc6} \) \( \text{xb7} \) 6.\( \text{b5} \) \( \text{b7} \) 7.\( \text{b4} \) and Black is in zugzwang:
7...\( \text{c7} \) 8.\( \text{a6} \) \( \text{c6} \) 9.\( \text{a7} \) \( \text{b5} \) (...\( \text{b5} \) 10.\( \text{a6} \)++)
10.\( \text{b7} \) \( \text{xb4} \) 11.\( \text{xb6} \) \( \text{c4} \) 12.\( \text{c6} \) \( \text{d4} \) 13.\( \text{d6} += 

The game move leads to a draw.
2.\( \text{xf5} \) \( \text{xb3} \) 3.\( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{xf5} \) 4.\( \text{xf5} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 5.\( \text{xe3} \) 6.\( \text{hxh6} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 7.\( \text{xg5} \) \( \text{xe5} \) 8.\( \text{xg5} \) \( \text{b5} \) 9.\( \text{f4} \) \( \text{b4} \) 10.\( \text{e3} \) \( \text{c6} \) 11.\( \text{d3} \) \( \text{d5} \) 12.\( \text{g4} \) \( \text{e5} \) 13.\( \text{c4} \) \( \text{f4} \) 14.\( \text{xb4} \) \( \text{xe4} 
\( \frac{1}{2} \)-\( \frac{1}{2} \)

As a matter of fact, so many good games have been spoiled because one of the protagonists played without due care and attention and did not take on board what his opponent was threatening.

The position is very complicated. But Black has to play very carefully, because his opponent can create an outside passed pawn on the queenside. However, with careful defence, there should be no major problems, since the black pawns on the kingside are also dangerous. But now Black started to miss the simplest of ideas on the part of his opponent! 1...\( \text{e7} \) would have been better: 2.\( \text{d3} \) \( \text{d6} \) 3.\( \text{c2} \) \( \text{e5} \) 4.\( \text{a4} \) \( \text{e7} \) 5.\( \text{b4} \) \( \text{c6} \) 6.\( \text{e4} \) \( \text{e6} \) 7.\( \text{b5} \) \( \text{b8} +=
2.\( \text{c2} \) ! \( \text{d5} \)

Only now did Black notice that 2...\( \text{f2} \) is met by 3.\( \text{f2} \) with a simple win: 3...\( \text{f6} \) 4.\( \text{f2} \) \( \text{e3} \) 5.\( \text{xe3} \) fxe3\( \dagger \) 6.\( \text{xe3} +=

260
Typical mistakes in the endgame

3.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d3 e5 4.a4 \textit{e}e6 5.b4 \textit{c}c7 6.a3} \)

Nothing is achieved by 6.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c4 \textit{d}6} \) and if 7.\( \texttt{\textit{a}a3} \), then 7...\( \texttt{\textit{e}e4} \) 8.\( \texttt{\textit{f}xe4} \) \( g4 \).

6...\( \texttt{\textit{d}d5}\)??

Again Black overlooks his opponent’s first move! 6...\( \texttt{\textit{d}d5} \) would still have led to a draw after 7.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c2=} \), because it is dangerous for White to play for a win:

a) 7.\( \texttt{\textit{b}b4} \) \( \texttt{\textit{e}e3} \) 8.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c4} \) \( \texttt{\textit{d}xe2} \) 9.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c4} \) \( g4 \) 10.\( \texttt{\textit{b}b6} \) \( \texttt{\textit{b}b4=} \)

b) 7.\( \texttt{\textit{b}b5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{d}d3} \) 8.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d2} \) \( \texttt{\textit{e}e5} \) 9.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c4} \) \( \texttt{\textit{d}d6} \) 10.\( \texttt{\textit{a}a3} \) \( \texttt{\textit{d}d5} \) 11.\( \texttt{\textit{b}b3} \) \( \texttt{\textit{c}c5} \) 12.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d3} \) \( \texttt{\textit{b}b4=} \)

7.\( \texttt{\textit{b}b1} \! \)

After the white knight reaches c3 with tempo, Black can no longer save the game. Even so, I also overlooked the next knight move!

7...\( \texttt{\textit{e}e4} \)?? 8.\( \texttt{\textit{f}xe4} \) \( \texttt{\textit{d}d5} \) 9.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d2} \)\

Now everything is clear. The game concluded:

9...\( \texttt{\textit{b}b5} \) 10.\( \texttt{\textit{f}f3} \) \( \texttt{\textit{f}f6} \) 11.\( \texttt{\textit{a}xa5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{c}c5} \) 12.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d6} \) 13.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{b}b5} \) 14.\( \texttt{\textit{e}e5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{g}g6} \) 15.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c6} \)

[Diagram 24-6]

1–0

1.f4?

1.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d4} \) wins easily: 1...\( \texttt{\textit{d}d7} \) 2.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{c}c7} \) 3.h4 \( h5 \) 4.g3 \( f6 \) 5.\( \texttt{\textit{f}fxf6} \) \( \texttt{\textit{g}gxf6} \) 6.\( \texttt{\textit{g}g4=} \)

1...\( \texttt{\textit{f}f5} \)?? 2.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d4} \)

Or 2.\( \texttt{\textit{f}fxf6} \) \( \texttt{\textit{xf6}} \)!

2...\( \texttt{\textit{d}d7} \) 3.\( \texttt{\textit{c}c5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{c}c7} \)– 4.\( \texttt{\textit{g}g4=} \) \( \texttt{\textit{g}g6} \)

Black could even win: 4...\( \texttt{\textit{e}e5} \) 5.\( \texttt{\textit{f}fxf5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{h}hxg5} \) 6.\( \texttt{\textit{g}gxf5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{e}e5} \) 7.e6 \( \texttt{\textit{f}f4=} \)

5.\( \texttt{\textit{g}gxf5} \) \( \texttt{\textit{g}gxh5} \) 7.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d4} \) \( \texttt{\textit{c}c6} \) 8.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d3} \) \( \texttt{\textit{d}d5} \) 9.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d3} \) \( \texttt{\textit{c}c6} \) 10.\( \texttt{\textit{d}d4} \)

\( \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \)

In order to reduce the number of such mistakes, you must continue to work on your endgame technique (see also Chapter 20). It is important, in good times and in bad, to maintain the correct attitude during the game!

In the test which follows (for which all the games have been taken from our training tournaments in Bad Wurzach!), you must avoid the mistakes described above!
Solutions

Ex. 24-1

(Elo 1291) – (Elo 1618)

14th training tournament 2009

Black sensibly accepted his opponent's offer of a draw, which would be the result after any normal move in the position (such as 1...@c6).

(1 point)

This position cannot be won, but if you try hard enough you can lose it! For example:
1...g5?? 2.hxg5@ @xg5 3.exf5 @xf5 4.g4@ hxg4 5.fxg4@ @xg4 6.e4 @g3 7.@xe5 @f3 8.@d5 @e3 9.@c5 @d3 10.@xb5+-.

White could also be caught out. After 1...fxe4 2.@xe4 @c6, the correct way to draw is 3.f4=, but if White was tempted by 3.g4?? he would lose: 3...g5! 4.hxg5 h4 5.@e3 @f7 6.@f2 @g6 7.@g2 @xg5 8.@h3 @f4 9.@xh4 @xf3 10.g5 e4 11.g6 e3 12.g7 e2 13.g3@ e1@ 13...@h1=+

Ex. 24-2

(Elo 2024) – (Elo 1636)

14th training tournament 2009

Black could still save the game:
1...@g2+!

(1 point)

2.@f1 (2.@e3 @d5 3.@d3 @f2=) 2...@e7!!

(1 point also for 1...@f4 or 1...@f5) 2.@g4 (3.@g2 @c2+ 4.@g1 @f2 5.@a7 6.@a8+=) 2...@c4+ 3.@g5 @c5 4.@xg6 @f6=+

The game continued:
1...@c6?? 2.@a7+ @d6

No better is 2...@e8 3.e7=-- nor 2...@f6 3.@f1=--.

3.@d7+ @c5 4.e7 @e8 5.@d8

Or 5.@c1=++.

5...@c8 6.@xc8+

1–0

Ex. 24-3

(Elo 1669) – (Elo 1884)

14th training tournament 2009

Many roads lead to the draw. The simplest is:
1...@c3+

(1 point)

(1 point also for 1...@f4 or 1...@f5) 2.@g4 (3.@g2 @c2+ 4.@g1 @f2 5.@a7 6.@a8+=) 2...@c4+ 3.@g5 @c5 4.@xg6 @f6=+

The game continued:
1...@c6?? 2.@a7+ @d6

No better is 2...@e8 3.e7=-- nor 2...@f6 3.@f1=--.

3.@d7+ @c5 4.e7 @e8 5.@d8

Or 5.@c1=++.

5...@c8 6.@xc8+

1–0

Ex. 24-4

(Elo 1760) – (Elo 1884)

13th training tournament 2008

1...a1@=+

1...@d2+ wins on the spot: 2.@e2 @b1=++

(1 point)

But Black wanted to win back his material quickly.

2.@xa1 @xa1 3.@e2 @b3 4.@d3 @d6 5.c4 @a5 6.@c3 @c6 7.d5

7...@d3=+

7...@a5 8.@b4 @b7 9.@b5 @c5 9...@b6 @d3 10.@b5 @c5

In time trouble Black wanted to avoid any sort of risk.

11.@b6

½–½

Ex. 24-5

(Elo 1644) – (Elo 1456)

11th training tournament 2006

The correct continuation would be 1...@g2+!
2.@d6 @g6+ 3.@c5 @xd3=+

(2 points)
Solutions

In the game Black played:
1...c5??
This loses the game. The correct move is:
1...c5!
(1 point)

2.bxc6 axc6 3.g4 d7 (or 3...b5=)
(another 1 point)

4...e4 e6 5.g5 d5† 6.©d4 ©f5 7.©xd5 ©xg5 8.©e6 ©f6 9.©xh6 ©e6 10.©xa5 ©d7
11.©b6 ©c8=
2.g4 d5 3.g5 d4 4.g6??
Now White loses. The typical idea 4.©e4+—would lead to victory.

(another 1 point for spotting this)
4...©c4 (4...©d6 5.©xh6 ©e6 16.g6 ©f6 7.©d5++) 5.g6 d3 6.g7 d2 7.g8<+

4...d3 5.g7 d2 6.g8<+ d1<+—+ 7.©f8+ ©c4
Or 7...©d6++.

8.©g8<+
If 8.©a3, then 8...©d5† 9.©g4 ©d4† 10.©f3 ©c3<+
8...©d5† 9.©xh6 ©xh6 10.©f4 ©d4
11.©f5 ©c4 12.©e5 ©b4 13.©d5 ©xa4
14.©c6
0–1

Ex. 24-7

(©lo 1710) – (©lo 1413)
11th training tournament 2006

1...©d7 2.©xf6 ©e4— is correct.
(2 points)

In the game Black played:
1...©c1†? 2.©b3 ©b1† 3.©b2 ©e4?

3...©h1 would be more stubborn: 4.b7 ©h8
5.©xf6 ©e4 6.©xf7<+

4.©xf4† ©xf4 5.b7
0–1

Ex. 24-8

(©lo 1644) – (©lo 1859)
11th training tournament 2006

Sometimes it is very difficult simply to wait and see. White should do nothing! (for example 1.©g7)

But the game continued:
1.b5!!
Unnecessarily weakening the b-pawn.
1...©xb5 2.axb5 ©d5 3.©e1 ©b6 4.©d2??
White could still hold the position: 4.©b4 ©d4 5.©d2 ©e4 6.©e2<+
4...©a5† 5.©d1 ©xel 6.©xel ©c5 7.b6 ©xb6 8.©d2 ©c5 9.©c3 h5
0–1

Ex. 24-9

(©lo 1751) – (©lo 1555)
10th training tournament 2005

Especially when you are in time trouble you should look for a safe way...
1...©f1† (or 1...©h1= or 1...©f7=)
(1 point)

2.©g6 ©g8=.
1...©b1?? 2.©g6?
2.h7<+
2...©b6†= 3.©h7 a3 4.©a5 ©f7 5.©a8
5.©xa3 ©f6= 6.©g8 ©b7 7.h7 ©g7† 8.©h8 ©c7
9.©a6??
9...©g8 ©g7= 9...©f5?

Black now misses the victory! 9...©f7<+
10.©a7 (10.©xa3 ©e8<+) 10...a2 11.©xe7<+
©xe7 12.©g8 a1<+ 13.h8<+ ©a8† 13.©g7
©g2† 14.©h6 ©h3† 14.©g7 ©g3† 15.©h6
©h4† 16.©g7 ©g5† 17.©h7 ©f7<+
Both players were in severe time trouble and had long since lost sight of the bigger picture. For that reason, they now agreed on a draw!

Ex. 24-10

Elo 1720 – (Elo 1800)

10th training tournament 2005

1... axb5?

This just helps White. The correct move is:
1... c4!

2. bxa6 Bxb2†

(another 1 point)

(Other moves lose, e.g. 2... Bxa6? 3. Bb7† Kf6
2... Bxc6? 3. Bb7† Kf6 4. a7 Ba6 5. Bb6+-)


2. Bxb5 Bxb5 3. Bxb5− Bxb5 4. Bxb5 Bd7
5. Be2 Bd6 6. a4 e5 7. Bd3 exf4 8. exf4 Bc7
9. Bc4 Be6 10. a5 Bb7 11. a6 Bb6 12. Bxb6†


12... Bxb6 13. a7 Bxa7 14. Bxc5 Bb7
18. Bg7 Le6 19. Bhx7 Kf7 20. h4 Kg6
21. Kg8†

1–0

Ex. 24-11

Elo 1938 – (Elo 1854)

10th training tournament 2005

1... e3?

1... e3! was the only way to a draw: 2. d8
(2. c7 Bxc7 3. Bxc7 d2=) 2... Bb3

(2 points)

3. Bc7 Bc3†


1–0

Ex. 24-12

Elo 1500 – (Elo 1350)

10th training tournament 2005

1.h4?

This move loses. White ends up in zugzwang. There is a simple draw after 1.a3=.

(2 points)

But also 1.g4= (1 point) or even 1.a4
(1 point) would be fine.

After 1.a4 play could continue 1... h5
(1... a5 2.g4=) 2.g4! fxg4 3.hxg4 hxg4 4. Be3
Bxe6 4... Bc4 5. Bc2 Bb4 6. Bg3 Bxa4
(5... Bd6 6. Bg3 Bf5 7. a5 g5 8.fxg5 Bxg5

1... h5?

1... a5! is correct: 2.a3 (2.a4 h5−+) 2... a4
(6. Bb5 Bxf4 7.a4 Bg3 8.a5 f4=+) 6... Bxf4
7.a4 Bc5 8.Bc5 f4=+

2. a3 Bc5 3. Bc3 Bb5 4. Bb3 a5 5. a4 Bb6
Bc6

½–½
Scoring

Maximum number of points is 22

19 points and above → Excellent
15 points and above → Good
11 points → Pass mark

If you scored less than 11 points, we recommend that you read the chapter again and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Final test
Final test
Final test
Final test
Solutions

F-1
Tactics /Chapter 1

G.Rotariu – Vlad
Correspondence game 1965

1.\(\text{D}xf6!\)
   (1 point)

\(1.\text{D}xf6\)

1.\(\text{D}xf6\)
   1.\(\text{D}xf6\) 2.\(\text{D}xd7+–; 1.\(\text{D}xd2\) 2.\(\text{D}xe8+–.

2.\(\text{h}6\)
   \(\text{g}8\)
   3.\(\text{D}xf7\)
   \(\text{D}xe5\)
   4.\(\text{D}g5\)
   \(\text{g}8\)
   5.\(\text{C}2\)

   (another 1 point)

   Equally good is 5.\(\text{D}e2\) and then 6.\(\text{C}4†.

   Black resigned, in view of 5...\(\text{d}6\) 6.\(\text{B}3†\)
   \(\text{h}8\) 7.\(\text{f}7†+–.

F-2
Positional play /Chapter 2

V.Smyslov – M.Botvinnik
World Ch, The Hague/Moscow 1948

1...\(\text{e}3!\)
   (1 point)

A typical idea – doubling on an open file.

2.\(\text{g}2\)

The alternatives are:

a) 2.\(\text{c}3\) 3.\(\text{g}2\) 4.\(\text{xe}3!+ (Botvinnik)

b) 2.\(\text{D}d2\) \(\text{d}8\) 3.\(\text{e}d1? \text{xf}3! 4.\text{xf}3 \text{xe}2–

2...\(\text{e}7\) 3.\(\text{g}1\)

3.\(\text{c}5?\) loses to 3...\(\text{e}1†.

3...\(\text{d}3\) 4.\(\text{d}2\) 5.\(\text{f}3\) 6.\(\text{e}8\) 6.\(\text{d}1\)

6...\(\text{xe}3\) is no better: 6...\(\text{xe}3 7.\text{xe}3 \text{xe}3+\)

6...\(\text{c}5\) 7.\(\text{b}3?!\) \(\text{e}1+– 8.\text{xc4} \text{xc4} 9.\text{el}+

\(\text{xd}1\) 10.\(\text{xd}1\) \(\text{de}8\)

Or 10...\(\text{e}1+–.

11.\(\text{c}2\)

If 11.\(\text{d}x\text{d}8† \text{xd}8\) 12.\(\text{xc}4,\) then

12...\(\text{d}4+–.

11...\(\text{d}5\)

0–1

F-3
Tactics /Chapter 3

F.Berkes – A.Braun
Balatonielle 2003

1.\(f4!\)
   (1 point)

After this strong move, the black position collapses.

1...\(\text{g}6\)

Other moves also lose quickly:

a) 1...\(\text{d}8d7\) 2.\(\text{f}5–\)

b) 1...\(\text{ex}f4\) 2.\(\text{e}5–\) (or 2.\(\text{xd}6 \text{xd}6\) 3.\(\text{e}5+-)

2.\(\text{xe}5\) 3.\(\text{xe}5\) 4.\(\text{d}6+-.

3.\(\text{xe}5\)

Black resigned, because 3...\(\text{xe}5\) is met by

4.\(\text{d}6+–.

(another 1 point for this variation)

F-4
Endgame /Chapter 5

N.Kopaev
1958

1.\(\text{d}f6!\)
   (1 point)

But not 1...\(\text{b}1? on account of 2.\(\text{e}7 \text{b}7t\)

3.\(\text{e}6 \text{b}8 4.\text{d}6 and 5.\text{d}8+–.

After 1...\(\text{e}2?\) White can win with either

2.\(\text{a}1+– or 2.\(\text{e}8 \text{a}2 3.\text{a}8\) and then 4.\(\text{e}7+–.

2.\(\text{c}6\) \(\text{e}2\)

2...\(\text{d}1†? is bad: 3.\(\text{e}8–

3.\(\text{e}6 \text{e}1 4.\text{e}2\)

Threatening \(\text{f}2†.

4...\(\text{a}1\)

(another 1 point)

5.\(\text{f}2† \text{g}7 6.\text{c}7 \text{a}7†!=

Flank attack.
Solutions

F-5
Tactics /Chapter 7
L.Portisch – M.Tal
Moscow 1967

1. b6! hxg6 2. c3+-

(2 points)

The knight is trapped.

2. f5 b5 3. axb5 axb5 4. b6 5. axa4 b5
6. axb5 axb5 7. a3 a4 8. ab1 a6 9. f3
1-0

F-6
Endgame /Chapter 12
The end of a study by
N.Grigoriev
1945

1. ... c5!

(1 point)

Bodycheck. 1. ... b5? loses after 2. d6! b6
3. b1 a6 4. c7! xa7 5. c6.

2. d7 b6! 3. b1

Or 3. d6 ba7 4. b1 a5=.

3. ... c5! 4. b7 b8= (another 1 point)

F-7
Strategy /Chapter 6
R.Mainka – A.Yusupov
German Ch, Bremen 1998

1. ... f6?!

(2 points)

Another typical idea. It is very important to attack the opposing centre in good time.

2. b3

After 2. exf6 dxf6 3. c5 b8 4. xd8 xd8 5. ad1 g4 Black has good counterplay.

2...fxe5 3. xe5 x e4

3. ... x e5 4. ad1 gives White the initiative.

4. x e4 x e5 5. ad1

5. c5 is met by 5. c5=.

5. ... f6 6. x f6 e8 7. x b6 cxb6 8. x b6 c6 9. x c6 bxc6=

F-8
Calculating variations /Chapter 8
M.Euwe – S.Tartakower
Nottingham 1936

1. d6!

(1 point)

1. ... b5 d6±

1. ... f7 2. dxe7 b7

2. c8 3. a4 bd6 4. x c7 bxe4 5. x b7=+

3. f d1 cd6

3. ... b6 4. x b7=+

4. a4 (another 1 point)

4. ... d4 5. x d4 exd4 6. e5! xe5 7. x e5=+

F-9
Positional play /Chapter 9
T.Petrosian – B.Ivkov
Nice Olympiad 1974

1. g4!

(2 points)

Petrosian takes control of the f5-square with this strong and typical move and shuts the black knight on g7 out of the game.

1 consolation point for 1. f4 or 1. ab1.

1. ... a4 2. b3 b8 3. c2 a5 4. a4 c7

5. h3 a6 6. a5 b5 7. axb6 x b6 8. a3 d8

9. c1 e7 10. e1 b2 11. d3 c8 12. c1

b3 13. c2 b6 14. f4! h6 15. fxe5 xe5

16. xe5 dxe5 17. e4 h5 18. a3 xe4

19. x f8+ x f8 20. x e4 b3 21. xc5+ e8

22. f1

1-0

F-10
Tactics /Chapter 10
H.Rinck
1906

1. a7

(1 point)

1. ... g2 2. d7 d2 3. d5!

(another 1 point)
Solutions

3...\(\text{Exd5}\) 4.\(a8\text{Exd7}\) 5.\(\text{Exf8t}\) \(g5\)
5...\(g6\) 6.\(e8t\) \(g7\) 7.\(g8t++\)
6.\(\text{Exg8t}\) \(h6\)
6...\(h6\) 7.\(e6t++\)
7.\(\text{Exg2t}++\)

F-11
Tactics /Chapter 13
Based on the game

Zollner – Heywood
England 1930

1.\(\text{Exf7!!}\)
Threatening mate after \(\text{Exf8#}\) or \(g8t\).
1...\(\text{Exf7}\) 2.\(g8t!\) \(\text{Exg8}\) 3.\(\text{Exf7}#\)
(2 points)

F-12
Tactics /Chapter 13

Buksza – Kovacs
Hungary 1965

1...\(\text{f6t}!\)
(2 points)
White resigned, on account of 2.\(\text{exf6} \text{g6}\)
3.\(g4\) \(e1t++\).

F-13
Strategy /Chapter 14

L.Zaid – A.Yusupov
Leningrad 1977

1...e5!
(2 points)
Black plans to continue with ...e4 to force
the knight away.
2.\(\text{b4}\) \(\text{b7}\)
2...\(\text{e6t}\) would be wrong, due to 3.e4!.
3.\(\text{d3}\) e4 4.\(\text{b1}\) \(c5\) 5.\(\text{a2}\) \(a6t\) 6.\(\text{g1}\)
\(\text{d3}\) 7.\(\text{c3}\) \(\text{xb1}\) 8.\(\text{xb1}\) \(c4\) 9.\(\text{f1}\) \(\text{d3}\)
10.\(\text{d3}\) \(\text{xe3}\) 11.\(\text{c4t}\) \(\text{d3}\) 12.\(\text{b2t}\) \(\text{c3}\)
13.\(\text{d1t}\) \(\text{d2}\) 14.\(\text{b2}\) e3 15.\(\text{c4t}\) \(\text{d3}\)
16.\(\text{b2t}\) \(\text{c3}\)
0–1

F-14
Strategy /Chapter 14

London 1984

1.\(\text{Ec8!}\)
The exchange of rooks wins at once.
1...\(\text{Exc8}\) 2.\(\text{Exc8}\)
Black resigned. 2...\(\text{d6}\) is followed by
3.\(\text{xb7!}\) \(\text{xb7}\) 4.a6+-
(another 1 point)

F-15
Calculating variations /Chapter 15

A.Kotov – L.Szabo
Moscow – Budapest 1949

1.\(\text{c4!}\)
(1 point)
White threatens \(\text{Exg6t}\). Black had
overlooked this intermediate move. He had
only considered the capture on a3: 1.bxa3!!
\(\text{c3t}\) 2.\(\text{b2}\) \(\text{a4t}\) 3.\(\text{c2}\) (3.\(\text{b1}\) \(\text{xa3}\)
4.\(\text{c2}\) 3...\(\text{xa3}\) 4.\(\text{f6}\) \(\text{a2t}\) 5.\(\text{c1}\) \(\text{a3t}=
1...\(\text{h8}\) 2.\(\text{xa3}\) \(\text{c3t}\) 3.\(\text{b2}\) \(\text{a4t}\) 4.\(\text{b1}\)
\(\text{b5}\)
4...\(\text{xa3}\) is met by 5.\(\text{e5}++\) followed by
\(\text{xf6}\).
5.\(\text{xb5!}\) \(\text{xa3}\)
5...\(\text{c3t}\) 6.\(\text{c2}\)++; 5...\(\text{d5}\) 6.\(\text{c8t}!++\)
6.\(\text{xa4}\) \(\text{xa4}\) 7.\(\text{b2}\) \(\text{b4}\) 8.\(\text{c1}\) a5 9.\(\text{c8}\)
1–0

F-16
Tactics /Chapter 16

Bekker – Schneider
East Germany 1966

1...\(\text{Exf2}!++\)
(1 point)
2.\(\text{Exf2}\)
2...\(\text{Exf2}\) 3.\(\text{g3t}\) 4.\(\text{h1t}\) \(\text{f1t}\) 4.\(\text{h1}\) \(\text{h2t}!\)
5.\(\text{Exh2}\) \(\text{g3}\)#
Solutions

2...\( \text{g3} \uparrow 3.\text{h2} \text{xf1} \uparrow 4.\text{h1} \text{g3} \uparrow 5.\text{h2} \text{xe4} \uparrow \)  
0–1

F-17
Positional play /Chapter 17

B.Spassky – R.Fischer  
Santa Monica 1966

1...h5!+-

This passed pawn secures victory for White. One of the black pieces must keep an eye on it, and then White will be able to attack the black a-pawn.

1...\( \text{h6} \)

If 1...\( \text{d6} \), then 2.\( \text{d3} \) and the white king will later march across to a4.

2.\( \text{d3} \text{e5} 3.\text{a8} \text{d6} \)

3...\( \text{f4} \) is followed by 4.\( \text{c4} \text{g4} 5.\text{f3} \text{h4} 6.\text{xc5} \text{g4} 7.\text{e4} \text{h5} 8.\text{b5} \)–.

4.\( \text{c4} \text{g4} 5.\text{a4} \text{g8} 6.\text{a5} \text{h6} 7.\text{e4} \text{g3} 8.\text{b5} \text{g8} 9.\text{b1} \text{h6} 10.\text{a6} \text{c6} \)

11.\( \text{a2}! \)

Black resigned. After 11...\( \text{c7} 12.\text{xa7} \text{f5} 13.\text{e6} \text{h6} 14.\text{a6} \), he would be in zugzwang.

F-18
Positional play /Chapter 17

A.Yusupov – P.Popovic  
Belgrade 1989

1.\( \text{e5}! \)  

First 1.a4 would also be good.

1...c3 2.\( \text{d3} \text{e7} 3.\text{c4} \text{a4} 4.\text{a3} \text{c5} 5.\text{xc3} \text{d7} 6.\text{d3} \text{e7} 7.\text{d4} \text{g5} 8.\text{c5} \)

1–0

F-19
Tactics /Chapter 19

E.Vasiukov – V.Smyslov  
USSR Ch. Tbilisi 1966

1.f4!  

(1 point)

1.\( \text{c6} \) (also 1 point) is equally good: 1...\( \text{d1} 2.\text{a5} \text{a6} 3.\text{c7} \text{e7} 4.\text{b4} \text{a7} 5.\text{b6} \)–

1...\( \text{exf4} 2.\text{f2} \text{xb4} 3.\text{xb6} \text{g6} 4.\text{c2} \text{fxg3} 5.\text{c8} \text{e7} 6.\text{xc3} \text{f6} 7.\text{c7} \text{f8} 8.\text{a7} \text{b1} 9.\text{c7} \text{e7} 10.\text{b8} \text{d8} 11.\text{xd6} \text{xc1} 12.\text{f3} \text{h5} 13.\text{gxh5} \text{gh5} 14.\text{e5} \)

F-20
Endgame /Chapter 20

K.Chernyshov – A.Yusupov  
European Team Ch. Ohrid 2001

1.\( \text{f3}! \)

1.\( \text{d3} \) (threatening \( \text{a4} \)) would have won very simply: 1...\( \text{xd3} 2.\text{xd3} \text{c5} 3.\text{f6} \)–

(2 points)

White will only be able to win easily, and without allowing counterplay, if he exchanges one of the bishops. You also get 2 points if you planned to force such an exchange with 1.\( \text{c4} \) followed by 2.\( \text{d3} \), or by 1.\( \text{d7} \text{c7} 2.\text{a4} \).

1...\( \text{b4} \uparrow 2.\text{c1} \text{a2} 3.\text{d3} \text{c3} 4.\text{c2} \text{g7} \)  

4...\( \text{d5} \)–

5.\( \text{g3} \text{f8} 6.\text{c3} \text{c7} 7.\text{d4} \text{e7} 8.\text{g7} \text{d8} 9.\text{e5}! \)

Better is 9.\( \text{g6} \)–

9...\( \text{f6} 10.\text{h7} \text{d5} 11.\text{h5} \text{e8} 12.\text{exh6} \text{e7} 13.\text{g6} \text{e6} 14.\text{h6} \text{f5} 15.\text{xf6} \text{xf6} 16.\text{e3} \text{h1} 17.\text{f4} \text{g2} 18.\text{g4} \text{e4} 19.\text{d7} \text{g6} 20.\text{h7} \text{g7} 21.\text{f6} \text{g2} 22.\text{f4} \text{h1} 23.\text{e5} \text{g2} 24.\text{d6} \text{h1}=$
Solutions

F-21
Positional play /Chapter 21

USSR Ch. Moscow 1949

1...g5!
(2 points)
Black quickly takes command on the kingside.
2.£g3 £h5 3.£d3 £f6 4.£h1 £f4=

F-22
Tactics /Chapter 22

W.von Holzhausen – S.Tarrasch
Berlin 1912

1.£xf7!! £xf7 2.£e6!!
(1 point)
2...£de5
2...£xe6 3.£d5† £f6 4.£f5#
3.£h5† £g8 4.£xd8 £xd8 5.£d5
1–0

F-23
Endgame /Chapter 24

S.Papa – A.Yusupov
Pfäffikon (blitz) 2009

1.£c2?
White did not spot his opponent’s idea. Otherwise he would simply have played 1.£h4=.

(2 points)
Another way to draw is 1.£e1 h4 2.£c2 h3
3.£d4= (also 2 points).

1...h4 2.£d2 h3 3.£e1 £h4!
0–1

F-24
Endgame /Chapter 24

Em.Lasker – M.Euwe
Nottingham 1936

Black’s last move was 1...£a5?? You need to watch out, even in the endgame!
2.b4! £xb4 3.£c2+-
(2 points)

3...£d2 4.£xd2 £b2† 5.£e2 £d5 6.£c1 £e4 7.£d3 £b6 8.£e3† £e6 9.£c4 £c8
10.£a5 £d6 11.£f4
1–0

Scoring

Maximum number of points is 42

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Points</th>
<th>Rating</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37 points and above</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 points and above</td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 points</td>
<td>Pass mark</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you scored less than 21 points, we recommend that you read again those chapters dealing with the areas where you made a lot of mistakes and repeat the exercises which you got wrong.
Index of composers

Cheron, A. 125

Grigoriev, N. 56, 57, 57, 273
Gurvitch, A. 80

Herbstmann, A. 81
Hildebrand, A. 81

Kazantsev, A. 137
Kopaev, N. 272

Lasker, Em. 214

Pavett, W. 136
Pogosiants, E. 89

Rinck, H. 273

Stamma, P. 140

Vancura, J. 127
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Game</th>
<th>Players</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ahues,C. - N.N.</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahues,H. - Steneberg</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alalin - Chjurr</td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albin,A. - Bernstein,O.</td>
<td>134</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alekhine,A. - Blackburne,J.</td>
<td>157</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Euwe,M.</td>
<td>88, 148, 242</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Fine,R.</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Levenfish,G.</td>
<td>232</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Mikesen,V.</td>
<td>100, 101</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Rubinstein,A.</td>
<td>203</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Stahlberg,G.</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tartakower,S.</td>
<td>188</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- West,A.</td>
<td>242</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anand,V. - Yusupov,A.</td>
<td>177</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anderssen,A. - Paulsen,L.</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andersson,U. - Browne,W.</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Timman,J.</td>
<td>274</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Torre,E.</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andreoli,R. - Efimov,I.</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armas,J. - Crisan,A.</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aronin,L. - Lilienthal,A.</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aronson,L. - Kholmov,R.</td>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atanasov - Popov</td>
<td>209</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Averbakh,Y. - Kotov,A.</td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avrukh,B. - Dautov,R.</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azmaiparashvili,Z. - Yusupov,A.</td>
<td>73</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bach,H. - Botto,D.</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bagirov,V. - Kholmov,R.</td>
<td>34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balashov,Y. - Lugovoi,A.</td>
<td>75</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bannik,A. - Dus Chotimirsky,F.</td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Petrosian,T.</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bareev,E. - Sveshnikov,E.</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bashein - Morse</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basistrikov,G. - Kholmov,R.</td>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bauert,R. - Yusupov,A.</td>
<td>255</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baum,B. - Thal,O.</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Becker,A. - Capablanca,J.</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Begun - Marjakin</td>
<td>243</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beirar,H. - Yusupov,A.</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bekker - Schneider</td>
<td>274</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beliavsky,A. - Torre,E.</td>
<td>71</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benjamin,J. - Yusupov,A.</td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benko,P. - Fischer,R.</td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berkes,F. - Braun,A.</td>
<td>272</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bernstein,O. - Albin,A.</td>
<td>134</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bischoff,K. - Yusupov,A.</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bisguier,A. - Fischer,R.</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Larsen,B.</td>
<td>169</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biyiasas,P. - Hug,W.</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackburne,J. - Alekhine,A.</td>
<td>157</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- N.N.</td>
<td>135</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blau,M. - Donner,J.</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block - Felderhof</td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blumenfeld,B. - Zhizhov</td>
<td>159</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bogoljubow,E. - Capablanca,J.</td>
<td>203</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Monticelli,M.</td>
<td>141</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Rubinstein,A.</td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bojko,S. - Janata,M.</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boleslavsky,I. - Botvinnik,M.</td>
<td>23, 233</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bologan,V. - Zvjaginsev,V.</td>
<td>113</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bondarevsky,I. - Lilienthal,A.</td>
<td>221</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borisjenko,G. - Kholmov,R.</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borissenkov - Zhuravlev</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botto,D. - Bach,H.</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botvinnik,M. - Boleslavsky,I.</td>
<td>23, 233</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Bronstein,D.</td>
<td>99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Flohr,S.</td>
<td>142</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Furman,S.</td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Keres,P.</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Smyslov,V.</td>
<td>187, 272</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tal,M.</td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Yudovich,M.</td>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brandics,J. - Perenyi,B.</td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Braun,A. - Berkes,F.</td>
<td>272</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ovsejevitsch,S.</td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bromberger,S. - Löffler,S.</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronstein,D. - Botvinnik,M.</td>
<td>99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cortlever,N.</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Goldberg,G.</td>
<td>276</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Medina Garcia,A.</td>
<td>209</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Simagin,V.</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Terpugov,E.</td>
<td>99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Vajda,A.</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browne,W. - Andersson,U.</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Seirawan,Y.</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brumen,D. - Sveshnikov,E.</td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Team 1</td>
<td>Team 2</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buchman – Kasperovich</td>
<td></td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buksza – Kovacs</td>
<td></td>
<td>274</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burger, K. – Huendorfer</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capablanca, J. – Becker, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Bogolyubow, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>203</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Colle, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Fox, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Menchik, V.</td>
<td></td>
<td>62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Steiner, H.</td>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Treybal, K.</td>
<td></td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Zubarev, N.</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlson, M. – Eberlein, R.</td>
<td></td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carty, P. – Wegener, W.</td>
<td></td>
<td>259</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chekhov, V. – Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chekhov, V. – Yudovich, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chernyshov, K. – Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>275</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chigorin, M. – Lasker, Em.</td>
<td></td>
<td>154</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Pillsbury, H.</td>
<td></td>
<td>73, 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Steinitz, W.</td>
<td></td>
<td>226</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chjutt – Alalin</td>
<td></td>
<td>131</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christiansen, L. – Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chukaev, E. – Kholmov, R.</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cifuentes, R. – Zvjaginsev, V.</td>
<td></td>
<td>243</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cmilyte, V. – Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>180</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colle, E. – Capablanca, J.</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computer Deep Blue – Kasparov, G.</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cortlever, N. – Bronstein, D.</td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cramling, P. – Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>117</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crisan, A. – Armas, J.</td>
<td></td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croes – Mednis, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cvitan, O. – Fracnik, L.</td>
<td></td>
<td>242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darga, K. – Ivkov, B.</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dautov, R. – Avrukh, B.</td>
<td></td>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De la Fuente, F. – Kasparov, G.</td>
<td></td>
<td>193</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Rooi, P. – Kramer, H.</td>
<td></td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizdar, G. – Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Djurasevic, B. – Vasiukov, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolmatov, S. – Sveshnikov, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donner, J. – Blau, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorfman, J. – Klinger, J.</td>
<td></td>
<td>254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Romanishin, O.</td>
<td></td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– San Segundo, P.</td>
<td></td>
<td>108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doroshkievich, V. – Sveshnikov, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dörfling, F. – Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>83</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dreev, A. – Sveshnikov, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubinin, P. – Levenfish, G.</td>
<td></td>
<td>99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dus Chotimirsky, F. – Bannik, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eberlein, R. – Carlson, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ebersbach – Springer</td>
<td></td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efimov – Kim</td>
<td></td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efimov, I. – Andreoli, R.</td>
<td></td>
<td>173</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Georgadze, G.</td>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eingorn, V. – Sveshnikov, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engels – Stein</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Englisch, B. – Steinitz, W.</td>
<td></td>
<td>73, 152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epishin, V. – Vallejo Pons, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td>164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epstein, E. – Veroci Petronic, Z.</td>
<td></td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erler, R. – Kling, K.</td>
<td></td>
<td>210</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Euwe, M. – Alekhine, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>88, 148, 242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Flohr, S.</td>
<td></td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Gligoric, S.</td>
<td></td>
<td>215</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Lasker, Em.</td>
<td></td>
<td>276</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Reshevsky, S.</td>
<td></td>
<td>188</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Tartakower, S.</td>
<td></td>
<td>273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fazekas, S. – Spielmann, R.</td>
<td></td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Felderhof – Block</td>
<td></td>
<td>163</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Filip, M. – Stein, L.</td>
<td></td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine, R. – Alekhine, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fischer, R. – Benko, P.</td>
<td></td>
<td>136</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Bisguier, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Kholmov, R.</td>
<td></td>
<td>35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Letelier Martner, R.</td>
<td></td>
<td>64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Portisch, L.</td>
<td></td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Spassky, B.</td>
<td></td>
<td>72, 75, 275</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Taimanov, M</td>
<td></td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flohr, S. – Bovinov, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td>142</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Euwe, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td>89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Kottnauer, C.</td>
<td></td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fominyh, A. – Sveshnikov, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fox, A. – Capablanca, J.</td>
<td></td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Franco, Z. – Magem Badals, J.</td>
<td></td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fracnik, L. – Cvitan, O.</td>
<td></td>
<td>242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Yusupov, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuchs, R. – Hennings, A.</td>
<td></td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Furman, S. – Bovinov, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td>153</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Vasiukov, E.</td>
<td></td>
<td>88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index of games

Gelfand, B. – Ivanchuk, V. 80
– Yusupov, A. 156

Geller, E. – Kholmov, R. 221, 222
– Pilnik, H. 88
– Smyslov, V. 234
– Spassky, B. 169
– Timman, J. 200
– Tolush, A. 166

Georgadze, G. – Efimov, I. 81

Gerchikov – Poliansky 140

Gligoric, S. – Euwe, M. 215
– Kotov, A. 233
– Lombardy, W. 186
– Smyslov, V. 66
– Szabo, L. 227

Goldberg, G. – Bronstein, D. 276

Goldstein – Tomilin 140

Golubev – Kotov, A. 164

Granda Zuniga, J. – Yusupov, A. 118, 119

Grekov, N. – Ilyin Zhenevsky, A. 163

Grigoriev, N. – Nenarokov, V. 102

Grosar, A. – Sveshnikov, E. 50

Guimard, C. – Pfeiffer, G. 188

Gulko, B. – Uhlmann, W. 61
– Yusupov, A. 117

Gurgenidze, B. – Nezhmetdinov, R. 90

Hamann, S. – Ostermeyer, P. 205

Harikrishna, P. – Hasangatin, R. 164

Harrwitz, D. – Williams, E. 164

Hasangatin, R. – Harikrishna, P. 164

Hebden, M. – Pira, D. 197
– Williams, L. 197

Heimann, A. – Yusupov, A. 260

Heisenbuettel – Meemsoth 209

Hennings, A. – Fuchs, R. 167
– Savon, V. 209

Heywood – Zollner 274

Hmadi, S. – Yusupov, A. 200

Hohler, P. – Tcherniak, G. 173

Hohni, K. – Kholmov, R. 38

Hübner, R. – Miles, A. 155
– Penrose, J. 209
– Timman, J. 88

Huendorfer – Burger, K. 80

Hug, W. – Biyiasas, P. 30

Huzman, A. – Kasparov, G. 164

Illescas, M. – Yusupov, A. 50

Ilyin Zhenevsky, A. – Grekov, N. 163
– Kliatskin, M. 157

Ionov, S. – Yusupov, A. 117

Iskusnyh, S. – Sveshnikov, E. 51

Ivanchuk, V. – Gelfand, B. 80
– Romanishin, O. 53

Ivkov, B. – Darga, K. 80
– Petrosian, T. 174, 273
– Portisch, L. 204

Janata, M. – Bojkovic, S. 18

Jimenez Zerquera, E. – Kholmov, R. 38

Johansen, D. – Kudrin, S. 89

Johner, P. – Nimzowitsch, A. 234

Kagan – Post 232

Kamsky, G. – Yusupov, A. 61

Kapanadse – Zhuravlev 108

Karpov, A. – Kasparov, G. 246
– Vaganian, R. 255, 256
– Yusupov, A. 110, 112

Kasimdzhanov, R. – Kramnik, V. 82

Kasparian, G. – Manwelian 242
– Suetin, A. 16

Kasparov, G. – Computer Deep Blue 20
– De la Fuente, F. 193
– Huzman, A. 164
– Karpov, A. 246
– Martinovic, S. 197
– Roizman, A. 103
– Sosonko, G. 254
– Topalov, V. 237

Kasperovich – Buchman 108

Keitlinghaus, L. – Pfleger, H. 80

Keres, P. – Borvinnik, M. 21
– Petrosian, T. 220
– Tolush, A. 166

Khalifman, A. – Yusupov, A. 92

Khasin, A. – Kholmov, R. 32

Khavin, A. – Kholmov, R. 68

Kholmov, R. – Aronson, L. 39
Index of games

- Bagirov, V. 34
- Bazriakov, G. 33
- Borisenko, G. 40
- Chukaev, E. 40
- Fischer, R. 35
- Geller, E. 221, 222
- Honfi, K. 38
- Jimenez Zerquera, E. 38
- Khasin, A. 32
- Khavin, A. 68
- Kots, Y. 39
- Livshin, L. 101
- Lutikov, A. 38
- Marulovic, M. 38
- Milic, B. 39
- Petrosian, T. 39
- Uhlmann, W. 40
- Vasiukov, E. 16
- Vistanetskis, I. 40

Kim – Efimov 140

Klavins, J. – Ragozin, V. 152
Kliatskin, M. – Ilyin Zhenevsky, A. 157
Kliavinson, J. – Zhuravlov, V. 209
Kling, K. – Erler, P. 210
Klinger, J. – Dorfman, J. 254
Klowans, J. – Tolush, A. 108
Kochiev, A. – Smyslov, V. 131
Kofman – Zhukovitsky, S. 15
Kolevit – Shashin, A. 210
Konstantinopolsky, A. – Kotov, A. 232
Konstantinov – Yusupov, A. 191
Kontic, D. – Vukic, M. 137
Korchnoi, V. – Lilienthal, A. 71
– Spassky, B. 71
Kotov, A. – Averbakh, Y. 244
– Gligoric, S. 233
– Golubev 164
– Konstantinopolsky, A. 232
– Petrosian, T. 74
– Rudakov 243
– Smyslov, V. 163
– Szabo, L. 274
Kots, Y. – Kholmov, R. 39
Kottnauer, C. – Flohr, S. 72
Kovacs – Buksza 274
Kozma, J. – Petrosian, T. 199
Kramer, H. – De Rool, P. 140
Kramnik, V. – Kasimdzhanov, R. 82
– Lutz, C. 120
– Morozevich, A. 220
– Naiditsch, A. 259
Kudrin, S. – Johansen, D. 89
Lalic, B. – Yusupov, A. 95
L’Ami, E. – Yusupov, A. 260
Larsen, B. – Bisguier, A. 169
– Suetin, A. 29
– Westerinen, H. 205
Lasker, Ed. – Thomas, G. 236
Lasker, Em. – Chigorin, M. 154
– Euwe, M. 276
– Tarrasch, S. 100
Lee, F. – Nimzowitsch, A. 72
Letelier Martner, R. – Fischer, R. 64
Levenfish, G. – Alekhine, A. 232
– Dubinin, P. 99
Liebert, H. – Uhlmann, W. 174
Lilienthal, A. – Aronin, L. 27
– Bondarevsky, I. 221
– Korchnoi, V. 71
Lisitsin, G. – Spielberg, B. 135
– Zagoriansky, E. 202
Liublinsky, V. – Petrosian, T. 198
Livshin, I. – Kolmov, R. 101
Lobron, E. – Timman, J. 249
– Yusupov, A. 117
Löffler, S. – Bromberger, S. 16
Loginov, V. – Sherbakov, R. 256, 257
Lombardy, W. – Gligoric, S. 186
Lugovoi, A. – Balashov, Y. 75
Lutikov, A. – Kolmov, R. 38
– Silva, F. 84
Lutz, C. – Kramnik, V. 120
– Yusupov, A. 118
Mackenzie, G. – Mason, J. 242
Magem Badals, J. – Franco, Z. 76
Mainka, R. – Yusupov, A. 273
Makienko – Makogonov, V. 29
Makogonov, V. – Makienko 29
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Game 1</th>
<th>Game 2</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manwelian</td>
<td>Kasparian</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marco, G.</td>
<td>Schlechter, C.</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Markewell</td>
<td>Tomas</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marshall, F.</td>
<td>Swiderski, R.</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Martinovic, S.</td>
<td>Kasparov, G.</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mason</td>
<td>N. N.</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mason, J.</td>
<td>Mackenzie, G.</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matulovic, M.</td>
<td>Kholmov, R.</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sahovic, D.</td>
<td>164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tringov, G.</td>
<td>210</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medina Garcia, A.</td>
<td>Bronstein, D.</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mednis, E.</td>
<td>Croes</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meemsoth</td>
<td>Heisenbuettel</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menchik, V.</td>
<td>Capablanca, J.</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mikenas, V.</td>
<td>Alekhine, A.</td>
<td>100, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Zheliantdinov, V.</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miles, A.</td>
<td>Hübner, R.</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pritchett, C.</td>
<td>107</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tseshkovsky, V.</td>
<td>103</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milic, B.</td>
<td>Kholmov, R.</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monticelli, M.</td>
<td>Bogoljubow, E.</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morozewich, A.</td>
<td>Kramnik, V.</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphy, P.</td>
<td>Paulsen, L.</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morse</td>
<td>Bashein</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortensen, H.</td>
<td>Poulsen, K.</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munelte</td>
<td>N. N.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munoz, H.</td>
<td>Salazar, H.</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naiditsch, A.</td>
<td>Kramnik, V.</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nenarokov, V.</td>
<td>Grigoriev, N.</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nezhmetdinov, R.</td>
<td>Gurgenidze, B.</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Polugaevsky, L.</td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Romanov, 174</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nimzowitsch, A.</td>
<td>Johner, P.</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lee, F.</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Vajda, A.</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olafsson, F.</td>
<td>Rodriguez Vargas, O.</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ortega, L.</td>
<td>Sveshnikov, E.</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osnos, V.</td>
<td>Spassky, B.</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ostermeyer, P.</td>
<td>Hamann, S.</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovsejevitsch, S.</td>
<td>Braun, A.</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pachman, L.</td>
<td>Petrosian, T.</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panchenko, A.</td>
<td>Sergeev</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Yusupov, A.</td>
<td>256</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papa, S.</td>
<td>Yusupov, A.</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parenc</td>
<td>Tilson</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paromov</td>
<td>Zavernyaev</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patek</td>
<td>Shadurskis</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paulsen, L.</td>
<td>Anderssen, A.</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Morphy, P.</td>
<td>224</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penrose, J.</td>
<td>Hübner, R.</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perenyi, B.</td>
<td>Brandics, J.</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petrov, T.</td>
<td>Bannik, A.</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ivkov, B.</td>
<td>174, 273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Keres, P.</td>
<td>220</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Kholmov, R.</td>
<td>39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Kotov, A.</td>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Kozma, J.</td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Liublinsky, V.</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pachman, L.</td>
<td>242</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Unzicker, W.</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petrov, V.</td>
<td>Rellstab, L.</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfeiffer, G.</td>
<td>Guimard, C.</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfleger, H.</td>
<td>Keitlinghaus, L.</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pillsbury, H.</td>
<td>Chigorin, M.</td>
<td>73, 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilnik, H.</td>
<td>Geller, E.</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Stolz, G.</td>
<td>140</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pinkus, A.</td>
<td>Ragozin, V.</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pira, D.</td>
<td>Hebden, M.</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platonov, I.</td>
<td>Tal, M.</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poliansky</td>
<td>Gerchikov</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polugaevsky, L.</td>
<td>Nezhmetdinov, R.</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popov</td>
<td>Atanasov</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popovic, P.</td>
<td>Yusupov, A.</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portisch, L.</td>
<td>Fischer, R.</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ivkov, B.</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tal, M.</td>
<td>273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post</td>
<td>Kagan</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poulsen, K.</td>
<td>Mortensen, H.</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pritchett, C.</td>
<td>Miles, A.</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prokhorovich</td>
<td>Ravinsky, G.</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psakhis, L.</td>
<td>Speelman, J.</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sveshnikov, E.</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pytlakowski, A.</td>
<td>Szukszta, J.</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rabinovich, I.</td>
<td>Romanovsky, P.</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radchenko</td>
<td>Trubnikov, I.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index of games

Ragozin, V. – Klavins, J. 152
   – Pinkus, A. 89
Ravinsky, G. – Prokhorovich 209
   – Romanovsky, P. 232
Reichelt, M. – Schlapp, R. 135
Rellstab, L. – Petrov, V. 15
Rener, O. – Yusupov, A. 145
Reshevsky, S. – Euwe, M. 188
Reti, R. – Yates, F. 71
Richter – Schmidt, P. 243
Rodriguez Vargas, O. – Olafsson, F. 140
Rohde, M. – Smyslov, V. 223
Roizman, A. – Kasparov, G. 103
Romanishin, O. – Dorfman, J. 140
   – Ivanchuk, V. 53
Romanov – Nezhmetdinov, R. 174
Romanovsky, P. – Rabinovich, I. 206
   – Ravinsky, G. 232
Rootare, S. – Rudenko, L. 159
Rosenthal, S. – Steinitz, W. 72, 146
Rossolimo, N. – Wood, G. 28
Rotariu, G. – Vlad 272
Rubinstein, A. – Alekhine, A. 203
   – Bogoljubow, E. 89
   – Tarrasch, S. 148, 152
   – Zubarev, N. 99
Rudakov – Kotov, A. 243
Rudakovsky, I. – Smyslov, V. 99
Rudenko, L. – Rootare, S. 159
Sahlmann, W. – Schmid, L. 76
Sahovic, D. – Matulovic, M. 164
Salazar, H. – Munoz, H. 107
Salov, V. – Yusupov, A. 158
Sambuev, B. – Sorokin, M. 255
San Segundo, P. – Dorfman, J. 108
Savon, V. – Hennings, A. 209
   – Spassky, B. 181
Sax, G. – Tseshkovsky, V. 62
   – Van der Wiel, J. 173
Schlapp, R. – Reichelt, M. 135
Schlechter, C. – Marco, G. 153
Schmidt, L. – Sahlmann, W. 76
Schmidt, P. – Richter 243
Schneider – Bekker 274
Seirawan, Y. – Browne, W. 220
Sergeev – Panchenko, A. 107
Shadurski – Patek 204
Shashin, A. – Kolev, V. 75
Sherbakov, R. – Loginov, V. 256, 257
Shryaj, C. – Yusupov, A. 84
Sidle-Sade, F. – Sturua, Z. 206
Siegel, G. – Yusupov, A. 80
Silva, E. – Lutikov, A. 84
Simagin, V. – Bronstein, D. 107
Slipak, S. – Sorokin, M. 256
Smyslov, V. – Botvinnik, M. 187, 272
   – Geller, E. 234
   – Gligoric, S. 66
   – Kociev, A. 131
   – Kotov, A. 163
   – Rohde, M. 223
   – Rudakovsky, I. 99
   – Szabo, L. 205
   – Tal, M. 187
   – Vasiukov, E. 275
Sokolsky, A. – Tolush, A. 234
Sorokin, M. – Sambuev, B. 255
   – Slipak, S. 256
Sosonko, G. – Kasparov, G. 254
Spassky, B. – Fischer, R. 72, 75, 275
   – Geller, E. 169
   – Korchnoi, V. 71
   – Osnos, V. 199
   – Savon, V. 181
   – Timman, J. 254
   – Zaitsev, I. 186
Speelman, J. – Psakhis, L. 222
Spielmann, R. – Fazekas, S. 163
   – Lisitsin, G. 135
Springer – Ebersbach 136
Stahlberg, G. – Alekhine, A. 16
Stein – Engels 80
Stein, L. – Filip, M. 168
Steiner, H. – Capablanca, J. 11
Steinitz, W. – Chigorin, M. 226
   – Englisch, B. 73, 152
   – Rosenthal, S. 72, 146
   – Von Bardeleben, C. 8
Steneberg – Ahues, H. 167
Index of games

Stoltz, G. - Pilnik, H. 140
Sturua, Z. - Sideif-Sade, f: 206
Suetin, A. - Kasparian, G. 16
- Larsen, B. 29
Sveshnikov, E. - Bareev, E. 45
- Brumen, D. 52
- Dolmatov, S. 53
- Doroshievich, V. 52
- Dreev, A. 50
- Eingorn, V. 50
- Fominyh, A. 51
- Grosar, A. 50
- Iskusnyh, S. 51
- Ortega, L. 51
- Psakhis, L. 42
- Timman, J. 44
- Zinn, L. 210

Swiderski, R. - Marshall, F. 77
Szabo, L. - Gligoric, S. 227
- Kotov, A. 274
- Smyslov, V. 205
Szukszra, J. - Pytlakowski, A. 141

Taimanov, M. - Fischer, R. 153
- Vasiukov, E. 12
Tal, M. - Botvinnik, M. 163
- Portisch, L. 273
- Smyslov, V. 187
- Thorbergsson, F. 29
- Yusupov, A. 220
Tarrasch, S. - Lasker, Em. 100
- Rubinstein, A. 148, 152
- Von Holzhausen, W. 276
Tartakower, S. - Alekhine, A. 188
- Euwe, M. 273
Tcherniak, G. - Hohler, P. 173
Terpugov, E. - Bronstein, D. 99
Thal, O. - Baum, B. 107
Thomas, G. - Lasker, Ed. 236
Thorbergsson, F. - Tal, M. 29
Tilson - Parence 173
Timman, J. - Andersson, U. 274
- Geller, E. 200
- Hübner, R. 88
- Lobron, E. 249
- Spassky, B. 254
- Sveshnikov, E. 44
Tolush, A. - Geller, E. 166
- Keres, P. 166
- Klovans, J. 108
- Sokolsky, A. 234
Tomas - Markwell 15
Tomilin - Goldstein 140
Topalov, V. - Kasparov, G. 237
Torre, E. - Andersson, U. 76
- Beliavsky, A. 71
Treybal, K. - Capablanca, J. 19
Tringov, G. - Matulovic, M. 210
Trubnikov - Radchenko 16
Tseshkovsky, V. - Miles, A. 103
- Sax, G. 62
Tulin - Zilberstein, V. 209

Uhlmann, W. - Gulko, B. 61
- Kholmov, R. 40
- Liebert, H. 174
Unzicker, W. - Perrosian, T. 29

Vaganian, R. - Karpov, A. 255, 256
Vajda, A. - Bronstein, D. 204
- Nimzowitsch, A. 28
Vallejo Pons, E. - Epishin, V. 164
Van der Wiel, J. - Sax, G. 173
Vasiukov, E. - Djurasevic, B. 168
- Furman, S. 88
- Kholmov, R. 16
- Smyslov, V. 275
- Taimanov, M. 12
Veroci Petronic, Z. - Epstein, E. 140
Vistanetskis, I. - Kholmov, R. 40
Vlad - Rotariu, G. 272
Von Bardeleben, C. - Steinitz, W. 8
Von Holzhausen, W. - Tarrasch, S. 276
Vukic, M. - Konic, D. 137

Wegener, W. - Carty, P. 259
West, A. - Alekhine, A. 242
Westerinen, H. - Larsen, B. 205
Williams, E. - Harrwitz, D. 164
Index of games

Zagoriansky,E. - Lisitsin,G. 202
Zaid,L. - Yusupov,A. 274
Zaitsev,I. - Spassky,B. 186
Zaverynaev - Paromov 174
Zheliandinov,V. - Mikhalchishin,A. 174
Zhivzov - Blumenfeld, B. 159
Zhukovitsky,S. - Kofman 15
Zhuravlev - Borissenkov 102
Kapanadse 108
Zhuravliov,V. - Kliavinsh,J. 209
Zilberstein,V. - Tulin 209
Zinn,L. - Sveshnikov,E. 210
Zollner - Heywood 274
Zubarev,N. - Capablanca, J. 10
Rubinstein,A. 99
Zvjaginsev,V. - Bologan,V. 113
Cifuentes,R. 243

Williams,L. - Hebden,M. 197
Wood,G. - Rossolimo,N. 28
Yates,F. - Reti,R. 71
Yudovich,M. - Botvinnik,M. 66
- Chekhover,V. 88
Yusupov,A. - Anand,V. 177
- Azmaiparashvili,Z. 73
- Bauer,R. 255
- Beitar,H. 22
- Benjamin,J. 118
- Bischoff,K. 199
- Chekhov,V. 28
- Chernyshov,K. 275
- Christiansen,L. 119
- Cmilyte,V. 180
- Cramling,P. 117
- Dizdar,G. 255
- Dörrling,F. 83
- Fracnik,L. 118
- Gelfand,B. 156
- Granda Zuniga,J. 118, 119
- Gulko,B. 117
- Heimann,A. 260
- Hmadi,S. 200
- Illescas,M. 50
- Ionov,S. 117
- Kamsky,G. 61
- Karpov,A. 110, 112
- Khalifman,A. 92
- Konstantinov 191
- Lalic,B. 95
- L'Ami,E. 260
- Lobron,E. 117
- Lutz,C. 118
- Mainka,R. 273
- Panchenko,A. 256
- Papa,S. 276
- Popovic,P. 275
- Rener,O. 145
- Salov,V. 158
- Shyraj,C. 84
- Siegel,G. 80
- Tal,M. 220
- Zaid,L. 274